



MAISTERE

PEECE

MARKHAM

1656







35463/8

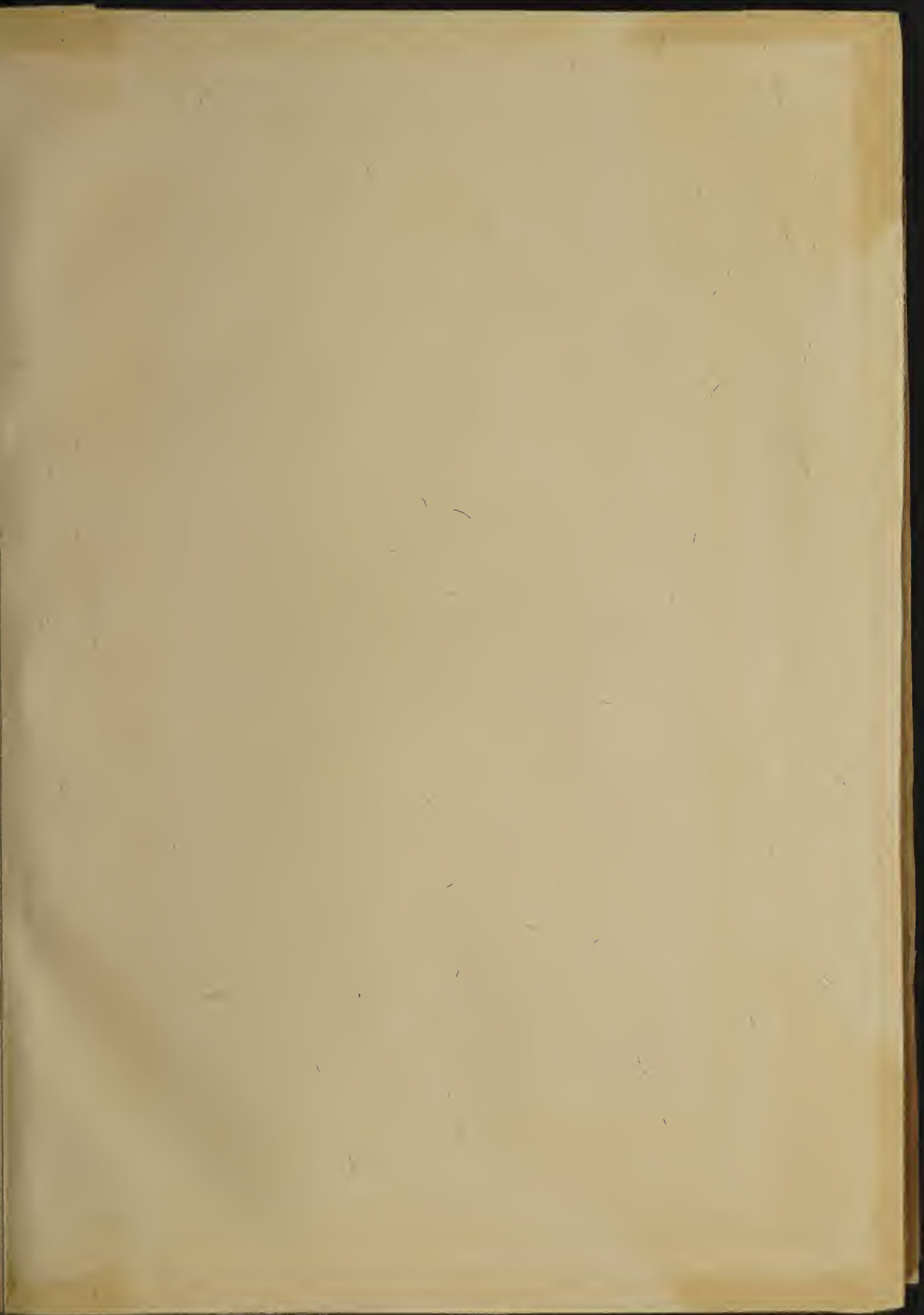
346 HORSES—Markham (Geruase) Maister Peece,  
 all knowledge belonging to Ferrier, or Horse-  
 Leech, *curious frontispiece* by ELSTRACK, *with*  
*verses opposite*, the Winde of the front, 1656.—  
 The Second Book of Chyrurgery, being only  
 outward infirmities, called by the HORSE-LEECH-  
 CRAFT, HORSES SCORPANCES, *woodcuts of Ana-*  
*tomy, Farriers' Instruments, &c.*, 2 vols in 1, sm.  
 4to, calf neat, 7s 6d  
 "Dedicated to the EARL OF CARNARVON," 1651

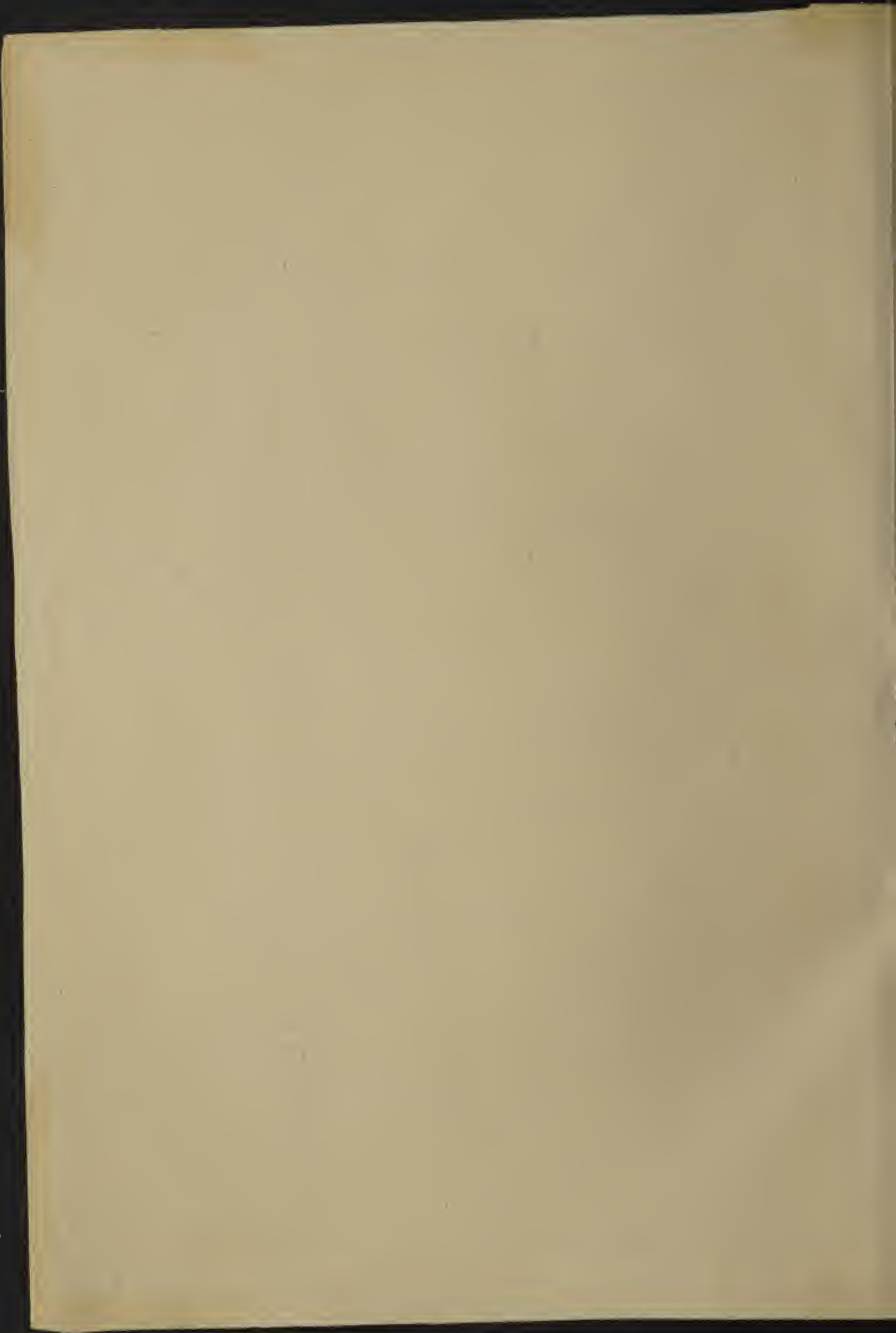


ACCESSION NUMBER

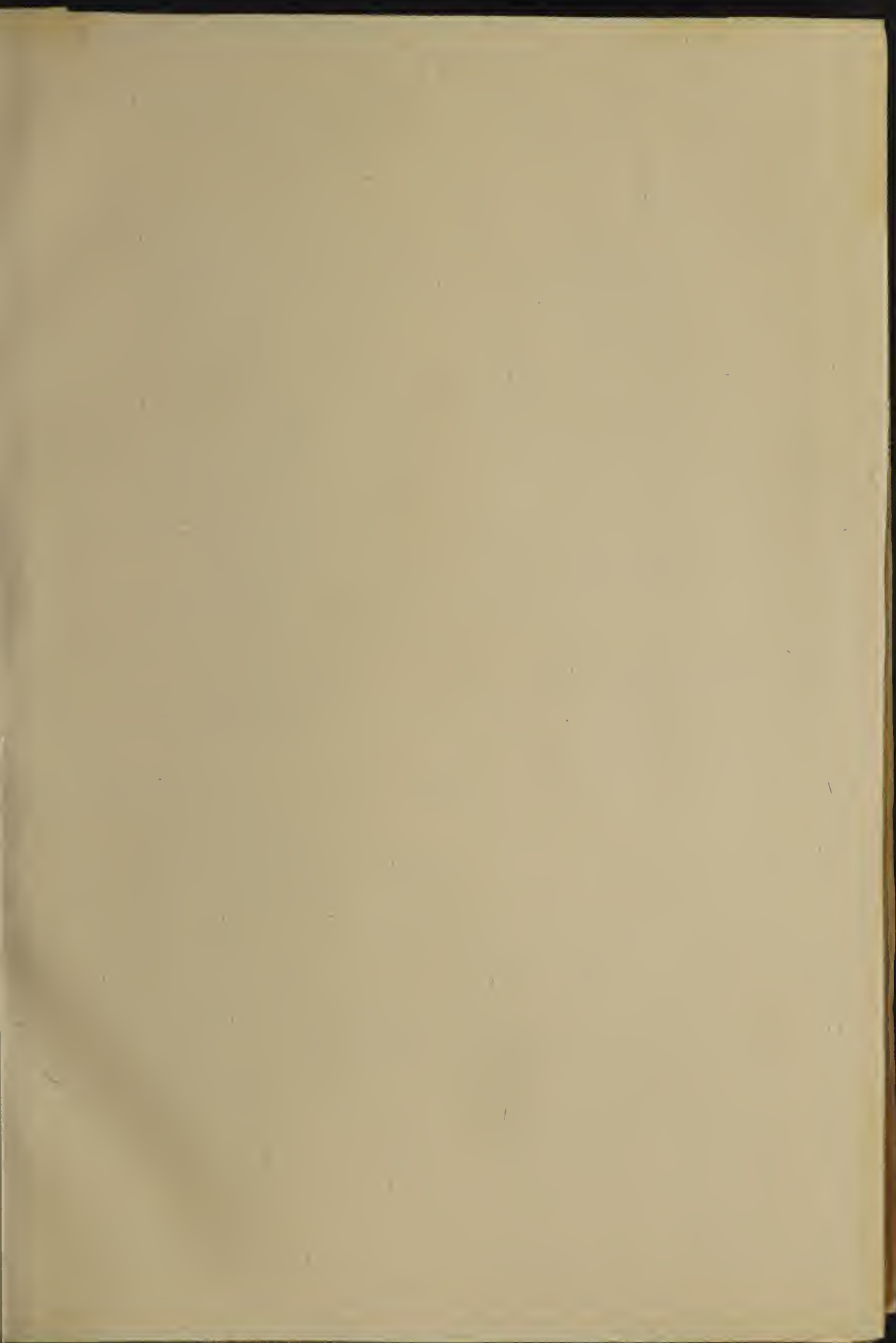
PRESS MARK

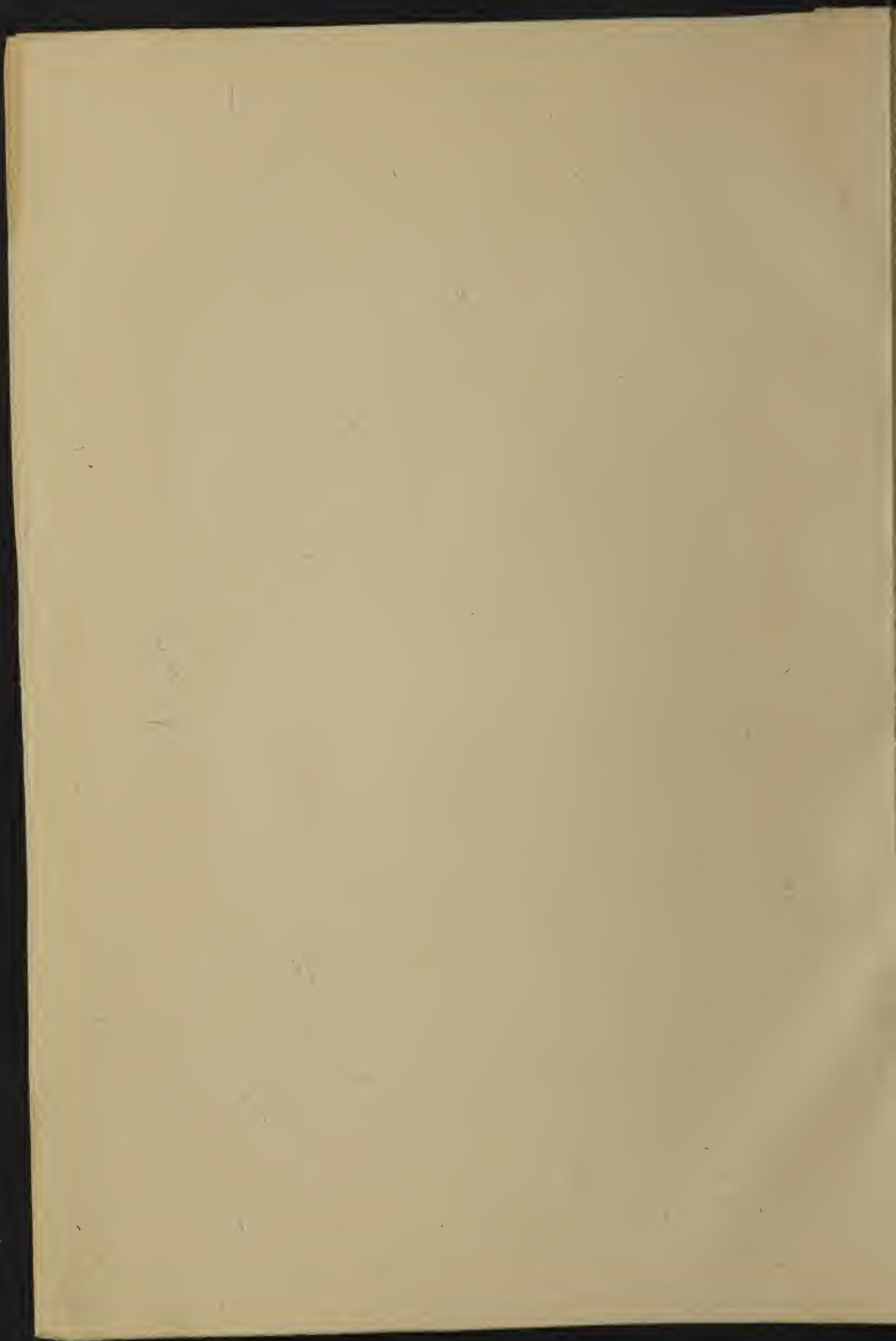
Last (blank) leaf and folding  
woodcut wanting











1601

Maister Taylor Lincolne North  
Dore to the Bordered Entry  
Be Andrew Great & Little  
More Gate London



*The Minde or Meaning of  
the Frontispeece.*

**T**He figure 1. a compleat *Horseman* shoves,  
That *Rides, Keeper, and Cures,* & all perfections  
The 2. *Diet*; 3. letting blood, (knowes.  
Best *Balme of Balmes* for inward Griefes most good;  
The 4. *Wounds, Galls, and Sores* doth firmly cure,  
The 5. helpes *Natures* markes; 6. doth procure  
Helpe for the *Sinewes* griefes, as *Slip* or *Straine,*  
*Knocke* or *Convulsion,* all are helpt againe.  
The 7. wholesome *Drinke*; the 8. doth take  
*Bloud* from the *Mouth,* that sudden death doth flake.  
The 9. shewes the *Horse-caudle,* or the *Marsh,*  
Good as the best, yet some Fooles count it Trash.  
The 10. shewes *Fury* in untamed things,  
The onely *Fountaine* whence *Diseases* springs.





**MARKHAMS**  
Maister: Peece.

Containing all knowledge  
belonging to Smith, Farrier, or  
Horse-leech, touching the  
curing of all diseases  
in Horses.

Deuided into two bookes.  
The first, containing all  
cures Physicall.

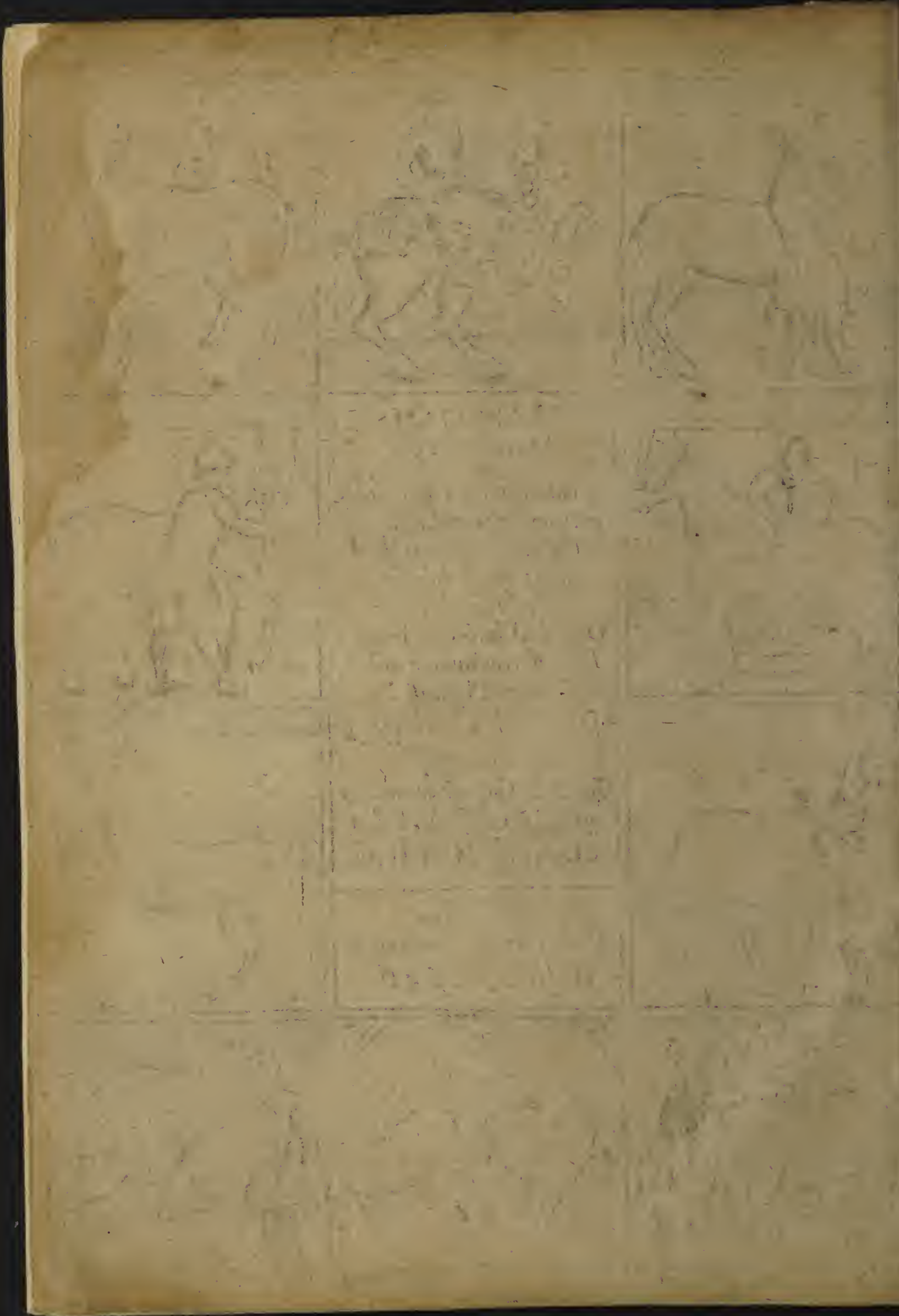
The second, all belonging  
to Chyrurgery.

The 8<sup>th</sup> Impression, corrected  
and enlarged by the Author.  
Geruase Markham.



LONDON  
Printed by William  
Wilson \* 1656.






**MARKHAMS**  
**MAISTER-PEECE:**  
 CONTAINING

All knowledge belonging to the Smith,  
 Farrier, or Horse-Leech, touching the Curing  
 of all Diseases in Horses: Drawne with great paine,  
 and most approved experience, from the publick pra-  
 ctise of all the Forraigne Horse-Marshals in Christendome;  
 and from the private practise of all the best  
 Farriers of this Land.

*Being divided into two Bookes.*

The First containing all Cures Physicall: The  
 Second, all belonging to Chirurgery; with an Additi-  
 on of 160. principall Chapters, and 370. most excellent  
 Medicines, never written of, nor mentioned in  
 any Authour whatsoever.

*Together with the true Nature, Use, and Quality of every  
 Simple spoken of through the whole Wo ke.*

Now the eighth time newly Imprinted, Corrected, and  
 Augmented, with above thirty new Chapters, and above forty  
 new Medicines that are most certaine and approved; and here-  
 tofore never published, which you shall finde noted thus . All  
 which never was made knowne, but concealed in the Au-  
 thours brest for his owne credit.

---

Written by **GERVASE MARKHAM, Gent.**

---

*A just man hath pittie on his Beast, but the mercies of the wicked  
 are cruell. Prov. 21. 10.*

---

Imprinted at London by *W. Wilson*, and are to be sold  
 by *George Sawbridge* at the Bible on *Ludgatehill*. 1656.







T O T H E

R I G H T H O N O V R A B L E  
A N D M Y N O B L E L O R D

Sir *ROBERT DORMER*

Baronet, Baron Dormer of *Wing*

Viscount *Ascot* Earle of *Carnar-*

*von*, and Master of his Majesties

Hawkes.

S I R,



*Ver since I came to serve  
your Country in Military  
occasions ; I accounted my  
selfe your servant , and to  
that end have made strong  
intimation : But Multa Cadent, Many*

*A 4*

*Haps*

---

The Epistle Dedicatory.

---

Haps binder hopes : now left to mine owne power, I could not finde any thing that could so well expresse mee to your Lordship, or shew you what I am, either in affection or Vertue, as the Dedication of this Booke which containes me amply and fully adorned with the best of mine owne Feathers. And howsoever it may appeare to your Honour with an old countenance, both because my Selfe, the Title, and much of the matter is old, yet let mee give assurance unto your Noble goodnesse, that there is that newnesse of Truth, Art, and approved experience which unto this day hath not bene discovered in any other Author. It is more ( my Noble Lord ) then fifty yeares agoe since I beganne to sayle in this Ocean, and to discover the fruitsfull Trafficke of this needfull Art: Nor have I in the interim of Time beene a Treuant, but with my best meanes and abilities

The Epistle Dedicatory.

abilities have pursued it ( as neere as I could ) unto the height of perfection , and doubtlesse ( much honored Sir , ) I have not lost all my labour , what I have gained I have here now newly inserted , and send it in all humility to kisse your Lordships hand ; not as a materiall thing worthy your Study , but as a poore vertue that needs your defence . And howsoever I dare not set it forth as a present worthy your acceptance , yet bee pleasd to make it such by your favour , which can make meane deserving appeare to be of greatest merit . This Obligation now offered unto your worthy hand is the free offering of my love , service and affection : and in a word of my selfe , who am as well as my Worke devoted to be ever yours . This Booke is but the externall pledge which doth demonstrate the inward obligation of my heart , since what I am , Art , soule and affection

is

---

The Epistle Dedicatory.

---

is onely Yours ; and desire to be so esteemed in all my actions , especially in this Worke. If it arrive with as good successe, as I transport it with sincere devotion, no doubt but the worke will gaine luster , and my selfe shall finde that satisfaction which shall make me ever acknowledge my selfe

Your Honours humble devoted  
Servant,

Geruase Markham.



AN  
ADMONITION

To the Reader which I would  
wish him to reade before hee  
peruse the Booke.

**T**wo errors (gentle Reader)  
bath been laid to my charge  
in the first Publication of  
this Booke, as nanely a  
mistaking in the Table of  
Additions wanting direction: And the  
great Multiplicity, or heaping together of  
many Medicines for one grieffe, without  
distinguishing their goodnesse, or foretel-  
ling the Practitioner on which to relye for  
his best profit and assurance.

The

---

To the Reader.

---

The first was but a veniall escape in the Printer, and may be forgotten, in as much as it is in this Impression fully amended. For the second, which is the multiplicity of medicines, I have for thy satisfaction to all those Medicines which of mine owne knowledge I have to be certaine and most approved, and to be the best of those which are coupled with it; I have in the Margent and over against the Medicine placed this marke ☞: As also to every new Addition and new Chapter, (never before Published,) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this ☞: And for thy better furtherance in this Worke, I have likewise in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very excellencies of all my knowledge) placed this Marke also ☞: And this I have done for two Reasons.

First, to make this Worke which was  
one

To the Reader.

one of my first, and intituled my Master-peece, a true Master-peece indeede, and so exact in every part, that other stoln pee-ces and Pamphlets Christned in my name, and printed without my knowledge or assistance, with twice so many falshoods as pages, may bee knowne to bee both Bastards and Abortive: mistaking an ounce for halfe an ounce; three handfull for two: too much of one simple, and too little of another, of which whosoever maketh tryall, will, without he hath had some knowledge already, indanger his horse; and therefore I have given many men notice my selfe of it; because they have taken one thing for another.

And that the bumbasted Title, and the illitterate and absurd Epistles, were neither the one nor the other of my invention: For I must most ingenuously confesse, that but to this booke, and my first, I was never

so

---

To the Reader.

---

so happy as to be made a Godfather.

And lastly, to wish all those which are abused by false and imperfect Printings, to come to this booke for Correction, which is a Cabinet that containes all & more then others struggle for. I can give the Reader no better a Reason to perswade him to reade my booke, then to shew him the reall use of horses well managed according to the Rules of Horsemanship, he is fit for feates of armes, and triumphs in war, and a great pittie it is that such an excellent beast should any way miscarry for want of knowing his Naturall diseases and the cure thereof. I have now made the Souldier and all others Masters of Art in the cures of their horses, if Farriers be failing to advise and consider with them; for it is a knowledge fit for a Gentleman both in peace and war, to be able to cure the diseases incident to his horses: for other Countries doe love all experiments

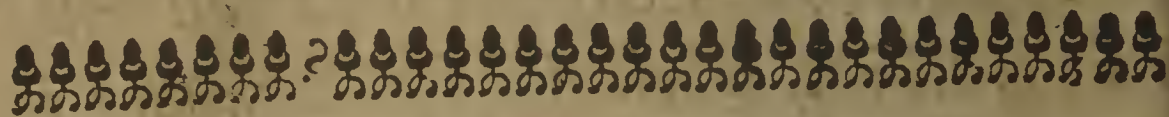


To the Reader.

ments, and to be seen generally in all generous practises, whereof Horseman-ship is one of the chiefest: which worke I will justifie upon my reputation to have beene tried by me, and hath wrought good effect; having these fifty yeares been a practitioner in the same, and did never thinke to have disclosed these secrets that now I have; which time & my industry hath brought to light; and because old age groweth upon me, and that the grave will bee never a whit the better; I thought therefore to divulge them to the world, rather then to have hid them in oblivion; desiring the Reader to give God the glory, and me but onely thanks and good wishes; so I rest,

Thine,

G. M.



The Authors Names from whom any thing in this Work is collected, being the best Farriers.

These are Publicke.

<i>Zenophon</i>	<i>Liball</i>
<i>Rusticus</i>	<i>Stevens</i>
<i>Vegetius</i>	<i>Wickers</i>
<i>Pelagonius</i>	<i>La Brove</i>
<i>Camerarius</i>	<i>Martine senior</i>
<i>Apollonius</i>	<i>Albiterio</i>
<i>Gresson</i>	<i>Vinet</i>
<i>Grilli</i>	<i>Clifford</i>
<i>Horatio</i>	<i>Maskall</i>
<i>Gloria de Caballi</i>	<i>Markham.</i>

These are private.

<i>Martine Junior</i>	<i>Day</i>
<i>Webb</i>	<i>Barnes</i>
<i>Dallidonne Senior</i>	<i>Mayfield</i>
<i>Dallidonne Junior</i>	<i>Lupman</i>
<i>Ausbourne</i>	<i>Goodsoone</i>
<i>Stanley</i>	<i>Parfray</i>
<i>Smith</i>	<i>White.</i>
<i>Dowling</i>	



THE  
**FIRST BOOKE**  
 CONTAINING ALL CURES  
 Physicall, or such infirmities as being in  
 ward, crave the Administration of Physick,  
 and are called in Horse-Leach craft,  
*Horse sicknesses.*

CHAP. I.

*Of the naturall Composition of Horses Bodies.*



Touching the true composition of  
 a Horses body, you shall under-  
 stand, that it is (as the body of  
 Man,) compounded of thirteen  
 severall things; that is to say,  
 seven naturall, and six not na-  
 turall: The seven naturall are,

*Elements, Temperaments, Humours, Members,  
 Powers, or Vertues, Actions, or Operations, and  
 Spirits;* all which bee called naturall, because  
 the naturall Profession and Excellency of every  
 sensible body, doth wholly depend upon them:  
 and hath his moving no longer then they have

B

power

power of working. The sixe, which are not naturall, be the *Ayre*, *Meate* and *Drinke*, *Motion* and *Rest*, *Sleepe* and *Watch*, *Emptinesse* and *Fulnesse*, and the *Affects* or *Motions* of the minde; and these are called not naturall, because as (being rightly and in due order applyed) they preferue, sustaine, and fortifie the body; so being mis-governed, or used in any excessse, or disorder, they are the only corrupt destroyers of the whole body,; and of these thirteen simples which compound the *Fabricke*, or whole frame of the body, I intend to speake severally.

#### CHAP. II.

##### *Of the foure Elements, their Vertues and Operations.*

**F**irst, for the exposition of the word *Element*, you shall understand, that it is the primary or first beginning of all things, being of it selfe pure, uncorrupt, and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at the last being resolved into the same againe. It is also in its own nature so bright, clear, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not able to be discerned by any sensible eye whatsoever. Lastly, it is the least part or *Atome* of that thing which is made or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usuall first movers, or beginners of all moving things, there are only foure in number, that is to say: *Fire*, *Ayre*, *Water* and *Earth*; meaning not that *Fire*, *Ayre*, *Water*, and *Earth*, which is visible here with us beneath, and which through the grossnesse thereof, is both pal-  
pable

pable and to be discerned ; but those which are mounted aloft, and through their purity invisible and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded bodies, and not simple.) And of these perfect and distinct Elements you shall know, that the fire is the highest, as being fixed or joyned next unto the Moone, being hot and dry, yet naturally exceeding, or being most predominant, or ruling in heate.

The *Ayre* is placed next unto *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot, yet this predominant or chiefe quality is moist.

The *water* is joyned unto the *Ayre* ; the disposition thereof being heavy and moist ; but his predominant or chiefe quality only cold.

Lastly, the *Earth*, adjoyned to the *water*, is the lowest ; and it is most heavy and cold, but the predominant or chiefe quality thereof is only drinesse.

Now for the vertues, properties, and operations of these foure Elements, you shall understand, that first the Fire, by meanes of his heate, moveth matter to generation, and stirreth up warmth in all living things, it is that which the Philosophers call *Heterogenea*, which is in the mixt bodies to separate things of divers kindes one from another, and also to joyne things of like kinds together, which they likewise call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the fire the bones of Horses are separated from the flesh, the flesh from the sinewes, the sinewes from the veines, the veines from the arteries, the heart from the liver, liver from the spleene, and so forth, in such sort as wee see the divers parts of the fuell wee burne, by

the vertue of the fire and heat to be separated and divided one from another, as the vapour from the smoake, the smoke from the flame, and the flame from the ashes. And as in these things, so in many other things, as in the triall of Metals, and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heat separateth body from body, that is, metall from metall, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the self same kind. Besides, the vertue of the fire, is to ripen, order, and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the pores, that the air being somewhat more solid and grosse, may enter into the body: And lastly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldness of the Water and the Earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the bodie.

Touching the vertue and operation of the aire, you shall understand, that by the moistnesse thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive shape, either naturall, or accidintall, and by the helpe and assistance of the fire, bringeth the powers and influences of the Heavens and Stars into the inferiour bodies, making the mixt bodies not only subtill and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither bee too grosse, nor too heavy. Secondly, the aire through his moistnesse cooleth the burning heate of the heart, liver, and intrails, as wee daily see by the office of the lights and lungs, which like a paire of bellowes draweth uncessantly fresh ayre unto the heart and inward members. And albeit the Ayre doth not seeme to the sence of the outward eyes,

eyes, to bee any thing neere so moyft as the Water, yet according to the opinions both of our Bookes and best Phyficians, it is by much the moifter, which is well proved (fay they) by the abundant fluxe it containeth, which fluxe spreadeth it felfe fo farre abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof with the fpeciall properties and Characters of moistneffe, and by that reason is much harder to bee kept within his owne bounds then the water is. Lastly, as the water was altered by God from his firft naturall place, for the better profit both of Man and beaft; even fo the Ayre, according to Schoole-mens opinions, was not left altogether in his firft naturall difpofition, left being over-moyft it fhould fo confound and fuffocate all Sence, that neither Man nor Beaft fhould bee able to breath or live.

Now for the Vertue and operation of the water, it is to be noted, that through the coldneffe thereof; it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies both parts and members together, which bee of divers kinds; as bones with flesh and finewes, flesh with finewes and bones, and finewes with bones and flesh. Even as for a familiar example, wee fee in the time of any great Frost, the ftrength of the cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one maffe or fubftance both Water, dirt, ftones, ftrawes, ftickes and leaves: The water alfo with its coldneffe, doth temper and coole the inflammation and heate of the fire, gathering together thofe things which otherwife the violent heat would difperfe and fcatte abroad.

Lastly, for the vertue and operation of the Earth, it is through his drinesse in mixt bodies, so to harden and fixe them together, that they may retayne their shapes, which otherwise by the power of the Ayre and Water, would bee so soluble and loose, that they could not hold together ; as wee may see in Paste, Waxe, and such like, which whilest it is moist, will receive no print, but being once hardened, it retaineth any forme that is prest into it. And here is to bee noted, that according to the opinion of *Hippocrates*, when any sensible body dyeth, not onely every quality, but every substance and part makes his returne to the Element from whence it came ; as heate to the Fire, moistnesse to the Ayre, coldnesse to the Water, and drinesse to the Earth. And thus briefly you see, that of these foure common Elements, or common beginners of things ; the fire being hot, separateth ; the ayre being moist, shapeth ; the water being cold, bindeth ; and the earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The use that you are to make of this knowledge, over and besides the composition of a naturall body, is, that when you find any sickness, or infirmity, which proceedeth from the fire, as inflammations of the body, or such like ; that then you apply simples of the nature of the Ayre or Water, which may moisten and coole the violence of the heate. If the infirmity proceed from the Ayre, as fluxe of bloud, or too much moisture ; then you shall apply simples of the nature of the fire or earth, whose heate and drinesse may disperse and harden such moisture. If the disease spring from the Water, as  
colds



Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and such like; then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire and ayre; that through the heat of the one, and the moist lightnesse of the other, all such cold, grosse, and solid humours may be dispersed. But if the disease proceed from the earth, as Manginesse and Leprosie, or their like, that are dry and hardned infections, then you shall seeke simples of the nature of the fire only, whose heat may dissolve and loosen those ill-knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you see too much heate is abated by coldnesse and moistnesse; too much moistnesse by heate and drinesse, too much coldnesse by heate and moistnesse, too much drinesse by heat only.

Thus much of these foure common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, sensible and unsensible; yet of sensible things, which live and have bloud, there be other more neer Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or generation; as the ingendring seed, and menstruall bloud, from whence every Beast taketh his first shape and beginning; and yet those proper beginnings have their whole dependency and hanging upon the qualities of the first common beginnings already spoken of, which is moist, dry, hot, and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can doe any thing.

## CHAP. III.

*Of Temperaments and their severall kindes, and how far every way they extend in Horses.*

**T**Hese *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the second thing in a horses composition, doe spring from the commixture of the foure Elements and the ninth in number, whereof eight are unequall, and the ninth is equall. Of the eight unequall, foure are simple, and those be hot, cold, moist, cold and dry, which physitians call the first Qualities; and of these, the first two be Active, and the other two passive: the other foure are compound, and they be hot and moist, hot and dry, cold and moist, cold and dry. Now the equall temperament is divided into two, an universall and a speciall. The equall *Temperament universall*, is when the foure Elements are in an equall proportion generally divided through the whole body, Nature injoying no more from the one then from the other. The equall *Temperament especiall*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth most properly require, be it either Plant or Beast: In Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements which are proper to its kinde, the hot Plant being hot, the cold being cold, &c. Whereas contrariwise, to have a hot Plant cold, or a cold hot, to have Rue cold, or Sorrell hot, were a false and unequall commixture of Elements. So likewise of Beasts, that Horse, that Dogge, that Swine is said to have his due *Temperament*, when hee is of such temperature as is most

most proper unto his kinde, which onely is best discerned by his actions, or motions. As thus, the Horse is knowne to bee hot and moist by his lightnesse, swiftnesse, valiantnesse, and long life, and also to bee of a temperate nature, in that hee is easily tamed, docible, obedient and familiar with the man. And so long as either Horse, or any other thing, continueth in the mediocrity and excellency of his proper temperament, so long wee may truely judge him of a good temper and disposition; but if there bee any over-flow of qualities, or exercise in his humours, as either heat, coldnesse, moistnesse, or drynesse, then we say he is either a hot cholerick horse, a cold dull horse, a dry mischievous horse, or a moist cowardly horse, according to the over-flow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Againe, every Horse is said to have his due *Temperament* according to his age, and the Country wherein hee is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the yeare wherein hee liveth. And thus a horse in his foale-age, which is till he be sixe yeares old, is naturally hot and moist. In his middle age, which is till twelve, more hot and dry then moist; and in his old age, which is past eighteen, more cold and dry, then either hot or moist. So likewise the horses which are bred in Southerne parts, as eyther in *Spaine*, *Barbary*, or *Greece*, are naturally more hot then those which are bred either in the seven-teen Lands, *Germany* or *England*, neither is there any horse which is in good state of body, that is so hot in the spring-time of the yeare, as in the Summer, nor so cold in the Summer as in Winter. All  
which

which observations are with most curious diligence to be observed of every Horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any sicknesse: for unlesse hee consider their natures and temperatures, and every other circumstance already declared, hee shall right soone bee deceived in the administration of his Physicke. Therefore I earnestly desire ever Farrier, before hee give any drench or potion, first to inquire the kinde, race, and disposition of the horse, next his age, then the Country, and lastly the time of the yeare: and so according to the truth thereof, to mixe his receipts.

It is most expedient also, for every Horse-leach to consider the second qualities, which are so called, because they take their beginnings from the first qualities already declared; of which second qualities some be called palpable, or to be touched, as these, softnesse, hardnesse, smoothnesse, roughnesse, toughnesse, bricklenesse, lightnesse, heavinesse, thinnesse, thicknesse, smallnesse, grossnesse, & such other like. Some againe are not palpable, as those which appertaine to hearing, seeing and smelling, as noyses, colours, odours, and such like; and by observing well the second qualities, hee shall with much ease know whether the horse be disposed to any sicknesse or not, as shall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

### CHAP. III.

*Of humours, and to what end they serve.*

**N**OW concerning *Humours*, which are the third composers of a Horse's body, and so likewise of every  
every

every other beast also; you shall understand that they are foure in number, that is to say, *Bloud*, *Flegme*, *Choler* and *Melancholy*. Astouching *Bloud*, it is in its nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moyst, and sweet in taste; as participating of the elements fire and ayre. *Flegme* is cold and moist, and either sweet or wallowish without any taste at all, as participating of the Elements, water and aire; *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taste, as participating of the elements, fire and earth. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, and in tast sowre and heavy, as participating of the elements water and earth: so that these foure humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the elements. For to speake briefly, and according to the manner of Physicians; *Bloud* is of the nature of the ayre, in being most predominat therein; *Flegme* of the nature of water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholy* of the nature of the earth. And albeit these humours are symbolized or mixt through every part of the body: yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part then in another, and have their places of residence absolute and peculiar to themselves; as *Bloud* about the heart; *Flegme* in the braine; *Choler* in the liver; and *Melancholy* in the spleene. Now as these humours doe more or lesse abound, or have greater or lesser soverainty in the Horse: so is the beast naturally better or worse coloured, qualified, or disposed, as thus: That horse in whom bloud hath the greatest predominance, and may be called a Horse sanguine, is bright, bay of colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That Horse in whom  
flegme

flegme hath the greatest dominion, and may bee called a flegmaticke horse, is for the most part of a milkie white colour, and so consequently slow, dull, and heavy. If Choler beare the greatest rule in his constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrell, and by that meanes of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, if the earth have gotten power above the other Elements, so that hee may bee called a melancholly Horse, then his colour is commonly a Mouse dunne, and his disposition cowardly, faint, and slothfull. But because these particularities are properly appertayning to the complexions of Horses, of which wee shall have cause to speake more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater relations; onely I give you thus much in conclusion: to understand that every one of these aforesaid humors hath his proper use and end whereunto it serveth, as thus. *Bloud* serveth more properly to nourish the body. *Flegme* giveth motion to the joynts: *Melancholly* begetteth an appetite or longing to his meat. Now during the time that these humors doe possesse their naturall qualities, so long they are wholesome, and be called by their simple names, without glosse or addition; but if by any mischance they bee disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholesome, and are no longer called by their simple names, but have other Epithetons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly bloud*, *Salt flegme*, *Choler a dust* or *burnt Choler*, and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof procedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of humors.

And

## CHAP. V.

*Of Members, and their severall kinds.*

**T**ouching *M mbers*, which are the fourth maine instrument in this great fabricke of a horses body, they are by School-men divided into two parts: The first is called *Similaria*; which is like, semblable, or one and the samething: The other is called *Instrumentall*, and are contrary to the first.

*Members alike* are those, which being separated, or distributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature, as flesh, bone, sinew, and such like: for flesh being cut or incised into many parts, yet is every part still flesh, so reputed, and so called, as well as when it was in combination altogether; and as of this, so likewise may it be said of bones, sinewes, and their like.

Now for *Members Instrumentall*, they bee those which being made of parts semblable, and divided into parts; yet the parts are not alike, neither have all one name with the whole, as the head, legge, foot, and such like: for every part of the head is not called the head, not every part of the legge, the legge; but have other appellations, as the brow, the temples, the knee, the feete-locke, &c. Now these instrumentall members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection then the semblable members: wherefore Schoole-men have made amongst these instrumentall members, foure sovereigns or princes above the rest; that is, the *Braine*,  
the

the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the first three are the preservers of the singular body; and the fourth of the whole kinde: the first three giving motion and agitation to the body, the fourth generation and increase to succeeding ages.

Now from these principall members, like branches from a well grown Tree, doe spring other members: which doe them service: as from the braine springe the sinewes, whose office is feeling: from the heart arteries, whose office is sprightnesse and lively-hood, from the liver veines, whose office is warmth and strength; and from the stones the seed-vessels, whose office is procreation and increase. Now forasmuch as from these doe likewise proceed a world of other members, as *Tendons*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleenes*, *Guts*, and such like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chirurgicalian, then to the Physitian (though most necessary to both) I am here to advertise every studious Reader, that when he shall have occasion to meddle with any member about a horse, that he turne to the second booke of this Volume, which treateth onely of Chirurgery, and there hee shall not onely finde every member and lineament in a Horse, but also the true Anatomie so lively demonstrated, that there shall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his understanding. And thus much in this place of Members.



## CHAP. VI.

Of Powers, and how a Horses body is governed by them.

**P**Owers, which by some are called *Vertues*, or principall faculties, and do governe and controll both the body of man and beast, and have the first place in this work, are in numbers three, that is, the *power animall*, the *power vitall*, and the *power naturall*. The *power animall* is a vertue incident to the braine, which through the finewes comming like little conduit pipes from the braine, distributeth feeling and moving to all the parts of the body. The *power vitall* is a vertue belonging to the hearte, which doth give life and spirit to all the body by meanes of the arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the chiefe fountain of naturall heat, carries in there little chanells over the whole body, that ayre and spirituall bloods which makes it full of lightnesse and alacrity: The *power naturall* is a vertue belonging to the liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof, by meanes of the veines, which doe likewise proceed from the liver, like greater conduits, carrying the blood from the liver, which is the fountaine of blood, into every part of the body. Besides the *power naturall* containeth foure other vertues, that is, the vertue *attractive*, which draweth food meet to sustaine the body, the vertue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the foode received: the vertue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same; and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*.

*pulsive*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluties. Thus these powers or vertues being of no lesse validity then perceive by this discourse, it is the part and duty of every good Horse-leach, to have a more carefull and vigilant respect unto them, for if any of them faile, the horse cannot live. Therefore whensoever you see that either your horse refuseth his food, or that hee cannot retaine and keep his food, but casteth it up againe, or that hee doth not digest his foode, but keepes it corruptly in his stomacke, or that hee cannot avoid his excrements in a naturall manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certaine signes or mortall sicknesse: And thus much of powers or vertues,

#### CHAP. VII.

*Of Actions or Operations, and whereto they belong.*

**A**S touching *Actions* or *Operations*; which are the sixt columnne or pillar which doth uphold this naturall body of which we treat, they are not onely belonging, but even derived from the three powers imediatly spoken of in the former chapter, as thus; The action and operation of the *power animall* is to discern, to move, and to feele. Horses discern by meanes of the vertue *Imaginative*, *Discoursative*, and *Memorative*, whereof the first is placed in the forehead, the second in the middle of the braine, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the *power animall*. Horses move by meanes of the vertue *motive*, whose actions  
and

and operation is to stayne or let slacke the sinewes, whereby every member hath his moving. And Horses feeling is by meanes of the vertue *sensitive*, whose action or operation is busied in the five senses, as to *See, Heare, Smell, Tast, and Touch*, and all these actions spring from the *Power animall*.

The action or operation of the *Power vitall*, is to restraine and loosen the heart and the arteries, which proceed from the heart, which actions whether it be hurt or disturbed in a horses body, is easily known of every good *Farrier* or *Horse-marshall*, by the unequall beating of his pulse; that is to say, of the Arteries, which commeth downe from the heart to the insides of both his foure legges, a little below the knuckles of his shoulders, and likewise crosse both the Temples of his head, a little higher then his eyes. And if any man be so simple, to imagine that the thicknes of the Horses skin shall be an impediment to the feeling of this motion, let him remember, that as a horses skin is thicker then a mans; so also are his arteries greater, and beate with more violence, and so consequently be felt without any great difficulty.

The actions or operations of the *Power naturall*, are to *ingender, to encrease, to nourish, to desire with appetite, to attract, to change, to digest, to retaine, and to expell, and many other of like kinde*. These actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier* to the intend that he may learne by them, not onely the whole estate of a horses body, but also what particular member therof is evil affected, as thus: if either in your Horse you finde much forgetfulnesse, unnimblenes of his Limbes, or dulnesse upon correction, it

is a signe of *sicknesse* in the braine, and that the *power animall* is evill affected. If you find that his *Pulses* do beate extraordinarily flow, or much too fast, it is a signe that his heart is grieved, and his *Power vitall* evill affected, but if you find that he doth consume, pine away, and loseth his stomach, it is a signe that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *power naturall* evill affected.

Now you shall againe understand, that of actions some be *voluntary*, some not *voluntary*.

The *voluntary* actions be those which a horse may either further or hinder, stay or let when themselves please, as the moving of the Legges: for they may goe, stand, or lye downe at their owne pleasure.

The actions not *voluntary* are those which depend not upon the will of any Beast, but be done of their owne accord and naturally, as the moving of the Heart and of the arteries, and the passage of the blood; the first whereof beateth *sleeping* and *waking*: and the other hath his course every minute. And thus much of the actions and operations.

#### CHAP. VIII.

*Of Spirits, and in what part of the Horses body they remaine.*

**S**pirits, which is the seventh naturall builder of this naturall Worke, are to be understood to bee that fine, pure, cleare, and a very substance, which is ingendred of the finest part of the blood, whereby the vertue of every principall member may visite all the other

ther parts of the body, making them to doe their duties, according to the rules of nature. Now of spirits, according to the opinions of some Physitians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit animall*, and the *Spirit vitall*: The *Spirit animall* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horse, and hath his resting place in the Braine, from whence through the Sinews, it is dispersed into all other parts of the Body: and it is ingendred of the vitall spirit, being more vehemently wrought and laboured, and partly of continuall breathing: Even so it is partly preserved by the *Chaule* of the braine, which doth hourelly water and nourish it.

The *Spirit vitall* is contained in the heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the body, being the chiefe cause of all naturall heate; and it is preserved and nourished both by breathing and blood.

To these two spirits, there be some *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which adde a third spirit, and call it the *Spirit naturall*, saying it hath his residence in the *liver* and the *veines*, but the two former are of such power, and have such superiority, that the body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: wherefore it is the office of the *Farriers* continually, in all his Medicines to have either some comfortable Simple, which may maintaine and keepe the Spirits in their full strength, lively-hood, and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and those seven naturall things which compact a naturall body.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the fixe things not naturall, how they profit, and how they hurt.*

**H**AVING spoken of the naturall things whereof a Horses body is compounded, it is needfull now that wee speake something of the other fixe which be not *Naturall*, so farre forth as they concerne the office of the *Farrier*, and no further; for with other matters wee have not to doe. The first thing then which is not naturall, yet perserveth a Horses body in good state, is the ayre, which being pure, sharpe, cleare and piercing, giveth great life and nourishment to a horse: but being contrary, that is, grosse, thicke, and full of putrifaction, it cannot chuse but alter the good Habit of his body, and breed in him many infirmities. Therefore every *Farrier* shall have great respect to the ayr wherein a horse either liveth, or was bred in, as if a Horse that was bred in a hot aire, come to live in a cold, and through the exchange grow sicke, the *Farrier* shall by warme diet, close house, and moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a stronger acquaintance: Also when a horse exceedeth in any of the foure qualities, that is, in heate, moistnesse, coldnesse, or drinesse, it is best for him to live in that aire which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Lastly in many diseases, the change of the ayre is most wholesome, as shall be shewed at large in the particular diseases.

For the meate and drinke of a Horse, which is the second thing not naturall in a horses composition, it  
is

is not to be doubted, but whilst it is sweet, cleane and good, as bread well made and baked, dry Oates, dry Beans, dry Pease, sweet hay, sweet straw, or short grasse, so long it nourisheth and preserveth the horses body: But if it be tusty, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barley, then must he needs be unsound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrier* shall bee carefull to keepe him from all such food as breeds naughty evill Bloud: as for his water, the more pure it is, the better; and the more muddy, thicke, and pleasant, so much the more unhealthfull.

Now for this moving and rest, that is, either his travell or standing still, which is the third thing not naturall in a horses composition, doubtles they be great *preservers* of a horses health; for as moderate exercises dissolve grosse humours, ingenders a ppetite, and addes strength unto the limbes, so likewise indifferent Rest causeth digestion, comforteth the sinewes, and maketh the heart cheerful against ensuing labor. But on the contrary part, immoderate travell or exercises, when a horse is ridden beyond his strength, breedeth many dangerous and mortall sicknesses, as the foundring in the body, the Consumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten grease and such like, besides the pissing of *bloud*, *manginess*, *farby*, and such like: All which inward diseases crave strong *Purges*, and the outward *sharpe* and *corroding* medicines. Immoderate Rest, which is when a Horse doth stand long still without any Exercise. Feeding foul and grossly is as great an enemy to a horses health as the other: for it congregateth and bindeth together all sorts of

ill humours, breeds corruption in the bloud, rottenness in the flesh and generally as many diseases as any ill diet whatsoever.

The sleepe or watch of a Horse ( which is the fourth thing in our Composition ) is so necessary a comfort to a horse, that he cannot live without it; it is the greatest mover of digestion : and so consequently gives comfort to the whole body. For whilst the Horse sleeps, the powers animal do take their rest, which otherwise would be over-wearied , and neither able to discharge their duties, nor to continue their actions and operations, which is the giving of feeling and moving only : and whilst a horse doth sleepe, the powers naturall have more liberty to do their worke, in concocting the meate, and comforting the body, in so much as I account sleep to be the only quieting of the senses, ordained by Nature to ingender strength. Sleepe is begotten by sweete, fatty, and grosse vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raised from the heart to the braine; with the coldnesse of which brain those vapours being congealed and thickned together, doe stop the pipes of the sensitive spirits, so as they can not resort to the instruments of the Senses, to give the body feeling & moving, whereby the body at that time is deprived of those motions. And according as those vapours doe more or lesse fill the pipes, so is the horses sleep more or lesse sound & undisturbed; but when this sleep shall at any time grow into excesse, & you shal perceive a horse to sleep beyond both nature & custome, then you shall know that such sleep commeth from an evill habit of the body, and is a  
signe



signe either of a *Lethargy* and a numbnesse of the spirits, or else that he hath some inward grief and paine in his limbs when he standeth; which being eased by lying, makes him covet a continual rest and sleeping. Now for the watch of a Horse, because it is the meer contrary to sleepe, there needs little to be said more then this; that as the excesse of the one sheweth the want of the other, so that the naturall working of either shewes the evill state of a horses body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect ensuing sicknesse.

Now for emptinesse and fulnesse ( which is the fift not naturall Compositor ) forasmuch as it is onely and adding to, and a taking away: some *Farriers* have held opinion, that all Physicke belonging to a Horses body, consisteth in them two only; and truely I am of this minde, that whosoever can take away corruption and adde perfection, shall without doubt ever keep an able and substantiall body. But to our purpose, of this fulnesse there are two sorts, the one fulnesse by excesse of humours, the other fulnesse by excesse of meate; either of which perturbing the spirits, are the grounds of sicknesse. Againe, excesse of humours are of two kinds, the one an equall encrease of all manner of humours gathered together, and the other particular excesse either of too much *Melancholy fleagme*, or other watrish humours whatsoever, the first being termed an abundance of humours, the latter an excesse of evill juyce or nutriment: lastly, there is fulnesse in quantity, and fulnesse in quality. Fulnesse in quantity is, when a horse is full of blood, or any other simple humour. Fulnesse in quality, is, when any of those humours are too hot, or too

Gold, too grosse, or too thinne. Now for emptinesse, as all diseases of fullnesse must bee cured by it onely, so all diseases of emptinesse must bee healed by fullnesse, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Friction*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a world of such like, as shall bee very largely set forth hereafter, in it's proper place.

Lastly, touching the affections of a horses minde, you shall understand, that so far forth as the sensitive Soule doth stretch, so far they have sense and feeling of affections, as namely, to love, to hate, to be angry to rejoyce, to be sorry, and to feare: For all which there needs no great *Apology*, sith wee have it in daily experience: as who seeth not the love of some Horses to their Keepers, their hate to strangers, their angers in their fights, their joyes in their prides and wooings, their sorrowes in their sicknesses, and their feares unto their Riders: now these affections, sith many times they are the grounds of strange motions in the body; therefore they ought carefully to bee looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the horse bee not over-pressed with any of them; especially fear and hatred, the first whereof compelleth the blood and spirits to fly to the inward parts, and to leave the outward without sence or feeling: and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce, and raging; both together breeds distemperature in a Horse, & those distemperatures ingender mortall sicknesses. *And thus much for these sixe things, being held not naturall in a Horses composition.*

## CHAP. X.

## Of Horses complexions.

HAVING spoken of those thirteen Naturall and not naturall things, whereof a Horses body is compounded, we will now in a somewhat more particular manner speake of the complexions of horses, which is one of the most necessary Faces that a *Farrier*, can behold, both for the judging of a horses infirmities, and also for the true compounding of his medicines for every disease: Therefore you shall first understand, that by the colour of the horse you shall ever judge his complexion: For looke which of the Elements is most predominate in him, for that Element wee draw his complexion, as thus. If hee participate more of the fire then of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a cholericke horse, and his colour is either a bright *sorrell*, a *coale-black* without any white, or an *Iron gray* unchangeable, that is such a Gray as neither will ever turne a *Dable gray* a *White* or a *Flea-bitten*, and these Horses are of nature *light, hot, fiery*, and seldome of any great strength. these Horse are much subject to pestilent Fevers, *Yellowes*, and inflammations of the *Liver*. Therefore every *Farrier* shall be careful in his composing of any medicine for such a Horse, to purge choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary strength in the potion or drench; Because the Horse being in his best strength, not reputed strong, should you apply any violent thing, to him that little strength being abated, there were great danger

danger in the confounding of the whole body.

If the horse participate more of the ayre then of the other elements, then is he of a sanguine complexion, and his colour is either a bright Bay, or a darke Bay, which hath neither skouling Countenance, mayly mouth, nor white flanke, or a white flea-bitten, white hyard like Silver, or black with a white *Star*, white rach, or white foote. These horses are of nature pleasant, nimble, free, and of good strength. The Diseases to them most incident, is Consumption of the *Liver*, leprosie, glanders, or any disease that is infectious. They are of a good strong constitution, and may endure strength in their Medicines, especially any thing that cooleth the Blood.

If the Horse participate more of the water then of the other Elements, then is he of a flegmatick complexion, and his colour is either milke-white, a yellow *Dun*, *Kite-glew*. or a *Pydeball*, in whom there is an equall mixture of colours, that is as much white as of the other colour; Otherwise if the Bay, the Blacke, or the Dun exceed the White, he is said to be of that complexion of which the colour is greatest. These horses are of nature slow, and apt to lose flesh: The Diseases which are most incident unto them; are *colds*, *head-ache*, *rheumes*, *staggers*, and such like. They are able to indure the reasonable strength of any Medicine, because the abundance of *flegme* which is in them, sufficeth both Nature, and the potion to worke upon: All cold simples are to them exceeding hurtfull, so are also they wich are violently hot in the third degree: the first because it bindeth too soone; the latter because it disperses too  
sud.

suddenly, therefore simples of a moderate meane are the best.

If the Horse participate more of the earth then of the other Elements, then is he of a melancholy complexion, and his colour a *Moose-dunne*, *Russet*, *Chestnut*, *Asbie gray*, *darke Bay*, with *mayly mouth*, *red* or *white flanke*, or a *reddish Bay*, having long white haire like *Goates* hair, growing on his leggs These Horses are of nature heavy, and faint-hearted; The diseases to them most incident, are inflammations in the *Spleen*, *Frenzie*, *Dropsie*, and such like. They are commonly of better strength then they will suffer to appeare by their actions, and are able to indure the strength of any reasonable medicine: all cicatrizing and dry simples are hurtfull unto them; the cold and moist are the most profitable.

Having thus shewed you these foure Complexions, *Cholericke*, *Sanguine*, *flegmatick*, and *Melancholy* together with their qualities and strengths, you shall understand now that amongst *Farriers* there is another Complexion, or fifth Constitution, which is called the composition or mixture of complexions: That is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the foure Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser then another, and this complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this Complexion, is ever of one of these colours; that is to say, either a faire Browne bay, dabled or not dabled, a Dable gray, a Blacke full of Silver haire, or a faire Roane Red or Blacke. And these Horses are of nature most excellent, most temperate, strongest, gentlest and most health-

healthfull: though they may have any disease, yet are they naturally inclined to no Disease: But what infirmity soever falleth unto them, is meere accidentall, and not through any overflow of naturall distemperature. All medicines must bee compounded for them according to the nature of the sicknes, and the time of their languishment: For if the sicknesse bee young and new bred, then are they able to receive any well composed Receipt; but if it be old, and the inward powers and Faculties feebled, then you must be careful to helpe *Nature*, by adding to every medicine of what nature soever, some *simple* of Comfort, that as ill humours bee cleansed, so strength may still bee repaired and maintained. And thus much for complexions.

CHAP. XI.

*Of inward sicknesse, the causes and severall kinds thereof.*

**S**ith I have already passed over all those things which have a naturall & perfect working in a horses body, and doe maintaine, uphold, and preserve the same in good state and health, except accidentally they be encountered and crossed by some excess, either in diet or in exercise: it shall now be meet, that wee begin to speake of the things which be contrary and against nature, which are all those things whereby at any time the healthfull estate of the horses body is any way impeached: and they be three in number; that is, the *Causes*, the *Sickness*, and the *Accidents* which follow every sicknesse.

Now,

Now the *Causes* of sicknesse are all unnaturall affects, and evill dispositions, which going before, doe as it were by violence, bring sicknesse after them, and of these causes there be two sorts, some internal, some externall : The internall bee those which breed within the body of the Horse, as evill humours, evill obstructions, & evill juyce. Externall are they which communicate with the outward parts of the body, as heate, cold, wormes, and such like, of which I shall speake more in the second booke : And for so much as I intend at the beginning of every particular disease, to shew the cause of that disease, I will at this time speake no more of that subject.

Now for *sicknesse* it selfe, which is any thing that is contrary to nature, it is divided into three generall kinds : the first, an *Evil temperature*, the second, an *evill state and composition* ; and the third a *loosening or dividing of an unity*. Now of these two latter, I intend not to speake in this place, because they appertaine to Chirurgery, which I reserve for the second booke : But for the first kinde, which is an evill temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either simple or compound : Simple, when one quality onely doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moist, or too dry : compound, when more qualities then one doe grow into excesse, as for a horse to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moist. Againe, sicknesse are said some to be long, *Consumptions, Glanders*, and such like, which linger and weare a horse away by small degrees, Some short, as the *stagers, Yellowes, Anticor*, and such like, which as soon as they be perceived, so soon they be mortall.

Now

Now of inward sicknesses, some do occupy all the whole body, some but particular parts: those which occupy the whole body, are *Feavers*, the *Pestilence*, *Convulsions*, and such like: those which occupy parts or members, are colds which annoy the head; surfeits which perplexe the stomacke: and so likewise all outward infirmities proper to every particular member, as *Splents* upon the Legges, *Sparens* on the Hoofes, *Pearles* in the eyes, and such like, as shall be amply shewed hereafter, with their severall cures. And thus much for sicknes, and the severall kinds thereof.

#### CHAP. XII.

*Of the signes of sicknesse, and of what nature it consisteth.*

**T**He signes and faces by which sicknes is discerned, are many, and almost numberlesse: yet in the best sort that I may, I will shew you such, and so many, as shall amply serve for any mans understanding. Know then first that there be, according to the rules in Physicke, foure especiall wayes to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First, by accidents, as by the shape, number quantity, and place of the member grieved: for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or lesse in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then questionlesse it is diseased. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when it is either too hot, too cold, too moist, or too dry. Thirdly, when any member of the body is hindered from doing his Office; as when the Eye cannot see, or the foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by excrements,



ments, as by his dung or Vrine. But forasmuch as in the speculation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, distract, or deceived, and that my desire is to give an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of people, I will briefly and plainly shew you the most undeceiveable signes of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus : If a horse bee slower in labour, or duller to the *Spurre* then hee hath beene accustomed ; if hee bee shorter breathed, if his eares hang downe more then they were wont : if his haire be more staring : if his Flankes be more then usually hollow : if he burn betwixt his Eares, or about his Pasterns : if in travaile his stomack faile him ; or his Mouth, that in labour was usually wont to bee Foaming become dry : all these are most apparant signes of inward Sicknesse.

When a horse holdeth downe his head, which was wont to bee of cheerfull countenance, it is a signe either of a *Feaver*, *Head-ach*, or else *Foundring* in the *Body*.

If a horse be dimme of sight which was clear sighted, is a signe either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore eyes*.

When a horse turneth his head backe-ward to the place grieved, if it be to the *right side*, it is a signe of *obstructions* in the *Liver* : but if he turne it downe to his belly, that it is a signe either of *Cholicke*, *Bots*, or *Wormes*.

When a horse hath water running from his mouth, it is a signe of the *Staggers*, or *wet Cough*.

If a horses breath stinks, or foule matter issues from his Nostrills, it is a signe of an *Ulcer* in the *Nose* or *Head* :

Head ; but if the matter be white, then it is a signe of *Glanders* : if the matter be blacke, then it is a signe of the mourning of the *Chine* ; but if the matter bee yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the *Liver* : but if he cast little lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or rottennesse of the *Lungs*.

If a horses body and breath be hot, it is a signe of a *Fever*, and heate of the stomach, if therewithall he forsake his meate, it is a signe of inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moist *Yellomes*.

If the temple of a horses head be very hollow, it is a signe either of the *Strangle* or old age.

Shortnesse of breath, and a beating flank, is a signe either of a *Fever*, or the *Strangle*, but if the passage of the throat be stopped, it is a signe the filme of the *Lungs* is broken, and the *Spleen* troubled, or else broken-winded.

If any thing lie on both sides the fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a signe of the *Staggers*.

If there be any thing swelling about the ears, it is a signe of the *Pole-evil* : swelling under the eare, is a signe of the *Vives* ; and swelling in the mouth, a signe either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampasse*.

Swelling under the throat is a signe of the *Glanders* ; and swelling about the tongue roots, a signe of the *Strangle* : But if there be about the tongue roots nothing but little small knots, like waxe kernels, then it is a signe but of cold onely :

Swelling on the left side, is a signe of a *Sicke Spleene*. Swelling in the belly and legs a signe of the *Dropsie*, and swelling in the flank of *Cholicke* onely.

To

To couch, or to offer to cough; is a signe either of the Glanders, of the mourning of the Chine, of a feather in the weasand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the filme broken, of the dry malady, of a consumption or of foundring in the body.

Staggering is a signe either of a *Fever*, of the Staggers, or of swaying in the neck: but if he stagger or rore behind onely, then it is a signe either of foundring in the body; or of pain in the Kidneys.

Trembling is a signe of a *Fever* or of foundring in the body: and here is to be noted, that a horse which trembleth after the drinking of cold water, hat during that time of trembling, a very certaine fit of an Ague, and if any *Farrier* or other, will but observe it he shall finde that the horse, after he hath done trembling, will burne and glow in as great extreainity at lest an houre and halfe after; and some horses after their burning, will sweat also.

The hollownes of a horses backe is a signe of a dry malady, or the Dropsie.

Haire-staring is a signe either of a cold *Stomacke*, or of foundring in the body, but generally of a cold, or want of Cloaths.

If a horse stale with much paine, it is a signe either of foundring in the body, the winde *Cholicke*, or the Stones; and if the Vrine which comes from him bee yellow, it is a signe of the Glanders, but if it be blackish and thick, it is signe of paine in the Kidneys.

Leanness and gauntnesse is a signe of Hide-bound or of the Consumption, of the dry malady, of foundring in the body, inflammation of the liver, the yelkows, *Cholicke*, or *Wormes*.

Laxativenessse, or loosenessse of the body, is a signe of a hot Liver.

Costivenessse in the body is a signe of dry yellows, or of diseases in the Gaule.

If a horses dung stinke, it is a signe of a hot Liver: if it have no sinell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be undigested, then either of a Consumption, or of a dry Malady.

If a horse goe stiff, it is a signe either of wrinching, hiping, stifling or foundring either in body or legs: if he goe crouching behind, and stiffe before, then the grief is in his fore legs, but if he goe only weake behinde, then is the grief in his hinder Legges only.

If a Horse desire extraordinarily to lye down on his right side, it is a signe of heat in the *Liver*. If on the left side, then of a diseased *Spleen*, if he be oft up and downe, finding no rest, then it is a signe of Bots, Wormes, Cholicke, or griping in the belly: if when he is down he spreads himselfe abroad, it shews the Dropisie, if he groane when he is down, it shewes either a sicke spleen, moist Yellows, Cholicke, Bots, or filme-broken: if he be not able to rise when he is downe, then either mortall weaknesse, foundring in the body or legs.

To be troubled with much winde, is a signe either of grief in the Spleen, or losse of much blood.

If a horse forsake his meat, it is a signe either of a Fever, head-ach, Strangle, Staggers, Consumption, or dry Malady, Anticor, foundring in the body, a hot and consumed liver, moist Yellows, Cholicke, or the Worme, but if when he forsakes his provender, he doth

doth as it were, chavell or chaw a little Hay, and in his Chawing doth make a certaine sharp nose in his Mouth, as if his tongue could not well part from the rooffe without a kind of chanking, it is then a certaine *signe* that the Horse is troubled with the falling of the Pallet of the Mouth, a disease which only commeth by over much travelling, or too fore a burthen.

If a horse desire to eat much, and drinke little, it is a *signe* of a cold Liver, but if he desire to *drinke* much and eat little, it is then a *signe* either of a *Fever*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the stomacke, heate in the *Liver*, or the dry yellows.

If a Horse both *eat* and *drinke* with an extraordinary greedinesse, it is *signe* of rotten *Lungs*, or a diseased *Spleene*.

Lazy heavy going, contrary to true nature, is a *signe* either of a *Fever*, *sicke-spleene*, *Yellomes*, or else obstructions of the *Liver*.

If a horse strike with his foot at his belly, it is a *signe* of the *cholicke*: but if when he *striket*, he fisk with his tayle also, then it is either *Bottes*, or rough *Wormes*.

If a horse be scabby, and ulcerous all over his body, and about his necke, it is a *signe* of the *Mangy*: if it be an *Ulcer* full of *knots*, creeping alongst a veine, it is the *Farcy*: if spreading a broad only in one place it is a *Canker*: if the *Ulcer* be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fistula*: but if it be a spungy *Wart*, full of bloud, it is then an *Anbury*.

If a horses tongue hang out, and be swolne, it is a *signe* of the *strangle*.

To conclude, if a horse in health beate short, thicke, and fast in the flank, it is a signe of *sicknesse* in the Lungs and Lights, which we call *Broken minded*, with a world of other such like signes and tokens, as shall be more amply declared in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. XV.

*Generall observations in the physicking of  
Horses.*

**A**fter you can by these Signes and Characters, judge and approve either the health or sicknesse of a Horse, it is then necessary that you learne some generall Rules and Observations which belong to the *Physicking* of a Horse; lest that either by your rashnesse, unskilfullnesse, or uncleannesse, in what you go about to do, you commit errors more grosse then the Medicine you administer hath power to do good. Know then first, that whensoever you goe about to give your Horse any inward potion or drench, you must first take very carefull heed, that your *drinke* be no more then *Milke* warme: for there is nothing more mortall to a horse then the scalding of his stomacke. Next, you must be very carefull that you give the Drench easily and gently, lest in making too much hast, the drinke passe into his wind or winde pipe, and so force him to an extreme coughing, and almost suffocate him; which if it do, you must then let his head lose, and walke him up and downe till the passion be past. Lastly, you shall observe, in giving a Drench, to draw out the horses  
tongue

tongue before you put in the horne, and then presently let it loose againe : for that will compell him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be used, when you give your Horse pills, as Butter and Garlicke, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Saven : Also, every drench will worke the better, the longer you keepe the sicke horse fasting, both before and after his medicine ; wherein is likewise to be observed, that moderate exercise (as gently walking, or trotting up and downe, according to the horses strength after his drench received) is most wholsome, and maketh the medicines worke a great deale the better.

You shall likewise observe, if your horses *sicknesse* be a Fever, to mixe alwaies your simples either with warme water, with hony, or with oyle; but if the disease be Coughes, Rhumes, or any thing that proceedeth of cold causes, then you shall mixe your simples with good Ale, or Wine ; and if your horse be brought low and weake with *sicknesse*, then you shall mixe your simples with milke and Egges.

You shall also observe, that in bloud-letting, you must take but halfe so much from a young Colt, as from an old Horse, and but the fourth part from a yearling foale : also in letting bloud, you must carefully regard the age and strength of your horse, taking more or lesse according to his ability of body. Lastly, letting of bloud is either to divert *sicknesse* and preserve health, or to refresh and coole the spirits, or to diminish blood, or else to purge grosse and bad humours.

Observe before you let your horse bloud; first moderately

derately to chafe or exercise him : then let him take rest a day before his letting bloud, and three dayes after, not forgetting that *Aprill* and *October* are the two principall seasons of the yeare for that purpose, except urgent occasion be ministred.

Observe whensoever you Rake your horse with your hand ( which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot dung ) that then first you anoynt all your hands with Sallet-oyle, or butter : the like you must ever doe when you put up any Suppositary ; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but anoint the Glister-pipe only: Many other observations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall find annexed to the severall cures of every disease. Thus much then of these generall observations.

### CHAP. XIII.

#### *Of the Urine and excrements of a Horse.*

**A**fter you have made your memory acquainted with the signes and observations before specified, and so in the end finde a Horse, which by the demonstration of some of these Signes appeareth most certainly to be sicke and diseased: My advice is then (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the Sicknesse do not urge the contrary) that before you administer any thing unto him, in any case you see his urine, from which urine you shall reape these knowledges

First, if the urine of a horse be of a pale, whitish, yellow colour like unto Amber, and therewithall somewhat



what strong smelling, and not very cleare, then you shall be assured that the Horse is in good state of body, strong and healthfull; but if it be extraordinary white, as it were creamy, then it is a signe the horse hath weake Reins, and is subject to the Stone and the stopping of the Kidneys.

If the urine of a horse be some-what high coloured, bright and clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a cup of strong march beere; then it sheweth the Horse hath inflammation in his blood, and that he hath either a feaver, or else some great surfeit; but if it be red like blood, then is his inflammation more great, and his surfeit is onely an over-heate taken by over-riding; insomuch that if present remedy be not applyed either by scouring, or other healthfull physicke, the Horse cannot chuse but fall into some mortall sicknesse.

If the urine of a horse be of a pale greenish colour thicke and slimy, it is a signe of a weake backe, and consumption of the Seed.

Lastly, if the horses urine be high-coloured, yet therewithall cloudy, and full of blackenesse, then it is a signe that the horses *sicknesse* is *mortall*, and hardly to be preserved by any *Physicke*; but if the *Blackenesse* and *Cloudinesse* of the urine doe not remaine, (as it were) bound up together in one body, but is broken and dispersed, shewing many Clouds in one water, then it is a signe that the violence of the sickness departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government, that the Horse will recover his health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or dung of a horse, which

is no lesse worthy of note then the urine; you shall first understand, that if his dung be ever of alliance with his food, I meane either in part or whole, coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for example: If your horse go at grasse, his dung will ever be *greene*, and the brighter such *greenesse* is, and being in a meane betweene hardnesse and softnesse, the sounder and in more perfect estate the horse standeth; but if the greenesse be bright, yet the ordure so soluble and loose, that it commeth from the horse like water, then you shall understand, that either the horse hath eaten up some feather, or else he hath an inward coldnesse both in his stomacke and bowells.

If a horses dung be of a reasonable thicknesse, neither too costive nor too soluble, yet the greenesse inclined to some blacknesse, it is a signe that the horse hath a hot stomack, and is easily subject either to the yellows or staggers.

If the horses dung be in round hard pellets, and of a blackish green colour, like the dung of a ship, or a Deer, then it is without fail, that the horse hath had some great surfeit, either by over-riding, or by ill food, or else is certainly possesst either of the yellows or fever, or foundring in the body.

Now if your horse be fed onely upon straw, then his colour will be of a high coloured yellow, rather costive then soluble, and the grain thereof long, and not well couched together: And all these bee good signes of great healthfullnesse, but if the colour bee inclined to rednesse, or if it be exceeding dry without moisture; or if it be thinne, like the dung of an Oxe or Cow, they all be apparant signes of inward sickness.

sicknesse; but if the rednesse turne to blacknesse, and that his ordure doth lose the strength of it's smelling, then it is a great signe of death and mortality.

If your horse be fed with hay and provender, then your perfect and sound dung will be of a browne yellow colour, the grain some what long, yet moyst and well fixt together; but if the brownesse turn to rednesse, it is a signe of distemperature; and if it turn to blacknesse, then of death. Now for the smell of this dung, you must understand, that the more provender you give, the greater will be the smell, and the lesse provender the lesse smell.

Lastly, if you feed your horse only upon provender, as bread, oates, and such like, then the dung which shews a perfect and a sound body, will be of a pale yellow colour, like course hony, firme, like a thicke salve, having within it when you tread upon it or breake it, little white grains, like those which are in sope; or if the dung be harder, like the ordinary ordure of a man, it is not amisse: For both be signs of health and strength; and if the dung look red, then it is a signe that the horse hath taken some inward heat, and his stomack and bowels doe rest still inflamed,

If his dung be brown and slimy, or if it shine and look greasie, it is a signe that he hath had some of his inward grease molten, and that it resteth and putrieth in his body; but if with his dung you see him voyd great clods and lumps of grease, then you may be assured that his grease was molten, but nature hath overcome infirmity, and the worst danger is past.

past already; but if the dung be matter undigested, so that you may either perceive therein whole cornes, or whole bits of bread, it is a signe the horse hath either a late surfeit, or is entring into a mortall consumption. Lastly, if his dung be blacke, or have lost the *Smell*, it is an apparant signe of Death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the severall knowledges attained by them.

CHAP. XV.

*Of Fevers in generall, and the divers kinds thereof.*

**T**Hat horses hath Feavers, and those fevers of divers and sundry natures, there is nothing more certaine, as by strict observation may daily be perceived, especially when we use either much travell, or disorderly diet: for questionlesse from these two and none other heads, doe spring most Fevers whatsoever. But first, that I may give you an account what a horses Fever is, you shal know that it is an unnaturall and immoderate heat, which proceeding first from the heart, disperseth it selfe not onely through all the arteries, but even the veines of a horses body, and thereby hindreth all the actions and wholesome motions of the same. Now of Fevers some *Farriers* make three sorts, the first, those which breed in the spirits, being inflamed and set on fire beyond the ordinary course of nature: The second those which breed in the humours, being likewise distemperad by heat: And the third, those which breed in the firme parts of the body, and are continually

nually hot. Now I for your better memory, will divide them only into two parts, that is to say, Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The ordinary *Feavers* are all those which are bred either in the spirits, or in the humours: as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Fevers continuall*, *Fevers beddicke*, *Fevers in Autumne*, *Summer* or *Winter*. And the *Fevers extraordinary*, are all those which are bred in the firme parts of the body and are ever hot, as *Pestilent Fevers* and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*; and the *Fever accidentall*, which proceedeth from the anguish and paine of some mortall wound.

Now for the cause, from whence these *Fevers* doe proceed, you shall understand, that all these which I call Ordinary *Fevers*, do generally spring either from surfeit by extreame labour, or some surfeit by naughty meate, as *raw Pease*, *raw Fitches*, *raw oats*, *mouldy* and unwholsome *Bread* and such like: Sometimes they doe proceed from the extreame violence and heat of the Sun beams, when travailing with disorderly hast in the extreamest heat of the day, those two heats mixed together, *Labour* and the *Sun*; there cannot chuse but be bred in the horse some *mortall* inflammation; and for mine own part, I have seen horses fall downe dead in the high way: For whose deaths, I could find no reason more then their *labour* and the heate of the Sun. *Fevers* sometimes spring from a contrary cause, as from extreame cold, in this manner: When a horse in the Winter-time hath been travelled fore all the day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his bloud and inward powers

wers are fetled and cooled : you then presently , or the same night give him cold water as much as hee will drinke, you shall see him out of hand fall into an extreame quaking , and from that quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Fever.

Now for extraordinary Fevers, they ever proceede eyther from corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre; and albeit these Fevers are not usually knowne unto our Farriers, yet they are as common as the former ; onely the violence of them is so great, and the poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other mortall sicknesse, as namely, the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Anticor*, and such like, which never arē, but a Pestilent Fever ever goeth before them: And they, like the markes of the plague, are seldome seene till the cures be desperate ; and then the unskilfull Farrier, neither noting , nor knowing, if he did not, the effects of the Feaver, doth ever mis-call the name of the horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater , failes many times to doe the good office and cure which hee intendeth.

Now the signes to know the Feaver be these: First hee will ever hold downe his head , hee will quake and tremble; but when his trembling is past, then will his body burne, and his breath be hot, he will breath fast, and his flanke will beate, he will reele, hee will forsake his meate, his eyes will be swolne and closed up, yet therewithall much watring ; his flesh will as it were, fall from his bones, and his stones will hang downe low, he will oft lye downe  
and

rife up againe : as his desire wil be to drinke ; yet at no time drinke much , neither will he at any time sleep.

Now for the generall cure of these generall *Feavers*, you shall understand, that some *Farriers* use to let the horse bloud in the Face, Temples, and palate of the Mouth, and the first day to give him no meate, but warme drink only, by a little at a time : and after the finest grasse, or finest hey wet in water, keeping him warme, and often walking him up and down in a temperate ayre, and giving him good store of Litter, then when he begins to mind, to feed him with Barly sodden, huskt and beaten ; as you doe Wheate before you make Furmety. And this cure is not amisse ; for it agreeth with the ancient experience of the *Italians* : but in our English Horses, (through the Clime, as I suppose) it often faileth.

The best cure therefore that I have found, is, as soone as you perceive him to begin to shake, to give him the yolkes of three or four egges, beaten with seven or eight Spoonfull of Aqua-vitæ to drinke, and then chafe him up and down till his shaking be past, and then set him up close and warme, and with many cloaths make him sweate an hour : Let his food be oats very well dried & sifted, and once a day some washt in Ale. If his shaking fit be past before you perceive his sicknesse, you shall only give him a pinte of *Muskadine*, & an ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, & brewed together to drinke, and so let him rest, feeding him by little and little, as aforesaid, and giving him no water but such as is warme : and this Order you shall observe at the beginning of every

every fit, if you can note them, or else every morning if his sicknesse have no ceasing.

CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Quotidian, or every dayes Fever  
and the cure.*

**T**He *Quotidian*, or every dayes *Fever*, is that which takes a Horse, and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at first appeare some-what violent, but seldome or never endureth long, if the *Farrier* have any discretion. It proceedeth most commonly from extreame riding, either after water, or a full stomacke; and then suddainly after his heate, being thrust into a stable, and neither stopt nor rubbed, a suddain coldnesse to that suddaine heate begets a shaking, and so consequently the effect of a *Fever*.

The signes to know it, are watrish and blood-shot-ten eyes, short, and hot breathing, panting, loathing of his meate, and stiffenesse in his limbs; but above these, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you shall observe that these signes, together with the sicknesse, will not last aboue sixe or eight hovrs in one day, and then he will be cheerefull and in health againe, till very neere the same hour of the next day, at what time his fit will begin againe. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the houres, the more hope there is of his health, as if it takes him at seven of the clocke of the one day, and at three of the clock of the other, and so forth. The cure is, you shall onely during his fit, give him nothing but a  
sweet



sweet mash made of Malt and Water, being lukewarme, and walke him gently up and downe in a temperate ayre; then assoone as his fit is past, you shall set him up, and rub his body and legges exceedingly: then foure houres after you shall give him his drinke: Take of strong Ale a quart, and boyle therein half a handfull of Worme-wood, of long Pepper and Graines two ounces, of the best treacle two ounces, and of the powder of dryed Rue one ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is consumed, take it from the fire and straine it, then put therein three ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to powder; then when it is lukewarme, give it him with a Horne to drinke. Doe this twice at the least, or thrice if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will recover.

### CHAP. XVII.

#### *Of the tertian Feaver.*

**T**He *Tertian Feaver*, is that which commeth every other day, holding the Horse with one sick day and one sound: it is not so violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer lasting; it hapneth ofttest in the Spring time of the yeare, when bloud begins to encrease, and most commonly to colts and young horses: it proceeds of the same causes that the *Quotidian* doth, and some times of ranknesse, and ill blood: The signes to know it, are all the signes formerly spoken of, and this as the chiefest, that the horse will be apparently sicke, as it were on the Munday, then apparently well on the Tuesday, and sicke on the  
Wed.

Wednesday following. This *Feaver* is never seene, but it beginneth with shaking. The cure thereof is, as soone you perceive the horse to beginne to shake, you shall take a certain herbe, or rather a weed called *Stone-crop*, and bruising it in a Morter, take some foure-spoonefull of the juyce thereof, and infuse it in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the Horse to drinke: then walke him gently up and downe in some temperate ayre for an houre, then set him up, and with the helpe of cloathes put him into a sweat for an other houre, then coole him; and in any wise till his fits leaves him, let him drinke no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldest and dryest Oates you can get, onely upon his good daies before his fits come, keepe him very long fasting and empty.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the *Quartan Feaver*.

THE *Quartan Feaver* is that which some *Farriers* call a third dayes sicknes, as thus: If his fits begin on the Munday, he will be well on the Tuesday & Wednesday, and sicke againe on the Thursday. It proceeds from the same causes that the *Tertian feaver* doth, yet in his working is not so apparantly violent, but of much longer continuance: for if great care and help be not, these *Feavers* will last some quarter of a yeare, some halfe a yeare, and some a whole yeare. There needs no other signe to know it, then the comming and going of the fits, as hath been declared already. And for the cure, it is the selfe

selfe same which is described in the former Chapter for the *Tertian Fever*: onely if his fits doe not leave him at the first taking of the medicine, you shall then give it him againe the second time, but not above thrice at the most in any wise.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of the Fever continuall.*

**T**He *Fever continuall*, is that which continueth without any intermission, and it is most dangerous and violent: for there is in it the effects of all the former fevers, every one taking place as the other endeth: as the *Quotidian* beginning, is pursued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and those two supply so many houres till the *Quotidian* doth begin againe. This kind of continuall Fever most often springeth from some inflammation or violent heate ingendred in the principall members about the heart: and the signes thereof are want of rest, and falling away of the flesh, beside certaine inflammations or swellings, which will appeare about his withers and flanks. The cure is, first to purge his head by needling, the manner whereof you shall find in a particular chapter hereafter: which done, you shall give him his drinke, take of Iermander two ounces, of Gum-dragant, and dryed Roses, of each halfe an ounce, beat them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of Ale; adding thereunto of oyle-Olive two ounces, and as much honey; and when it is lukewarme, give it the horse to drinke: then walke him a little space, and after set him up close and warme,

E

keepe

keepe him from cold water, and let his provender be dry oates.

CAVP. XX.

*Of the Heticke Fever.*

**T**He *Heticke* Fever in horses, is a dangerous and mortall Fever, being in a horse the first originall breeder of a consumption, it is a certain hot and dry humour, which runneth between the skinne and the flesh, proceeding from a sicke stomacke, which having bin scalded with hot drinckes, (as those ill dieted running horses be, which feed upon much spice, or those which take hot drenches upon every foolish and slight occasion) hath almost cleane lost the power of digestion: It sometimes happens to those horses which men too carefully teaching to drinke Beere and Wine, doe so continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become subject to this sicknesse. The signes to know it; the horse will never eat with any appetite, and when you drawe out his tongue, you shall finde it raw, and almost scalded; his flesh will bee loose and flaggy, and his body subject to a continuall trembling. The cure is, first wash his tongue either with the sirrup of Mulberies, or with Allome, running water, sage & woodbine leaves boiled together, then give him fasting in a morning this drinke. Take of Aloes one ounce, of Garlicke halfe an ounce, of Licoras and Anise-seeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drinke it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warme, and made sweet with sugar-candy or honey: let him  
drinke

drinke no drinke but warm mashes of malt and water, and let his meate be sweet hay, or greene Corne blades: and ever after his medicine, let him be chafed a little, kept fasting two or three houres, and stand warme and well cloathed.

### CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Fever taken in Autumne, or the fall of the leafe.*

**A**L these Fevers before spoken of, do for the most part, commonly happen to horses in the Spring-time of the yeare, by reason that the new bloud is ever aptest to be inflamed: yet not withstanding we find by experience, that fevers will some times come at the fall of the leafe, which we call *Autumne*, & they are of longer continuance then the other. The signes are none other but such as I have already declared: For they are the same Fevers, only altering the time of the yeare. If therefore your horse doe chance to catch a fever at the fall of the leafe, you shall let him bloud on his neck-vein, and in the palate of his mouth, and you shall give him to drinke the same drinke which is formerly set downe for the Feaver continuall, and there is no doubt of his recovery.

### CHAP. XXII.

*Of the Fever taken in the Summer-season.*

**A** Fever taken in the Summer season, is the worst of all ordinary Feavers whatsoever, especially all such as are taken in the dogge-dayes; because ac-

according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then most furious: the especiall signes of this Feaver are, that his Arteries will beate most palpably, and wheresoever he staeth, there you shall perceive hee sheddeth his seed also. The cure, according to the Ancients, is to let him blood in the great veine which he hath on his hinder haunch, almost foure inches beneath his fundament; but for mine owne part, because that veine is not easily found of every ignorant Smith, and that many times by mistaking they may cut the Artery, in stead of the veine, I hold it fully as good to let him bloud on the necke-veine, which done, give him this drinke two houres and an halfe after; take the juyce of a handfull of purslane, and mixe it with Gum-dragant, Aniseeds, and Damaske rose-leaves beaten to powder; then put them into a quart of strong Ale, made sweet either with Sugar-candy or honey, and faile not to give him this drinke three mornings together, keepe the horse warme during his sicknesse.

### CHAP. XXIII.

*Of the Feaver taken in the winter season.*

**A** Feaver taken in the Winter, is not so dangerous to the life of a Horse, as the Feaver before mentioned; yet it is a Feaver which will continue long, and aske great circumspection in the cure: the causes thereof are the same which are formerly described; and the signes are no other then hath beene already declared. Touching the cure, it is thus: you shall first purge his head by making him sneeze, that done, you shall

shall let him bloud both in the neck and the palate of the mouth, and then two houres and a halfe after give him this drinke. Take of Rue three ounces, of round pepper halfe an ounce; of bay berries, and the seed of smallage, of each halfe an ounce, boyle these in white wine, and give it him to drinke luke-warm. Other Farriers use to take a pint of new milk, and to put therein two ounces of sallet-oyle, of saffron one scruple, and of Myrrh two scruples, of the seede of Smallage a spoonfull, and to make him drink it luke-warme, but the horse which taketh this drinke, must be good in strength, for if he be brought low, it is some what too strong.

The ancient *Italians* did use for this Fever, to give this drinke: Take of *Aristolachia* halfe an ounce, of *Gentian*, of *Hysop*, of worm-wood, of *Sothernwort*, of each halfe an ounce, of dry fat figs three ounces, of the seed of smallage an ounce and a halfe, of Rue halfe an handfull, boyle them all with running water in a cleane vessell, till almost halfe be consumed; then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, strain it, and give it the horse luke-warm. Now there are not any of these drinkes but are sufficient for the Cure; but the first is best. Now for his dyet, be sure to keep him fasting long before his fits come, and let his drinke be only warme mashes of malt and water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue and bring the horse to any weaknesse, you shal then to comfort and quicken the naturall heate of the horse, rub and chafe all his body over, either in the Sunne, or by some soft fire, with some wholesome friction, of which frictions you shall finde choise in a particu-

lar Chapter hereafter following, together with their severall natures and uses

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Fever which commeth by Surfeit of meate only.

**T**He Fever which commeth by surfeit of meat only, without either disorder in travel, or corruption of blood, is knowne by these signes : the Horse will heave and beat vpon his backe, his breath will be short, hot, and dry, and his winde he will draw only at his nose with great violence. The cure therefore is, you shall let him blood in his necke, under his eyes, and in the pallate of his mouth, you shall also purge his head by making him neese, then keepe him with very thin diet, that is, let him fast for more then halfe of the day, and let him not drinke above once in foure and twenty houres, and that drinke to be warme Water : you shall also once or twice chafe his body with a wholesome friction; and if, during his cure, he chance to grow costive, you shall cause him to be raked, and afterward give him either a suppositary, or a Clister, of both which, and of their severall natures, you shall read sufficiently in a Chapter following.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Fevers extraordinary, and first of Pe-  
stilent Fevers.

**W**E find by many ancient *Italian* writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Country-  
men



men, have by experience found many horses subject to this Pestilent Fever, which is a most contagious and pestiferous disease, almost incurable; and for mine owne part, I have seen it in many colts and young horses. Surely it proceedeth, as I judge, either from great corruption of blood, or from infection of the ayre. The signes thereof be, the horse will hold downe his head, forsake his meate, shed much water at his eyes; and many times have swellings or ulcers rising a little below his eare rootes. The cure is, first you shall not faile to let him blood in the necke-vein: then two or three houres after you shall give him a Clister: then make him this plaister. Take ¶ of Squilla five ounces, of Elder, of *Castoreum*, of Mustard-seede, and of *Euforbiam*, of each two ounces; dissolve the same in the juyce of Daffodill and Sage, and lay it all about the Temples of his head, and between his ears: then give him to drink for three or four days together, every morning, two ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a pint of good *Muskadine*.  
 The *Italians* use to give him divers mornings, a pound of the juyce of Elder-roots, or instead of his hay, a good quantity of that herb which is called *Venus haire*; but if the time of the year be such, that they cannot have it greene, then they boyle it in water and straine it, and give it him to drinke, but I hold the first drinke to be most sufficient, his diet being thinne, and his keeping warme.

E 4

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVI.

Of the plague or pestilence in Horses, of some  
called the Gargill or Murraine.

**T**His pestilence, Murraine, or Gargill in horses, is a contagious and most infectious disease, proceeding either from surfit of heate, cold, labour, or hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours in a horses body, as the holding too long of his urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon grosse, foule, and corrupt foods, as in low grounds, after flouds, when the grasse is unpurged, and such like. Sometimes it springs from some evill influence of the planets, corrupting the Plants and fruits of the earth, and Cattell too sometimes, and from divers other such like causes; but howsoever, when the disease beginneth, certaine it is; that it is most infectious, and if there bee not care and prevention used, of multitudes it will not leave one. Not any of the ancient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, doe or can shew me any signe or token to know this disease, more then that one or two must first dye, and then by their deaths must adjudge and prevent what will follow, but they are mistaken: For this disease is as easily knowne by outward signes, as any disease whatsoever; as namely, the horse will begin to lowre and hang downe his head; and within two or three dayes after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his eare rootes, or under the roots of his tongue, and that swelling will run universally.

versally over all one side of his face, being very extreame hard and great. Moreover, all his lips, mouth, and whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his breath will be strong, and stinke exceedingly.

The cure of this disease according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French-men*, is first to separate the sound from the sicke, even a farre distance from that ayre where the sicke breatheth; then let him bloud in the necke veines, and give every one severally to drinke, two spoonfull of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pint of strong *Sacke*, of the composition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular vertues thereof, you shall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, & dissolve it into two ounces of the best Treacle, and it will serve the turne. Questionlesse these medicines are both exceeding good; for they are great preservatives against all infections.

Now that which I have found farre to exceede them, and to be most excellent, not only for this plague amongst horses, but for the plague or murrains (of some called the Mountains-evill) amongst beasts; is this; Take a good quantity of old *Vrine*, and mixe therew ithall a good quantity of hens dung, stir them well together till the dung be dissolved: then with a horne give to every horse or beast a pinte thereof luke-warme. This have I seene helpe hundreds

## C H A P. XXVII.

*Of the fever accidentall, comming by some  
wound received.*

**I**F a Horse shall receive any grievous and sore wound, either by stroke or thrust, by which any of the vitall powers are let or hindered: certain it is, that the paine and anguish of such wounds will bring a Horse to a hot Fever, and then his life is in great danger: Besides, a horse being naturally subject to moyst Distillations in his throat, there will many times rise therein great swellings and Ulcers, through the paine whereof, a Horse will fall into a burning Ague

The signes whereof are, that he will covet much to drink, but cannot drink, and his flesh will fall away in much extraordinary fashion.

The cure, besides the remedies before mentioned, is, to let him bloud under his ears, and in the mouth: And then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in slices, steepe it in Muskadine, and compell him to swallow them: It shall also be good, if once in three dayes you steep your Manchet in Sallat Oyle, and make him eat it. As for his drinke, let it be onely warme Mashes of Malt and Water, which if hee cannot drinke, you shall then give it him with an Horn. And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*One generall certaine, and approved Cure for all  
the Fevers and Sicknesse formerly rehear-  
sed, never yet disclosed from the  
Au. hors brest.*

I Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, signes, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever : Now because I know the ignorance of some so great, that they cannot discern : the Sloath of others such, that they will not indeavour to discern : and the folly of many so peevish ; that they will mistake what they may discern, I will shew you here one generall, certaine, and approved medicine, for all fevers of what nature or violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signes formerly reherfed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him bloud in the necke-veine, and let him bleede well, then three mornings together after ( the Horse being fasting ) give him halfe an ounce of the powder called *Diapente* ( the Composition whereof you shall finde in a particular Chapter, together with the vertues, ) and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pinte of Muskadine, and so give it the horse to drinke with an horne : then let him be ridden or walked abroad for an houre, after he commeth in, give him any meate whatsoever that he will eate. At noone give him a sweet Mash. In the evening perfume his head with a sweete perfume : The Composition whereof you shall

shall find in a particular Chapter; at night rub all his limbs well with hard wisps, and his head and nape of the necke with a course harden rubber, then feed as aforesaid. And thus doe three dayes together, and without doubt health will come suddenly

CHAP. XXIX.

*Of the diseases in the head.*

**A**S a horses head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances, as namely, the panicles or thin skins, which cleaveth to the bones, doe cover the whole braine, are subject to head-ach, megrim, diziness, and amazes; the whole brain it self is properly subject to breed the frensy, madnesse, sleepeingevill, the taking and forgetfullnesse. And here is to be noted that many Farriers, and those of approved good skils, have strongly held opinions, that horses have very little, or no brains at all: And my self for mine owne part, being carried a way with their censures, did at last, upon good consideration, cut up the heads of divers horses, some dead, some in dying, and could never find any liquid or thin braine, as in other beasts, but onely a very thicke, strong, tough and shining substance, solide and firme, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be onely a panicle, and so resolved with others, that a horse had no braine: but after, upon further discourse with men of better learning, I had this resolution given mee: That a horse being a beast of extraordinary strength and ability,

bility, made even to endure the worst of all extremities either by sore labour or heavy burthen, that nature in his creation had indowed him with members answerable to such vigour : As namely, that his braine was not liquid and moist, as subject to fleete, or to be distempered with every small disorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierc'd by any reasonable motion. And for the panicles, they shewed mee those thin skins over and besides that great substance : so that by experience I saw, and now know, that a horse hath both brain and a panicle, and in them two are bred the diseases before mentioned. Now in the ventricles, or cels of the braine, and in those conduits by which the lively spirits giving feeling & motion to the body, there do breed the Turne-sicke, or sturdy, the Staggers, the Falling-evill, the Night mare, the Apoplexie, the palse and Convulsion, or Cramp, the Catharre, or Rhume, and lastly the Glanders. And thus much of the head in generall.

CHAP. XXX.

*Of head-ach or paine in the head.*

**T**He head ache is a paine that commeth either of some inward cause, or of some cholericke humor gathered together in the panicles of the braine, or else of some extreame heate or cold, or of some suddaine blow, or of some noysome savour. The signes are, the hanging downe of the horses head and ears, dropping of his Vrine, dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes. The cure according to the  
opinion

opinion of some of our English Farriers, is to let him blood iu the eye veins; and to squirt warme water into his nostrills; and for that day give him no meate; the next morning fasting, give him warme water and some grasse: at night give him barley and fitches mixt together, and so keepe him warme till hee be sound: But this cure I do not fancy. The best helpe is, first to make him sneez by fuming him, then let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and keepe him fasting at the least twelve houres after: then powre into his nostrills wine wherein hath been sodden *Euphorbium* aud *Frankincense*, and after feed him and keep his head warme.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the Frenzy and Madnesse in a Horse.*

**T**He madnesse of a Horse by the most ancient & best approved Farriers, is divided into foure passions: The first is, when some naughty blood doth strike the panicle of the braine but in one part onely, it presently makes the horse dull both of mind and sight: and you shall know it by this signe, the Horse will turne round like a beast that is troubled with the sturdy: the reason being, because the outside of the head is grieved only. The second is, when the poyson of such blood doth infect the middle part of the braine: Then the Horse becommeth Franticke, leaping against walls or any thing. The third is, when that blood filleth the veines of the stomacke, and infecteth as well the heart as the braine: then he is said to be mad. But the fourth and last is when



when that blood infecteth not onely the braine and heart, but even the panicles also, and then is he said to be starke mad, which you shall know by his biting at every man which comes neare him, by his gnawing of the manger and walls about him. And lastly by tearing his owne skin in pieces.

Now for the cure, you shall cause him to bee let blood in all the lower parts of his body, to draw the blood from his head; as namely, on the shackle-veines, the spur-veines, the plat-veines, and the thigh-veines, and you shall let him bloud abundantly, then give him this drinke: take the roote of wilde Cowcumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handfull of Rue or Mints, and a handfull of black Eleborus, and boyle them in strong red Wine, and give it luke warme to the Horse in a horne.

Some use to give mans dung with Wine three mornings together: and also to rubbe his body over with a friction at least twice a day, and not to faile to give him moderate exercise.

Others use to pierce the skin of his head with a hot Iron, to let out the ill humours.

Others, as the most certaine of all medicines, use to geld him of both, or one stone at the least, but I like it not for mine owne part.

The cure I have ever used for this griefe, was either to make him swallow down hard Hennes dung, or else to give him to drinke the roote of *Virga Pastoris* stamped in water, and for his ordering during the cure, I would have his stable quiet, but not close, and his food onely warme Mashes of Malt and Water,

ter, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinnest dyet is best.

CHAP. XXXII.

*Of the sleeping evill, or Letbargie in a Horse.*

**T**He Sleeping evill is an infirmity which maketh a horse to sleep continually, depriving him thereby both of memory, appetite, and all alacrity of spirit. It is most incident to white and dun horses, because it proceedeth only from *flegme*, cold & grosse, which moistning the braine too much, causeth heavinesse and sleepe: there needs no other signe more then his sleeping onely. The cure is, to keepe him waking whether he will or no, with great noyses and affright: then let him bloud in the neck, and the palate of the mouth, and give him to drinke water luke-warme, wherein hath been boyled Camomill, Mother-wort, Wheate, Bran, Salt, and Vineger: you shall also perfume his head, and make him sneeze, & anoynt the palat of his mouth with honey and mustard mixt together: It shall not be amisse, if with the ordinary water which he drinketh, you mixe either Parsley seed, or Fennell seed, for that will provoke Urine: you shall also bathe his legges, and stop his hoofes with Bran, Salt, and Vineger boyled together, and applyed as hot as may be, and his stable would be lightsome and full of noyse.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXIII.

Of a horse that is taken, or of Shrow-running.

**T**Hose horses are supposed by Farriers to bee taken, or as some call it, Planet-strook, which are deprived of feeling or of moving, not being able to stirre any member, but remaine in the same forme as they were at their time of taking. Some hold it proceedeth of choler and flegme, when they are superabundantly mixt together, or of melancholy bloud, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppresse and sicken the hinder part of the braine. Other ancient Farriers hold it commeth of some extreame cold, or extreame heate, or raw digestion, striking into the empty veines suddenly: or else of extreame hunger caused by long fasting. The signes thereof are numnesse, & want of motion before spoken of: As for the cause, it is diverse, for first you must note, whether it come of cold or heate, : If it come of cold, you shall know it by the stuffing, and poze in the head, which is ever joyned with the disease: if of heate, by the hotnesse of his breath, and cleare fetching of his wind. Now if it proceede from cold, you shall give him to drinke one ounce of *Laserpitium* mixt with Sallet oyle and Muskadine luke-warme: if it proced of heate, you shall give him one ounce of *Laserpitium* with water and hony luke-warme: but if it proceed of crudity, or any raw digestion, then you shall help him by fasting: and if it proceede of fasting, then you shall heale him by feeding him often with good meate, as with wholesome bread, and dry

F

Oates :

Oates; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eat with a good stomacke.

Now for the french Farriers, as Monsieur Horace and the rest, who call this disease *Surprius*, they hold it commeth only from cold causes, following hot accidents, & they use for their cure to let him bloud on the breast veins, and then put him into a sweate either by exercise, or multiplicity of cloathes, but many cloaths are better, because the horse is not capable of labour: and sometimes they will bury him all save his head in an old dung hill, till through the heate therof his limbes receive such feeling, that hee begins to struggle out of the same. All which cures are not much amisse: Yet in mine opinion, this is the best, easiest, and surest way: First, to let him bloud in the necke and breast, then to annoint all his body with oyle *Petroleum* then give him this drink. Take of Malmsey three pints, and mixe it with a quarterne of Sugar, Cynamon, and Cloves, and let him drinke it luke-warme: then take old rotten wet litter, and for want therof, wet hay, and with cloaths sursingles and cords, swaddle all his whole body over with the same of a good thicknesse, and renew it once in three dayes till he be whole, let his stable be warme, his exercise moderate, and if he grow costive, let him first be raked, and after give him either a Clister, or suppository, according to his strength. There is also another kind of taking, and that is when a horse is Planet strooke, or striken with thunder: but it is utterly incurable, and therefore I will omit to speak further of it. The last kind of taking is, when a horse is Shrow-runne, that when a horse lieth sleeping,

ping, there is a certaine venemous field mouse called a Shrow, whose head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, & her feet shorter of the one side than then other. This mouse if she happen to rune over any of the limbs of the horse, presently the horse loseth the use of that limbe she ran over, and if she runne over his body, hee commonly loseth the use of his hinder loynes : and these accidents having beene often found unexpected, common farriers have held the horse to be taken, or Planet-strook. As for the cure thereof, the best is to seeke out a brier, which groweth at both ends, and take the horse or beast that is thus vexed, and draw him under the same, and it is a present remedy. For mine owne part, I have heard much both of the infirmity and of the cure, but have I had no experience of it, but onely in one young foale, which being suddnely lame, was as suddainly helped, to my much contentment.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

*Of the Staggers.*

**T**He *Staggers* is a dizzy madnesse of the braine, proceeding from corrupt bloud, or grosse, tough and heavy humors, which oppresse and make sicke the braine, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous spirit, dissolved by a weak heate which troubleth all the whole head : it is almost of all diseases the most common, yet very mortall and dangerous : it commeth many times from surfeit of meate, surfeit of travell, or from corruption of bloud. The signes

to know it is dimnesse of sight, swolne and watrish eyes, a moyst mouth, staggering and reeling of the horse, and beating of his head against the walls, or thrusting it into his litter. The cure is divers: for almost every Smith hath a severall medicine, yet these which I shall rehearse, are the most approved. The ancient Farriers, both Italians and French, use to let the horse bloud in the temple-veines and then with a knife make an hole an inch long over-thwart his fore head underneath his fore top, and raising the skin up with a cornet some two or three inches about, stop the hollownesse with a tent dipt in turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; but some of our Smiths finding this cure faile, except the disease be very young use to stop the hollownesse with docke rootes. Others with a clove or two of Garlicke. Others vse for this disease to take Sella-dine, and stamping it to stop it into his eares, and fo tye up his eares, or stitch the tips of his eares together, that hee may not shake the medicine out. Others use to mixe salt and water together thicke, and to put it into his eares. Others use to mixe *Groundfill* and *Aqua-vitæ* together, and to put that into his eares. Others use to take Garlicke, Rue, and bay salt and beate them grossly, then mixe Vinegar with them, and put it into the horses eares; then wet wool or tow in the medicine, and stop that in his eares also: let the medicine rest so foure and twenty houres, and if he forsake his meate, wash his tongue with vinegar, and it will recover his stomacke. Others use first to perfume the horses head; to make him neese, then to take halfe a handful of Selledine, and as much  
herbe

herbe of grace, three or foure cloves of garlick, and a little bay-salt, and stampe them together: then mixe therewith two or three spoonfulls of vinegar or verjuyce, and thrust it hard into the Horses eares: then tye up his eares with a soft inkle string, that no aire may come in, and let this medicine remaine the space of a day and a night: then let him blood in the neck-veine, and give him a comfortable drench, of which drenches you shal finde great plenty, together with their uses, in a chapter following. There be some Smiths which only take Rue and Saladine, of each a like quantity, and stamping them with white salt, thrust it into the horses eare, and it helpeth. Others take an ounce and a halfe of the oyle of bitter Almonds, two drams of oxe-gall, an halfe penny in black Ellaber stamped, & five drams of the grains of castoreum, vinegar, & verjuyce, seeth them altogether till the vinegar be consumed, then straine them, and put it into the horses eares. All these medicines have been divers times approved to be singular good, and for mine owne part, I have found great effects in them: Yet that which I have found at all times most excellent is, if the disease bee young and early taken, (that is, before the horse be growne into an extremity of weaknes) to take onely verjuyce and bay salt, and mixing them well together, to stop it into the horses eares. But if the disease be old, and the horse brought to a desperate state of mortality, then you shall take Assafetida, and having dissolved it in vinegar, warme it upon a chafingdish of coales, and with round balls of towe, stusse it hard into the horses eares, and so bind them

up for foure and twenty houres, after which time give him a comfortable drinke. Now whereas some Smiths doe use to stampe *Aquavita* and *Garlicke* together and stoppe that into his eares : I for my part thinke it too strong, except the horse bee in great lust and full of flesh, which if he bee, doubtlesse it may doe well enough : onely for a generall rule you must observe, ever to let the horse blood in the necke-veine, two or three mornings together, and every time to take great abundance of bloud from him

## CHAP. XXXV

*Of the Falling evill.*

**T**His Falling evill, or as the Italians call it, this *Malcaduco*, is nothing else but that which we call in men the *falling sickness*, in beasts the falling evill : for it doth for a certaine season, deprive them of all sence whatsoever, it is a disease not commonly incident to our English races, but amongst the Italians, Spanish, and French horses, many times found.

Now considering that the most of our best *English* stables are furnished even with some horses of these Countries, I thinke it good to write somthing touching the disease. It proceeds from cold & grosse flegme gathered together in the fore-part of the head, betwixt the panicle and the braine, which being by any hot vapour disperst over the whole brain, it doth instantly cause this falling. There be others which suppose that it is governed by the Moone; and



and that by a certaine course thereof both horses and other beasts doe fall, and as it were dye for a small time. The signe to know the disease is, the horse will fall suddanly, both through the resolution of his members, and the distention of his sinewes, all his body will quake and quiver, and they will foame much at their mouths, yet when you thinke them past all hope of life, they will still start up suddenly and fall to their meate. Now if you will know whether these fits will come often, or but seldome, you shall feele the gristle betwixt his nostrils, and if it be cold, he will oft ; but if it be warme, he will fall seldome. The cure is, you shall first let him bloud in the necke-veine, taking good store of bloud away: then within foure or five dayes after you shall let him bloud on his temple veins and on his eye-veins: then anoynt all his body over with a comfortable friction, then bathe his head and eares with oyle de Bay, liquid pitch and tarre mixt together, and of the same put some into his eares: then make him a cap or biggin of canvase, quilted with wooll to keep his head warme: then give him a purgation or scouring, of which you shall finde plenty in a chapter hereafter: you shall also force him to neeze: but if the disease notwithstanding continue still, you shall then with a hot Iron pierce the skinne of his forehead in divers places, and after anoynt it with sweet butter: for thereby you shall draw out the grosse humours which doe oppresse the braine, and in any wise during the time that he remaineth in physicke, let his stable be kept exceeding warme, and his dyet thinne.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Of the Nightmare.*

**T**His disease which we call the Night-mare, is an infirmity which only troubleth the horse in the night season, stopping the drawing of his breath, in such violent sort, that with the struggling and striving he will be driven into a great sweat and faintnesse: It proceedeth, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, from a continuall crudity, or raw digestion of the stomacke, from whence grosse vapours ascending up into the head, doe not onely oppresse the braine, but all the sensitive parts also. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the stomacke and inward bowels, which being cloyed with much glut and fat, doth in the night season so hinder the spirits and powers from doing their naturall office, that the beast having, as it were, his breath strangled, doth with an unnaturall struggling in his sleepe, put his body into an extreame sweate, and with that passion is brought to much faintnesse; of which I have had much and continuall experience, onely in horses, exceeding fat, and newly taken from the grasse, but especially from such horses as are either fatted upon eddish grasse, which in some Countreyes is called after mathes; or such as are taken up fat in the winter season. The signes to know this disease is, that in the morning when you come early to your horse, you shall find him all of a great sweat, and his body something panting; or perhaps you shall but onely find him sweat in his flankes,  
upon

upon his neck, and at the roots of his eares: either of both are signes of this sicknesse, especially if at night when you litter him, if you finde that he is dry of his body, and giveth no outward signe of inward sicknesse. Now there bee some that will object against me, and say: that this infirmity is not the Night-mare, but an ordinary infirmity ingendred by superfluity of cold, grosse, and unwholsome foode, got in the winter season: which nature, through the helpe of warme cloathes, and a warme house, expells in this manner, in the night season. To this objection I answer, that if they do disallow this sicknesse to be the Night-mare, that then without contradiction, there is no such disease as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but only a name without any substance or consequence; but forasmuch as this sicknesse is not only very usuall, but also carrieth with it all the effects & attributes ascribed unto the Night-mare, and that it is as yet a disease unnamed, I do not think I can give it a more proper term thē to cal it the night-mare. The cure whereof is, every morning and evening, both before and after his water; to give the horse some moderate exercise, as to make him go at least a mile and more for his water; and after he is watered, to gallop him gently on the hand a good space: then when he is brought into the house, and well rubbed to give him his provender, (being oats) and to mixe therewith a handful, or better, of hemp-feed; onely in this cure you must be carefull, that your exercise doe not enforce him to sweat, nor shall you have need to use it longer, then you find that he sweateth much in the night season. This exercise and  
medicine

medicine will not onely cure this infirmity, but also any cold that is newly gotten whatsoever.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of the Apoplexie, or palsey.*

**T**Hese Palsies or Apoplexies which happen unto horses are of two sorts: the one generall, the other particular. The generall palsey is, when a horse is deprived of all sence and moving generally over his whole body, which is seldome or never found out by our Farriers: because the mortalitie and suddenesse of death which pursues the disease, takes from them, all notes and observations of the infirmity: and indeed for the generall palsey, there is no cure, and therefore there needs no description of signe or cure. For this particular palsey, that is when a horse is deprived but of some part or member of his body, and most commonly it is but the necke onely, as both my selfe and others have found by daily experience. This disease proceedeth from foulenesse of food, or from fen-feeding, which breedeth grosse and tough humours, which joyneth with crudities and raw digestions, oppresse the braine violently altogether: it also commeth many times by meanes of some blow or wound given upon the temples of the Head. The signes to know the disease are, the gathering together of his body, going crookedly, and not straight forward but seldome, and holding his neck awry without motion: yet never forsaking his provender or meate but eating it with greedinesse and much slavering. The cure is, to let  
him

him bloud on his necke-vein, and temple veine, on the contrary side, to that way he wryeth: then annoynt all his necke over with the oyle petrolium & with wett hay ropes swadle all his necke over, even from his breasts to his eares, but having before splented his necke strait with splents of wood, made strong, smooth, and flat for the purpose: then for three mornings together give him a pint of old *Muskadine*, with two spoonfull of this powder to drinke. Take of Opoponax two ounces, of Storax three ounces, of Gentian three ounces, of Manna Succary three ounces, of Myrrh one scruple, and of long pepper two scruples, beate all these into fine powder.

Now there be some farriers, which for this disease use to draw the horse necke on the contrary side with a hot Iron, even from the necke to the shoulder, and on the temple of his head of that side also, a long strike, and on the other a little star in this manner ✱, and from his reines to his middle backe small lines in this manner ←←

But I that know this sicknesse proceedeth from the braine and sinews, cannot conceive how any helpe should come from burning of the skin, that is drawn up and straightned: And therefore I would wish every Farrier to forbear this tormenting, unlesse he apparantly see, that the skin it selfe through dislike and weaknesse, is shrunk also, and then the cure is not amisse.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the generall Cramps, or convulsion of  
sinews.

**T**Hese generall Crampes, or convulsion of sinews, are most forcible contractions, or drawings together of the sinewes and muscles; and they happen sometimes generally into many parts of the body, sometimes particularly, as but into one member and no more: When they are generally disperst in horses, they proceed commonly from some wound, wherein a sinew is halfe cut and no more. & so there runneth a generall contraction over the whole body by degrees. When they are particular; as but in one member, then they proceed either from cold windy causes, or from the want of bloud. For the generall contraction which cometh by a wound, you shall read the cure thereof in the booke of Chirurgery following, where the sinew being cut in two peeces, the contraction ceaseth. For this particular, where but one member is grieved, you shall know it by these signes: The member will be starke and stiffe, insomuch that neither the beast, nor any man will be able to bow it: the sinews will be hard like stickes, and the horse being downe, is not able to rise during the time of the contraction, hee will also halt extremly whilst the fit is upon him, and presently goe well againe, as it were in one moment. The cure is, to chafe the member exceedingly, either with linned oyle, sheeps foot oyle, or neats foot oyle and during the time of his chafing, to hold up the  
con-

contrary foot that hee may stand upon the limbe which is most pained. There is also another Crampe or convulsion of sinews, which doth extend into the necke and reines of the horses backe, and so almost univerrall over the horses whole body; It proceedeth ever, either from some extreame cold, as by turning a horse suddainly out of a warme stable, and warme cloathes into the piercing rage of the cold winter, or by the losse of bloud, whereby great windinesse entreth into the veines, and so benumeth the sinews: or else by too much Physicking & drenching of a horse, whereby the naturall heate is much weakened or dried. The signes of this convulsion be, his head and neck will stand awry, his eares upright and his eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot eat, and his backe will rise up in the midst like the backe of a Camell; the cure hereof is, with great store of warme wollen cloathes, as Blankets, and Coverlids, some folded double about his body, and some girded all over from his head to his taile, to force him into a sweate; but if the cloaths will not force him to sweate, then you shall either fold all his body over with hot wet horse litter, or else bury him all save the head in a dunghill or mixon; then when hee hath sweat an houre or two, and is moderately cooled, you shall annoynt him all over with this oyntment, (holding hot barres of Iron over him, to make the oyntment sinke into his body: ) Take of Hogges-grease one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaten into powder halfe a dram, of new waxe halfe a pound, of old oyle Olievs one pound; boyle all these together, and use it  
being

being made warme. There be other Farriers which use this oyntment: take of new waxe one pound, of Turpentine foure ounces, of oyle de bay as much, Opoponax two ounces, of Deers fuet, and of oyle of *Syrax* of each three ounces, melt all these together, and use it warme.

There be others which use, after his sweat, nothing but oyl of *Cipresse*, or of *Spike*; and oyle de bay mixt together, and with it annoint his body over. After this unctiō thus applied, you shal take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two ounces, of *Nitre* one ounce, of *Laserpitium* as much as a beane, and mingle all these together with a gallon of white Wine, and give him a quart therof to drinke every morning for foure dayes. Now for his diet and order, let his food bee warme Mashes, and the finest Hay, his stable exceeding warme, and his exercise gentle walking abroad in his cloathes; once every day about high noone.

#### CHAP. XXXIX.

*Of the Cold or poze in the head.*

**T**HE Cold or Poze in a horses head is gotten by divers suddain and unseene meanes, according to the temper and constitution of the horses body, insomuch, that the best keeper whatsoever cannot sometimes warrant his horse from that infirmity. Now according as this cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of humours which abound in the head, and as those humours are of thickenesse or thinnesse, so is the disease  
and



and the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker, For you shall understand, that if the horse have but only a cold that is newly taken, the signes are, he will have many knots like waxe kernels betweene his chaules about the rootes of his tongue; his head will be some what heavy, and from his nostrils will run a certaine cleare water, but if about his tongue roots be any great swelling or inflammation like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the strangle; but if from his nostrils doe issue any thicke, stinking or corrupt matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we shall speak hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary cold, which is ordinarily taken (the signes whereof besides his much coughing are before declared) you shal understand, that for the cure being very easie, it is helped fundry wayes: Some cure it onely by purging his heade with pills of Butter and garlicke, the manner whereof you shall find in the Chapter of purgations. Other Farriers cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to neese, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of neezing; which done, you shal give him to drinke water wherein hath been sodden *Fenugreeke*, Wheate-meale, and Aniseeds; and then to trot him up and downe halfe an houre after. Others use to give him Neezing powder blown up into his nostrils; and then this drinke: take a pinte of Malmsey, and the whites and yolkes of foure or five Egges, a head of Garlicke bruised small, Pepper and Cynamon, and Nutmegges, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a prety quantity of sweet Butter, mixe them together, and give it luke-warme  
with

with a horne three daies together : then keepe him fasting at least two houres after. Others use to let the horse bloud in the veine under his taile, and to rub all his mouth over with a bunch of sage bound to a sticks end, and then to mixe with his provender the tender crops of black berries ; but I take this medicine to be fittest for such horses who with the cold rhume are troubled with paine in their chaps, and not with stuffing in their head.

Now albeit none of these medicines are fault-worthy, yet some for mine owne part, I have ever found to bee most excellent for these slight clods, moderate exercise, both before and after a horses water in such sort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-mare without any other fuming or drenching, except I found the cold to bee more then ordinary, and that for want of heed-taki g it was like to grow to some Ulcer about the rootes of the tongue. In this case I would for one time and no more give the horse a pint of Sacke and halfe a pint of Sallet-oyle made luke-warme and well brewed with good store of *Sugarcandy*, to drinke in the morning fasting, and then exercise him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any sweate, and it hath never failed to worke the effects I wished in ample sort, without hindring me at any time of my travaile or journey, but if you cannot conveniently come by this medicine, you must not withstanding travaile your horse, if then you take a spoonefull of *Tarre*, and folding it in a fine cloath, fixe or tye it fast to the mouth of your bit, or snaffell, and so travaile your horse therewith, and it will take his  
cold

cold clean away. But yet it will a little abate and lessen his stomack.

CHAP. XL.

*How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Ratling in the head, how violent soever, without giving any inward medicine.*

**I**F your horse have taken any extream cold, or poze in his head, and being matcht either to hunt, or to runne for any great wager, the day is so near that you dare not give him any inward drench, without which, none of our Farriers know how to cure any Cold; you shall then, or at any other time (for there is no medicine in the world more Soveraign) take as much sweet-butter as a big Walnut, and with the powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searst, work them either with your Knife, or a Splat-ter together, till the butter be brought to a high gold colour; then take two clean Goose-feathers the longest in all the Wing, & first at the quil ends, with a needle, fasten two long threeds: Then with your Salve anoint all the feathers clean over; which done, in the dry powder of Brimstone role them over and over; then putting the feathers ends formost, open the horses nostrils, and thrust them up into his head: then take the threeds which are at the quil-ends, and fasten them on the top of the horses head: which done, ride him abroad for an houre or two, ayring him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the stable, after he hath stood tyed up a pretty season, untie the  
G
threeds,

threeds, and draw out the feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This cure of all others is most certaine, and taketh away any stopping in the head how extreame soever.

### CHAP. XLI.

*The perfection and best of all Medicines for  
Poze or Cold.*

**T**AKE (if you can get it) an ounce of the fine and pure past of Elicompane, which hath the strings of the roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an ounce of the conserve of Elicompane, and dissolve it in a pint and a halfe of Sack, and so give it the horse with a horne in the morning fasting, and then ride him halfe an houre after it, and let him fast two hours more, then feed him as at ordinary times: and thus doe for two or three mornings together.

### CHAP. XLII.

*Of a Horse that is Hide-bound.*

**T**HIS disease which we call hide-bound, is when a horses skinne cleaveth so hard to his ribbes and backe, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from poverty and ill keeping, sometimes from surfeit of over-riding; especially if when he is extreame hot, he be suffered to stand long in the raine or wet-weather: and lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt drinesse of the bloud, which wanting his natu-  
rall

rall course, forceth his skin to shrink up and cleave to the bones. The signes, besides the cleaving of his skin, is, leanness of body, gauntnesse of belly, and the standing up of the ridg-bone of his back: it drieth up the entrails, torments the body, and makes his dung stink extraordinarily: & if he be not remedied, manginess will presently follow after it. The cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers workmen: the most antient Farriers did use to let him blood on the spur veines of both sides his belly, somewhat towards his flank, which done, they give him this *drink*: Take of white-Wine, or strong Ale a quart, and add thereunto three ounces of fallet oyle, of *Cumin* one ounce, of *Aniseeds* two ounces, of *Licoras* two ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and give it him luke-warm with a horne; when he hath drunk, let one chafe his back, from the huckle bone upward, for the space of an houre or more: then set him in a warm stable, with good store of litter; then fold about his body a thick blanket, soaked in water, and wrung, then over it a dry blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the suringle about with great wisps, for the wet blanket will put him into a great heat, and for want of a wet blanket, if you fold his body in wet hay, it will do the like, and loosen his skin; this you shall do the space of a week, during which time he shall drink no cold water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet blanket, will anoint all the horses body over with wine and fallet oyle, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this disease use to let

the Horse blood in the neck, then bath his sides with warm water, wherein have been sodden bay leaves: then anoint him all over with the oyle of Rue or Camomile, holding a hot Iron over him to make the oyle sinke into his skinne, then give him this drink: Take of Carrets, Rue, wild Mint, of each an ounce and a halfe, of Worm-wood two ounces; dry them, and beat them to powder: then give two spoonfuls thereof in a pint of Malmsey. There be other *Farriers* which take *Fenugreek*, *Turmerick*, *Anise-seeds*, *Bayes*, *Licoras*, and *Cumin*, of each a like quantity, dry them, and beat them to powder, and give the horse two spoonfull thereof with a quart of Ale or Beer luke-warme: Use this at least three mornings together, and it will not only help the disease, but if it be formerly used, it will prevent the coming thereof: This drink is also good for a cold. Now although every one of these Medicines are very good, yet for mine own part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

✎ First, let him bleed in the *neck-vein*, then give him this *drink*. Take two handfulls of *Selladine*, if it be in the Summer, the leaves and stalks will serve, but if it be in Winter, take leaves, stalks, roots, and all; chop them small, then take a handfull of Worm-wood, & a handfull of Rue, chop them likewise, put all these into three quarts of strong Ale or Beer, and boyle them till it come to a quart; then take it from the fire, and strain it till you have left no moisture in the herbs; then dissolve it in three ounces of the best Treacle, and give it the Horse luke-warme to *drink*: then for a week together, once a day, rub  
all

all the horses body over with oyle and beer, or butter and beer, against the hair, and feed him with warm Mashcs of malt and water, and for his provender, let him have barley sodden till it be ready to break, provided that you keep it not untill it sowre.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the Glanders.

**T**Ouching this disease which we call the *Glanders*, My Masters, the old Farriers and I, are at much difference: for some of them do hold opinion, that it is an inflammation of the kirkells, which lie on each side the throat, underneath the roots of the tongue, neer the swallowing place; and their reason is, that because those kirkells are called of the *Italians*, *Glandule*, that thence we borrow this word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a horse which is troubled with this disease, hath great kirkells underneath his jawes, easie to be felt, paining him so, that he cannot eat, or swallow any thing. Others say, it is a swelling upon the jaw bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot; but both these opinions I hold in part erroneous: for although our old Farriers might (according to the custome of our Nation, which loveth imitation of Strangers) borrow this word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandule*; yet these inflammation's under the chappes of the tongue roots, is that disease which wee call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereas they would call the *Strangle*, the *Quinzie*,

or *Squinancy*, there is no such matter, neither hath a horse any such disease; except they will call the *Vives* by that name, which is farre more fitter for the application.

Now for the *Glanders*, you shall understand, that it is a running impostume ingendered either by cold, or by famine, or by long thirst, or by eating corrupt and musty meat, or by being kept in unsavory places, or is taken by standing with infected horses. It is a gathering together of moist and corrupt humours, which runneth at the nose; or may be said to be a flux of rhume, which issueth sometimes at one, sometimes at both the nostrils: the cause being the wideneffe of the passage, so that the cold liberally entring into the brain, bindeth and crusheth it in such manner, that it maketh the humours there to distil; which descended to the spiritual parts, and possessing them, in the end suffocates the horse, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principal parts; or else by congealing there by little & little, overrunneth the natural heat. Now that distillation that by cold commeth from the brain, & breedeth this glanders, is of three sorts. The first is a cold which maketh indisgest humours to passe from the brain, which commeth by taking off the Saddle suddenly when the horse is hot, or by letting him drink before he be inwardly cooled, or before his body be dryed: This distillation commonly is slimy matter that smells not, and is ealie to be cured; for it is no inward ulcer, but only abundance of humour, the substance whereof is grosse and white. The second is a great cold ingendred



gendred and congealed, causing humours something thinne and slimy, of the colour of marrow, or the white of an Egge: this descendeth to the Throat and lyeth there till it be discharged through the Nostrils. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured; if the colour thereof be yellow like a Bean, then is the Glanders most desperate, and lyeth also in his Throat; but if it be a brown or darkish yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the disease. To these three distillations, there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is dark, thin, and reddish, like little sparks of blood; but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the mourning of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he shall take this cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issueth from the Horses Nose: For if the humour be clear and transparent, so that it may be seen thorough, then it is not greatly hurtfull, or of much moment. If it be white, it is worse, yet with much ease cured. If it be yellow, separate him from the sound horses, for he is infectious, yet to be cured: If that yellow be mixed with bloud, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the matter stink, or have lost the smell: The first is the sign of an Ulcer, the later of Death; also whether he cougheth with straightnesse in his chest or no; for that also is a sign of an inward ulcer, and that the disease is past cure. Now for

the cure of these three distillations, which are all that make up a compleat *Glanders*, you shall understand, that when the *Glanders* is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and warm keeping: but if it be of the second sort, you shall give him warm Mashcs of malt and water, and perfume his head well, and purge it by sneezing; and into his Mashcs you shall put Fennell seed bruised. Others wil take a pint of white-Wine, and a handful of foot, a quart of milk, and two heads of Garlick bruised; brew them together, and give it the horse to drink. Others will take a pottle of Urine, a handful of bay salt, and a good quantity of brown Sugar-candy, boyle it to a quart; then adde licoras and aniseeds beaten to fine powder, and give it luke-warm to drink. Others will take lard, or swines grease, and boyle it in water: then take the Fat from the water, and mingle it with a little oyle Olive, and a good quantity of urine, and half as much white-wine, give a quart of this luke-warm to drink. Others use to give of Ale a quart, or grated bread one ounce & an halfe, the yolks of two egges, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cynamon, Nutmegs, Cardimonium, Spikenard or Lavander, Galingall, & Hony, of each a pretty quantity, mix these together, and give it to drink. Now if the distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst of the three, you shall take halfe a pound of Swines blood, and melt it at the fire, adde to it a pound of the juice of Beets, with three ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and add another ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keep this oyntment, and annoynt

noynt therewith two very long feathers, or little rodde, lapt with linnen about, and so anoynted, put them into his nostrills, and after rubbing them up and down, tie them to the nose band of the bridle, and walk him abroad: Do thus three daies together, and it will either absolutely cure him, or at least take away the eye-sore. Others use to take a quart of Ale, an halfe penny-worth of long Pepper, a little brimstone, a penny-worth of *Galinggal*, two penny worth of *Spygnard of Spain*, two penny-weight of Saffron brayed, with two ounces of butter boyled in the Ale; When it is luke-warm, cast the horse, and holding up his head, powre it equally into his nostrills; then holding his nostrills close, till his eyes stare, and that he sweat; which done, give him Bayes and Ale to drink: then let him rise, and set him up warme; feeding him with warm grains and salt, or with sweet mashes; but the best is, if the weather be warm, to let him runne abroad at grasse. Other Farriers use to dissolve in vinegar three drammes of Mustard seed, and as much *Euforbium*; then to give him one dramme at his nostrill every day before he drink. Others use to take of *Mirrh*, *Iris*, *Illivica*, seeds of *Smallage*, *Aristolochia*, of each three ounces, *Sal-niter*, *Brimstone*, of each five ounces, Bayes two ounces, Saffron one ounce; make this into powder, and when you give it, give part in pills, made with past and wine, and part by the Nostrills with strong Ale: doe this for the space of three daies at the least. Others use to take of Malmsey a pint, of strong Ale a pint, of *Aquavita* foure spoonfulls, and brew them together,  
with

with a pretty quantity of Aniseeds, Lycoras, Elicampane roots, long pepper, garlick, and three or foure new laid eggs, & a little butter; give this luke-warm to drink; then walk him abroad, and set him up warm; do this every other day for a week together. Others use to take stale urine that hath stood three or foure daies, and ten Garlick heads, and seething them together, give it the horse to drink. Others use to take swines grease well clarified, and as much oyle de Bay as a walnut, and give it the horse to drink, with faire water luke-warme.

But better then all these it is, to take of Elicampane, ✠ Aniseeds, and Licoras, of each one penny-worth; boyl them in three pints of Ale or Beer till one pint be consumed, then add unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet-oyle, and give it him to drink luke-warm, then with a quill blow *Eusorbium* up into his nostrills, and within three daies after, take of mustard foure spoonfull, Vinegar a pint, Butter three ounces; boyle them together, then adde thereto halfe an ounce of Pepper, and give it the horse luke-warme to drink; use this medicine a fortnight. Others use to take a handful of pill'd Garlick, and boyle it in a quart of Milk till a pinte be consumed, then adde thereto two ounces of sweet butter, and a pint of strong Ale; stirre them well together, and give it the horse fasting to drink luke-warm; which done, ride him a little up and downe, and use this the space of nine daies.

✠ Thus I have plainly shewed you the opinion and practise of all the best *Farriers*, both of this Kingdome and of others, and they be all very good and effectuell

effectuall; yet for mine own part, that which I have found ever the best in my practise, is, if the disease be of the first or second sort, to give the horse to drink fasting every morning for a fortnight together, a pint of strong Ale, and five spoonful of the Oyle of Oates, the making of which Oyle, you shal read in a particular chapter following; but if the disease be of the third sort, which is most desperate; you shall then take of Tanners Ouse a pinte, and of new Milk a pint, and of Oyle Olive halfe a pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlick bruised, and a little Turmerick, mixe these well together, and give it the horse to drink: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will help, if any help be to be had.

CHAP. XLIV.

*Two most certain and lately found out medicines, which will without all fail cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impossible.*

**I**F your horses could be come to the worst Glanders, which is a continual running at the nose, and hath runne by the space of divers months, so that your Farriers can do you no good: you shal then take better then two handfull of the white cankerous mosse which growes upon an old Oken pale, and boyle it in two quarts of Milk till one quart be almost consumed; then strain it, and squeeze the mosse well, which done, give it the horse luke-warm to drink: then take the goose feathers, brimstone, and butter, in such manner as is set down in the new Additions for the cold,

gold or poze in a horses head (page 21.) and having put them up into his nostrils ride him forth an houre or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the feathers, and keep his body warme. This disease you shall understand, commeth not suddenly, but growes out of long proceffe of time; so likewise the cure must not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leisure; therefore you must continue your medicine as your leisure will serve, either every day, or at least thrice a week, if it be for foure or five months together, and be assured in the end it will yield your desire.

Now the second certain and well approved medicine is, to take Elicampane Roots, and boyle them in milk till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pappe: Then with a horn give them to the horse, together with the milk luke-warme, being no more then will make the roots liquid: Then having anointed your Goose-feather, put them up into his nostrils, and ride him forth, as is before shewed.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

Of the Mourning of the Chine.

**T**His disease which we call the *Mourning of the Chine*, or as some Farriers tearm it, the *moist Malady*, is that fourth sort of corrupt distillation from the brain, of which we have spoken in the Chapter before, shewing from whence it proceeds, and the signes thereof: to wit, that the corrupt matter which issueth from his nostrils will be dark

dark, thinne, and reddish, with little streaks of blood in it. It is supposed by some Farriers, that this disease is a foule Consumption of the Liver, and I do not derogate from that opinion: For I have found the Liver wasted in those horses which I have opened upon this disease: And this Consumption proceeds from a cold, which after growes to a poze, then to a Glanders, and lastly to this Mourning of the Chine.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the oldest *Farriers*, is to take clear water, and that Honey which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three ounces of Sallet oyle, and powre it into his Nostrills each morning, the space of three daies; and if that help not, then give him to drink every day, or once in two daies at the least, a quart of old wine, mingled with some of the soveraign medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almost of every *Apothecary*. Others use to take Garlick, Houlick and Chervall, and stamping them together, to thrust it up into the horses nostrills.

Others use to let the horse fast all night, then take a pint and a halfe of milk, three heads of Garlick pild and stamped, boyle them to the halfe, and give it to the horse, some at the mouth, and some at the nose: then gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him; then gallop him, halfe a mile, then rest him again: thus do twice or thrice together, then fet him up warme, and give him no water till it be high noon; then give him a sweet mash: Use this cure at least three daies together. Others use to take halfe a peck of Oates, and boyle them in running water  
till

till halfe be consumed, then put them into a bagge, and lay them very hot upon the Navell place of his back, and there let it lie thirty houres, using thus to do three or foure times at the least. Others use to take *Worme-wood*, *Peucedanum*, and *Centory*, of each, like quantity: boyle them in wine, then strain them, and powre thereof many times into his nostrills, especially into that which most runneth. Others use to take *Hare-hound*, *Licoras*, and *Aniseeds*, beaten to powder; then with sweet butter to make pills thereof, and to give them fasting to the horse. Others use to take *Wheat-flower*, *Aniseeds*, and *Licoras* stamped in a Morter, five or six cloves of *Garlick* bruised; mix all these together, and make a past of them; then make it into pills as big as wall-nuts, and taking out the horses tongue, cast the balls down the horses throat three or foure at a time, then give him two new laid egges shells and all after them.

✠ Now after all these, the best and most approved medicine is, to take as much of the middle green bark of an elder tree growing on the water side, as wil fil a reasonable vessel, putting thereunto as much running water as the vessell will hold, and let it boile till halfe be consumed, and then fill up the vessell again with water, continuing so to do three times one after another; and at the last time, when the one halfe is consumed, take it from the fire, and strain it exceedingly through a linnen cloath; then to that decoction, add at least a full third part of the oyle of oates, or for want of that, of oyle olive, or of hogs grease, or sweet butter; and being warmed again, take a quart thereof, and give it the horse to drink,

one



one hornfull at his mouth, and another at his nostrills, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case let the horse be fasting when he taketh this medicine; for it not only cureth this, but any sicknesse proceeding from cold whatsoever. It shall be also good to use to his body some wholesome friction, and to his head some wholesome bath, of which baths you shall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his dyet, his meat would be sodden barley, and sweet hay, and his drink warm water, or mashes: but if it be in the Summer season, then it is best to let him run at grasse only.

#### CHAP. XLVI.

*A most rare and certain approved Medicine to cure any high running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all men incurable.*

**T**HIS disease, to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdome, can tell how to cure; for it comes not to the extremity till the horse have runne at his nose a year or more; and have at the roots of his tongue a hard lump gathered, which will not be dissolved. Now for mine own part, it is well known I have cured many with this Medicine only. Take of *Auripigmentum* and *Tussilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them foure drammes: then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a past, then make of it little cakes or trotches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them  
on.

on a chafing-dish of coales, and cover them with a Tunnel, so that the smoak may come out only at the end thereof, and so without any losse ascend up into the horses head through his nostrills, then ride the horse till he begin to sweat; do this once every morning before water, til the running be stopt, which will be in a very short space, considering the greatnesse of the disease.

CHAP. XLVII:

*Of the Cough.*

**C**Oughing is a motion of the Lungs, raised naturally from his expulsive power, to cast out the hurtfull cause, as neezing is the motion of the brain. Now of Coughs, there be some outward, and some inward: those are said to be outward which proceed of outward causes, as when a horse doth eat or drink too greedily, so that his meat goeth the wrong way, or when he licketh up a feather, or eateth dusty or sharp-bearded straw, & such like, which tickling his throat, causeth him to cough; those which are said to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we shall speak more hereafter. Now of these outward coughs, they may proceed from the corruption of the ayre, which if it do, you shall give him halfe an ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of Sack, and it will help. It may also proceed from dust, and then you must wash it down by powring into his nostrils Ale and Oyle mingled together. It may come by eating sharp and sowre things; and then you must put down his throat pills of sweet butter, whose softness

softnesse will help him. It may proceed from some little or slight taken cold, and then you shall take the whites and yolks of two eggs, three ounces of sallet oyle, two handfull of bean flower, one ounce of *Fenugreek*, mix them with a pint of old Malmsey, and give it the horse to drink three daies together: or else take Tarre and fresh butter, mix them together, and give pills thereof to the horse foure times in seven daies; that is, the first, the third, the fifth and the seventh day. There be others which use to take a gallon of fair water, and make it ready to seeth; then put thereto a peck of ground malt, with two handfull of box leaves chopt small, and a little gronndsell, mixe them all together, and give him every morning and evening a pint for a week together. If to the Box leaves you adde Oates and Bettony it is not amisse, so you keep the horse warme. Others use to give the horse a pint of Swines blood warme: Others use to boyle in a gallon of water one pound of *Fenugreek*, then straining it, give the water morning and evening by a pint at a time to drink, then drying his *Fenugreek*, give it the horse with his provender. Others use for all manner of coughs to take a quartern of white Currants, and as much clarified honey, two ounces of sweet Marjoram, with old fresh grease, and a head of garlick, melt that which is to be molten, and punne that which is to be beaten; mix them together, and give the horse a pint thereof better then three mornings together. Others use to give the horse the gut of a young pullet dipt in honey, and being warme, & certainly there is not any of these medicines but are

most soveraign and well approved. Now whereas some *Farrriers* use to thrust down the throat of the horse a willow-wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and anointed all over with honey, (I for my part) do not like it; for it both torments the horse, more then there is occasion, and doth but only go about to take away that which is gone in the struggling, before the medicine can be used: for it is only for a cough, which commeth by a feather, or some such like matter.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the inward, or wet Cough.

**T**ouching inward coughs, which are gotten and ingenerated by colds and rhumes of long continuance, being not only dangerous, but sometimes mortall, you shall understand that they are divided into two kinds, the one wet, the other dry; the wet Cold proceedeth from cold causes taken after great heat; which heat dissolving humors, those humors being again congealed, do presently cause obstructions and stopping of the Lungs. Now the signes to know this wet cough, is, the horse will ever after his coughing, cast out either water or matter out of his nostrils; or champ and chew with his teeth the thick matter which he casteth out of his throat; as you shall easily perceive, if you heedfully note him; he will also cough often without intermission, and when he cougheth, he will not much bow down his head, nor abstain from his meate: and when he drinketh, you shall see some of his wa-

ter to issue out of his nostrills. The cure is, first to keep him exceeding warm; then forasmuch as it proceedeth of cold causes, you shall give him hot Drinks, and Spices, as Sack, or strong Ale brewed with cinamon, ginger, cloves, treacle, long pepper, and either swines grease, sallet oyle, or sweet butter; for you shall know that all cold causes are cured with medicines that open and warm; and the hot with such as cleanse and cool. Some use to take a pretty quantity of *Benjamine*, and the yolk of an egg, which being well mixt together, and put in to an egg-shell, cast all down into the horses throat, and then moderately ride him up and down for more then a quarter of an hour: and do this three or four mornings together. Others use to keep him warm, and then to give him this drink. Take of Barley one peck, and boyle it in two or three gallons of running water, till the Barley burst, together with bruised Licoras, Anyseeds, and Raisons, of each a pound; then strain it, and to that liquor put of honey a pint, and a quarter of Sugar-candy, and keep it close in a pot to serve the horse therewith foure severall mornings, and cast not away the Barley, nor the rest of the strainings, but make it hot every day to perfume the horse withall in a close bag; and if he eat of it, it is so much the better: and after this, you shall give the horse some moderate exercise; and for his dyet, let him drink no cold water till his cough abate, and as it lesseneth, so let the water be the lesse warmed.

Now for mine own part, though all these receipts be exceeding good, and very well appro-

ved, yet in this case, thus hath been, and ever shall be my practise; if I found either by the heavinesse of the horses head, or by the rattling of his nostrills, that the Cough proceeded most from the stopping of his head, I would only give him foure or five mornings together, three or four good round pills of Butter and Garlick, (well knodden together) fasting, then ride him moderately an houre after; but if I found that the sicknesse remayned in the chest or breast of the Horse, then I would give him twice in foure daies a pinte of Sack, halfe a pint of Sallet Oyle, and two ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made lukewarme, and then ride him halfe an houre after, and set him up warme, suffering him to drinke no cold water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all wet Coughes, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any such moist disease, see the new additions for the mourning of the chine, and it is a certain cure.

#### CHAP. XLIX.

##### *Of the dry Cough.*

**T**His disease which we call the dry Cough, is a grosse and tough humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which stoppeth the winde-pipes, so that the horse can hardly draw his breath. It doth proceed by ill government from the Rhume, which distilleth from the head, falleth down

to the breast, and there inforceth the horse to strive to cast it out.

The especiall signes to know it, is by eating hot meates, as bread that is spiced, straw dry, hay, or such like, his extreimity of coughing wil increase, by eating cold and moist meates, as grasse, forage, grains, and such like, it will abate and be the lesse: he cougheth seldome, yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently, long time together, and drily, with a hollow sound from his chest: he also boweth his head downe to the ground, and forsaketh his meat whilst he cougheth, yet never casteth forth any thing either at his mouth or nostrils.

This cough is most dangerous, and not being taken in time, is incurable: for it will grow to the purficke or broken winded altogether. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, that forasmuch as it proceedeth from hot humours, therefore you shall perfume his head with cold simples, as *Camomill*, *Mellilot*, *Licoras*, dried red *Roses* and *Camphyre* boyled in water, and the fume made to passe up into his mouth and nostrils.

Others use to take a close earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the strongest vinegar, and four egge-shells, and all unbroken, and four heads of *Garlicke* clean pilled and bruised, and set the pot being very close covered in a warme dunghill, or a horses mixon, and there let it stand 24 houres, then take it forth and open it, and take out the egges which will be as soft as silke, and lay them by untill you have strained the Vineger and *Garlicke* through a linnen cloath: then put to that liquor a quartan of honey,

and halfe a quartern of Sugar candy, and two ounces of Lycoras, and two ounces of Aniseed beaten all into fine powder, and then the horse having fasted all the night, early in the morning about seven or eight a clock, open the horses mouth with a drench-staffe and a cord, and first cast down his throate one of the egges, and then presently powre after it a horne full of the aforesaid drinke, being made luke-warme: then cast in another egge, and another horne full: and thus doe till he hath swallowed up all the egges, or three at the least; then bridle him and cover him warmer then he was before, and set him up in the stable, tying him to the bare rack for the space of two houres: then unbridle him, and give him either some oates, hay, or grasse; yet in any case give him no hay, until it hath been somewhat sprinkled with water: for there is no greater enemy to a dry cough then dry hay, dry straw or chaffe; then let him have cold water the space of nine dayes. Now if you chance the first morning to leave an Egge untaken, you shal not faile to give it him, and the remainder of the drinke the morning following. If you find by this practise that the cough weareth not away, you shal then purge his head with pills, of which you shall reade in the chapter of purgations: after his pills received, you shall let him fast three houres, standing warme clothed and littered in the stable, you shall also now and then give him a warme mash, & once a day trot him moderately abroad.

There be other *Farriers* which for this dry Cough take onely the herbe called *Lyons foote*, *Ladies mantle*, *Spurge*, and *Smallage*, of each like quantity, seeth



seth them in a quart of old wine, or a quart of running water til som part be consumed, and give it the horse to drinke; if instead of the herbes themselves you give the juyce of the herbs in wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currance and as much Honey, two ounces of Marjoram, one ounce of Peniriall, with five pounds of fresh grease, and nine heads of *Garlicke*; beate that which is to be beaten, and melt the rest; give this in foure or five dayes like pils dipt in Hony. Others use to take *Myrrh*, *Opoponax*, *Iris*, *Ilerica* and *Galbanum*, of each two ounces, of red *Storax* three ounces, of *Turpentine* foure ounces, of *Henban* halfe an ounce, of *Opium* halfe an ounce, beate them to fine powder, and give two or three spoonfull with a pint of old wine, or a quart of Ale.

Others use to take forty grains of pepper, foure or five rootes of Raddish, four heads of *Galicke*, and six ounces of sweet Butter; stamp them all well together, and give every day a ball of it to the horse for a weeke together, making him fast two houres after his taking it; and surely it is a most excellent approved medicine for any old over grown cold, or cough. Other farriers use to take of Oyl debay, and of sweet butter, of each halfe a pound, *Garlicke* one pound, beate it together unpilled, and being wel beaten with a pestle of wood, adde your oyle and butter into it: then having made it into bals, with a little Wheat flower, give your horse every morning for a weake and more, three or foure balls as bigge as Walnuts, keeping him faster after from meate three houres, and from drinke till it be night, provi-

ded that still his drinke be warme, and his meate, if it possible may be grasse, or hay sprinkled with water: as for his provender, it would be Oates and fenugreeke sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a fortnights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another weeke give him againe the same Physicke and dyet; but truely for mine own part, I have never found it to faile in any horse whatsoever; yet I will wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward medicines, except they be wel assured that the cold hath been long, and that the cough is dangerous.

CHAP. L.

*Two excellent true and well approved medicines  
for any cold, dry Cough, shortnesse of  
breath, purfinesse or broken-winded.*

**T**He first is, take of Tarre three spoonfull, of sweet butter as much, beat & worke them wel together with the fine powder of Lycoras, Aniseeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste: then make it into three round balls, and put into each ball foure or five cloves of Garlick, and so give them to the horse, and warme him with riding both before and after he hath received the pills, and bee assured that he be fasting when he takes it, and fast at least two houres after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon a peece foure fingers long, and all most two fingers thicke both waies; then with your Knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many cloves  
of

of Garli cke as you can conveniently get into it, then rowling it in the powder of Licoras, Aniseeds Suger-candy and Brimstone, all equally mixt together, give it your horse fasting in a morning at least twice a weeke continually, and ride him after it, and be sure that all the Hay he eates be finely sprinkled with water.

## CHAP. LI

*The best of all other Medicines for a dry  
Cough, never before mentioned,  
nor revealed.*

**T**Ake of the Syrup of Colts-foote two ounces, of the powder of Elicompaine, of Aniseeds, and of Lycoras of each halfe an ounce, of Sugar candy divided into two parts two ounces, then with sweet butter worke the Syrup and the powders, and one part of the Sugar candy into a stiff paste, and thereof make pills or small balls, and roule them in the other part of the Sugar candy, and so give it to the horse fasting, and exercise him gently an houre after it: and thus doe for divers mornings till you find a mendment.

## CHAP. LII

*Of the frettized, broken, and rotten  
Lungs.*

**C**Oughes doe many times proceed from the corruption and putrifaction of the Lungs, gotten either

either by some extream cold, running or leaping, or by over greedy drinking after great thirst; because the lungs being inclosed in a very thinne filme, they are therefore the much sooner broken; and if such a breach be made, without instant cure, they begin to inflame and apostume, oppressing and sickning the whole lungs. Now the signes to know this disease, is, the horses flankes will beate when he cougheth, and the slower they beate, the more old and dangerous is the disease: he will also draw his wind short, and by little at once: he will groan much, be fearefull and loath to cough; and often turne his head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never cough but he will bring up something which he will champ in his mouth after. The cure is, give him two or three ounces of hogs-grease, and two or three spoonefull of *Diapente* brewd in a quart of barley water, wherein Currants hath been sodden. Other Farriers use to take a pound of Licoras, & being scraped and sliced, to steep it in a quart of water foure and twenty houres; then to straine it, then to boyle three or foure ounces of Currants in it, and so give it the horse to drinke, and keepe him fasting three or four houres after. There bee other Farriers which use to take of *Fenugreeke*, and Linseed, of each halfe a pound, of Gum-dragant, of Mastick, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of Fitch-flower of each one ounce; let al these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warme water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two ounces of the oyle of Roses, and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease  
bee

be new, it will certainly heale; if it be never so old it will assuredly ease him, but in any case let him drink no cold water: And for his foode, grasse is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best cure) to take of Malmsey a pint, of honey three spoonfull, mixe them together, then take of *Myrrh*, of *Saffron*, of *Cassia* and *Cynamon*, of each like quantity, beate them to a fine powder, and give two spoonfull thereof in the wine to drink, doe this at least a fortnight together, and it is certaine it will helpe these frettized and broken lungs, but for the putrified and rotten lungs, we will speake more in this next Chapter.

### CHAP LIII.

#### *Of the putrified and rotten Lungs.*

**T**His disease of rotten and exulcerate lungs, you shall know by these signes: he will cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his coughing hee will cast little reddish lumpes out of his mouth, hee will decay much in his flesh, and yet eate his meate with more greedinesse then when hee was sound: and when he cougheth, he will cough with more ease and clearenesse, then if his lungs were but one-ly broken. The cure whereof according to the practise of our ordinary English Farriers is, to give the horse divers mornings together a pint of strong Vineger warme, or else as much of mans Vrine, with halfe so much Hogs grease brewed warme together.

But the more ancient Farriers take a good quantity of the juyce of purslaine mixt with the oyle of  
Roses,

of Roses, adding thereunto a little *Tragacanthum* which hath before been laid to steep in goats milke, or for want thereof in barley, or oaten milke strained from the corn, and give him a pint therof every morning for seaven dayes together. This medicine is but onely to ripen and breake the impostume, which you shall know if it hath done, because when the sore is broken his breath will stinke exceedingly: Then shall you give him the other seaven dayes this drink Take of the roote called *Costus*, two ounces, and of *Cassia*, or *Cynamon*, three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raisins, and give it him to drink; with a pint of Malmesey. Others use to take of *Frankincence* and *Aristologia*, of each two ounces beaten into fine powder, and give the horse two or three spoonfuls thereof with a pint of Malmesey. Others take of unburnt brimstone two ounces, of *Aristolochia* one ounce and a halfe beaten to powder, and give the horse with a pint of Malmesey.

#### CHAP LIIII.

*Of shortnesse of breath, or purfinesse.*

**T**HIS disease of short breath or purfinesse, may come two severall wayes, that is, naturally, or accidentally: naturally, as by the straightnesse of his Conduits, which convey his breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed up with fat, force stoppings and obstructions in his winde-pipe, and thereby make his lungs labour and worke painfully. Accidentally, as by hasty running after drinking, or upon full stomacke, by which humours

humours are compelled to descend down into the throat and Lungs, and there stoppeth the passage of the breath. The signes of this disease are continuall panting and heaving of his body without any coughing, great heat of breath at his nostrills, and a squeesing or drawing in of his nose when he breatheth; besides a coveting to hold out his head whilst he fetcheth his winde. The cure according to the opinion of some of our best Farriers, is, to give him in his provender, the kirkels of Grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you must give them plentifully. The warme blood of a sucking Pigge is excellent good also. Other Farriers use to take Venus-hair, Ireos, Ash-keys, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raisins, of each a dram and a half, Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle-seed, Aristolochia, and Coloquintida, of each two drammes, Algaritium one dram and a halfe, Honey two pound, dissolve them with water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, and give him one pint every morning for three or foure mornings. Others use to take Molline or Long-wort, and make a powder thereof, and give two spoonfulls thereof with a pinte of running water, or else powder of Gentian in the foresaid manner, and do it for divers mornings.

Others use to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Gallin-gall, graines of Paradise, of each three drammes, Caraway-seed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and halfe an ounce of Lycoras; beat them all into fine powder; then put two or three spoonfulls thereof to a pinte of white-wine, and the yolkes of foure egges, and give it the horse to drinke:

drink; then tie his head up high to the rack for an houre after: that done, either ride him, or walk him up and down gently, and keep him fasting four or five hours after at the least: the next day turn him to grasse, and he will do well. There be others which use to let the horse blood in the neck-vein, and then give him this drink: Take of wine and oyle, of each a pinte, of *Frankincense* halfe an ounce, and of the juice of *Hare-bound* halfe a pint; mix them well together and give them to drink.

Others use to give him only somewhat more then a pint of honey, hogs-grease and butter molten together, and let him drink it luke-warm. Egges made soft in Vinegar, as is shewed in the Chapter of the dry cough, is excellent for this shortnesse of breath, so you give the eggs increasing, that is, the first day one, the second day three, and the third five: and withall to powre a little Oyle and Wine into his nostrils is very good also. There be other Farriers which use to take a Snake, and cut off her head and tail, and then take out the guts and entrailes, boyle the rest in water till the bone part from the flesh; Then cast the bone away, and give every third day of this decoction more then a pint, till you have spent three Snakes: and this is excellent good for the dry cough also.

Now the last and best medicine for this shortnesse of breath (for indeed in this case I do not affect much physicking) is only to take Anyseed, Lycoras, and Sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder, and take foure Spoonfuls thereof, and brew it well with a pint of white-wine, and half a pinte of sallet-oyle:



oyle: and use this ever after your horses travail, and a day before he is travelled.

## C H A P. LV.

*Of the broken winded, or Pur-sick horse.*

**T**His disease of broken-winded, I have ever since I first began to know either horse or horse-leach craft, very much disputed with my selfe: and for many years did constantly hold (as I still do) that in truth there is no such disease; only in this I found by daily experience, that by over hasty or sudden running of a fat horse (or other) presently after his water, or by long standing in the stable with no exercise and foul food, that thereby grosse and thick humours may be drawn down into the horses body so abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of his Lungs, and stopping up the wind-pipes, the wind may be so kept in, that it may only have his resort backward, and not upward, filling the guts, and taking from the body great part of his strength and livelyhood: which if from the corruption of our old inventions, we call broken-winded; then I must needs confesse, that I have seen many broken winded horses. The signes of which disease are these, much and violent beating of his flanks, especially drawing up of his belly upward, great opening and raising of his nostrills, and a continuall swift going to and fro of his tuel: besides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow Cough. The cure, I must needs say in so great an extreimity (for it is the worst of all the evils of the lungs,

Lungs which are before spoken of) is most desperate, but the preservations and helps both to continue the horses health and his daily service, are very many, as namely (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) to purge your horse by giving him this drink. Take of *Maiden hair*, *Ireos*, *Ashe*, *Licoras*, *Fenugreek*, *Basnis*, of each halfe an ounce, of *Cardanum*, *Pepper*, *bitter Almonds*, *Borage*, of each two ounces, of *Nettle-seed*, and of *Aristolochia* of each two ounces, boyle them altogether in a sufficient quantity of water, and in that decoction dissolve halfe an ounce of *Agaricke*, and two ounces of *Coloquintida*, together with two pound of honey, and give him a pint and a halfe of this at a time, for at least a week together, and if the medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you shall make it thinne with water, wherein *Lycoras* hath been sodden; and some Farriers also besides this medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the flanks of the horse to restrain their beating, and slit the horses nostrills to give the wind more liberty, but I do not affect either the one nor the other: The best diet for a horse in this case, is grasse in Summer, and hay sprinkled with water in Winter. There be other Farriers, which for this infirmity hold, that to give the horse three or foure daies together sodden wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet wine, or other good wine, mixt with *Licoras* water is a certain remedy. There be other Farriers which for this disease take the guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warme oven till they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them: Then give your horse

two or three spoonefull thereof with a pint of wine or strong Ale: then the rest mixe with Anise-seeds Lycoras and sweet butter, and make round balls or pills thereof, & give the horse two or three after his drinke: and so let him fast at least two houres after. Now when at any time you give him any Provender, bee sure to wash it in Ale or beere; then take Comin, Anise-seeds, Lycoras, and Sentuary, of each a just quantity, make them being mixt together into fine powder, and strew two spoonfulls thereof upon the provender being wet. This Physicke must be used for a fortnight at the least. Others use to take of Gloves and Nutmegs three drams, of Galingale & Cardamomum three drams, of Soot, of Bay-seeds, and Comin, of each three dramms and make them into fine powder, and put it into white wine being well tempered with a little Saffron: then put to so many yolks of Egges as may countervaile the other quantity: then mixe them with water wherein Licoras hath been sodden, making it so thin that the horse may drinke it, and after he hath drunke the quantity of a pint and a halfe of this drinke, tye up his head to the rack, and let him so stand at least an houre after, that the drink may descend into his guts, then walk him gently abroad, that the medicine may worke; and in any case give him no water for the space of four and twenty houres after: The next morning give him some grasse to eate, and the branches of Willow or Sallow, which will coole the heate of the potion.


Now there be other Farriers which take of Pances, Long-wort, Maiden-haire, the crops of Nettles, Carduus

*cus Benedictus*, herbe *Fluetin*, the rootes of *Dragons* bruised, the rootes of *Elicampaine* bruised, of water-hempe of *Peniri*all, of *Light-wort*, of *Angelica*, of each of these a good handfull, or so many of these as you can conveniently get: bruise them and lay them all night in two or three gallions of water, and give it a boyle in the morning, and let the horse drink thereof as much luke warme as hee will, then after this drink, give him a prettie quantity of sodden wheat; use this dyet for a weeke or more at the least; and then if the season be fit, put him to grasse. This cure is of great reputation, and thought to help when all other faile: for mine owne part I wish every man to judge it by the practise.

There be others which only for nine or ten daies together will have their horse water, wherein *Lycoras* hath bin sodden mixt with wine, and hold it a most soveraigne help.

There be others which will onely give new milke from the Cow: but I despaire of that cure, because Milke being onely flegmaticke, flegme is the onely substance of this disease, Other *Farrriers* use to keep the horse fasting four and twenty houres, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of *Fenugreeke*, halfe a quarter of bayes, of the green barke of *Elder trees*, of *Sugar-candy*, of water *Cresses*, of red *Mints*, of red *Fennell*, or *Haw tree leaves*, and of *Primrose leaves*, of each halfe an ounce, the whites of sixe egges; beate these in a mortar, and seeth them in the Ale, give it him to drinke: then let him fast after two houres: then give him meate and provender enough, yet but a little drinke. Others use to  
give

give him wet hay and moderate travaile: then take twenty egges, steepe them in vineger foure and twenty houres, giving the horse two every morning, and after the egges are spent, a pottle of new milke from the Cow.

Now there be other *Farriers* which onely will dissolve in Vinegar fifteene egges, and give the horse the first day three, the second day five, and the third seven, and hold it a good helpe. Others will take an ounce of Frankincence, two ounces of Brimstone, and mixe it with a pint of Wine, and halfe a pint of Honey. Others will take *Sal-niter*, burnt with the powder of pitch, and give it with the same quantity of wine and honey. Others wil onely give *Sal-niter* mingled with his meate, provided alwaies, that in every cure you keepe your horse from cold and labour, and daily chafe his head with oyle and wine. But of this look in the last new additions for the dry Cough, noted thus .

#### CHAP. LVI.

##### *Of the dry Malady or Consumption.*

**T**His disease of the dry Malady, or as the Ancient *Farriers* terme it, a generall Consumption, is nothing but a meere exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a cankerous fretting and gnawing humour ingendred by cold and surfeit, which descending from the head, sickneth and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant *Farriers* will call it the mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived: that the mourning of the Chine doth e-

ver cast some filthy matter from the nose, and the dry malady never casteth forth any thing

The signes to know this dry malady or Consumption, are these : His flesh, and strong estate of body will consume and waste away, the Belly will bee gaunt, his backe bone hid, and his skin so stretched or shrunke up, that if you strike on him with your hand, it will sound hollow like a Tabor : his haire will hardly shed, and either hee will utterly deny his meate, or the meate hee eateth will not digest, prosper, or breed any flesh on his body; he will offer to cough, but cannot, except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten small bones; and truely, according to the opinion of others, so I finde by mine owne practise of fifty yeares, that it is incurable; yet that a horse may be long preserved to doe much service, I have found it by these helpes : First, to purge his head with such Fumes and Pils as are good for the Glanders, which you may find in the Chapter of purgations, then give him Cole-worts small chopt with his provender, and now and then the bloud of a sucking pig warme.

There be other well experienced men; that instead of the bloud, will give either the juyce of *Leekes* mixt with Oyle and Wine, or else Wine and *Frankincense*, or Sallet Oyle and the juyce of Rue mixt together : But in my conceit, the best cure is to purge his body cleane with comfortable and gentle scourges, and then to be suffered to runne at Grasse, both a for Winter and a Summer, and there is no question, but he must necessarily end or mend, for languish long he cannot.

## CHAP. LVII

*Of the consumption of the flesh.*

**T**His disease which we call the Consumption of the flesh, is an unnaturall or generall dislike, or falling away of the whole body, (or, as we term it) the wasting of the flesh, which proceedeth from divers grounds: as namely from inward surfeits, either by naughty foode, or ill dyet, or from uncleane, moyst, and stinking lodging, but especially from disorderly labour, as by taking great and suddaine colds after violent heate, or such like; all which procure the wasting or falling away of the flesh. The signes whereof are these: first, an unnaturall & causelesse leanness, a dry and hard skin cleaving fast to his sides, want of stomacke or appetite to his meate, a falling away of his fillets, and a generall Consumption both of his buttocks and shoulders: the cure whereof, according to the Ancients, is to take a Sheeps head unflaid, and boyle it in a gallon and a halfe of Ale, or running water untill the flesh be consumed from the bones; then straine it through a Cloath, and put thereto of Sugar halfe a pound, of Cynamon one ounce, of conserve of Roses, of Barberries and of Cherries, of each one ounce; mingle them together, and give the horse every morning a quart thereof luke-warme, till two sheeps heads bee spent; and after every time he drinketh, let him be gently Walked or Ridden up and downe according to his strength; that is, if the Weather be warme, abroad, if it bee cold and Windy, then

in the stable, or some close house, suffering him neither to eat nor drinke for two houres after his medicines and from cold water you shall keepe him the space of fifteene dayes. Now for his ordinary foode or provender, you shall repute that best which hee eateth best whatsoever it be; and that you shall give by little and little, and not any grosse or great quantity at once, because the abundance and glut of food taketh away both the appetite and nutriment which should proceed from wholesome feeding.

CHAP. LVIII.

*How to make a leane horse fat.*

**B**ESIDES this generall Consumption of a Horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from sicknesse, there is also another Consumption, or want of flesh, which proceedeth from neshnesse, tendernesse, freeness of Spirit, and the climate under which the horse is bred: as namely, when a Horse that is bred in a warme Climate, comes to live in a cold; or when a horse that is bred upon a fruitfull and rich soyle, comes to live in a barren and dry place. In any of these cases the horse will be leane without any apparent signe of grief or Disease, which to recover there bee many receipts and medicines, as namely: The ancient *Farriers* did use when a horse either grew lean without sicknesse or wound, or any knowne distemperature, to take a quarter of a pecke of beanes; and boyle them in two gallons of water till they swell or burst, then to mixe with them a pecke of wheate branne, and so

to



to give it the horse in manner of a Mash or in stead of provender: for it will fat suddainly. Others and especially the *Italians*, will take Cole-worts, and having sodden them mixe them with wheat bran, and salt, and give them instead of provender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoyse being well sodden, (their heads, tailes, bones, and feete being rejected) and give it the Horse, suppose it fatteth suddainly: or if you mixe the flesh of the Tortoyse so sodden with your horses provender, that is good also: But as the simples are Italian, and not English, so I for mine owne part, refer the use rather to them then to my Country men. There be others which use to fat up their horses, by giving them a certaine graine which wee call Bucke, in the same manner as we give oats or pease. There be others which to fat a horse will give him onely parched wheate, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary Provender alwaies some wheate bran; and bee exceeding carefull that the horse be cleane drest, well rubbed, and soft littered; for without such cleane keeping there is no meate will injoy, or do good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeted. There be other Farriers, which do feed up a leane horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth nuts, Beares grease, to drinke with a quart of of Wine. Others will give the entrals of a Barbell or Tench with white wine. Others will give new hot draffe, and new branne, and twenty hard roasted egges, the shells being pulled of, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretie quantity of Salt, then mixe all

together, and give a good quantity thereof to the horse at morn, noone, & at evening for his provender; and once a day (which will be at high noone) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale, and when the horse beginneth to be gluttred upon this meat, then give him dried oates: if he be gluttred upon that, then give him bread, if he leave his bread, give him malt, or any graine that he will eate with a good Appetite, observing ever to keepe the horse very warme, and with this dyet in foureteene dayes the leanest horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other *Farriers* which to make a horse fat, wil take a quart of Wine, and halfe an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw egge, and a peny weight of the powder of *Myrrhe*; mixe altogether, and give it the horse to drinke many mornings together. Others will take three leaved grasse, halfe greene, and halfe dry, and give it the horse instead of hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddainly, only it will breed much rank bloud. Other *Farriers* use to take two peny worth of pepper, and as much Saffron, Aniseeds and Turmericke, a peny worth of long pepper, two peny worth of Treacle, a peny worth of Lycoras, a good quantity of Peni-riall, and Archangell: give the horse these with the yolkes of egges in milke to drinke. Others use to take wheate made cleane, and sod with salt and lard dried in the sunne, and give it twice a day before each watering. Others strong Ale, *Myrrhe*, sallet oyle, and twenty graines of white pepper, and instead of the Ale, you may take the Decoction; that is, the water wherein Sage and Rhue hath been sodden, it will soone make the  
horses

horſefat. Others take ſodden beanes well bruifed and ſprinkled with Salt, adding to the water foure times ſo much beane flower, or Wheate branne, and give that to the horſe, and it will fat him ſuddenly. Wine mixt with the bloud of a ſucking pigge, made luke-warm, or wine with the iuyce of Feather-feaw or an ounce of Sulphur, and a peny weight of *Myrrhe* well made into powder, together with a new laide Egge, will raiſe up a horſe that languifheth. Barley dried, or Barley boyled till it burſt, either will fatten a horſe.

But the beſt way of fattening of a horſe (for moſt of the waies before preſcribed are not to breed fat that will continue) is firſt to give your horſe three mornings together a pint of ſweet wine, and two ſpooneful of *Diapente* brewd together: for that drinke will take away all infection and ſickneſs from the inward parts: then to feed him well with provender at leaſt four times a day, that is after his water in the morning, after his water at noon, after his water in the evening, and after his water at 9 of the clock at night. Now you ſhall not let his provender be all of one ſort, but every meale if it may be changed, as thus: if in the morning you give him Oates, at noon likewise you ſhall give him bread, at evening beanes or Peaſe mixt with Wheate branne, at night ſodden Barley, &c. and ever obſerve of what food he eateth beſt, of that let him have the greateſt plenty, and there is no queſtion but he will in ſhort ſpace grow fat, ſound, and full of ſpirit, without either miſlike or ſickneſſe.

## CHAP. LIX

*The mirrour and master of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leanest and unsoundest Horses that may be fat, sound and fit either for market or travaile, in the space of fourteene daies.*

**I**F your horfe be ful of all the inward diseases that may be, and brought to that dislike and poverty that you are desperate of his life, you shall take of Aniseedes, of Comenseeds, of Fenugreeke, of Carthamus, of Elicompaine, of the floure of Brimstone, of browne Sugar candy, of each of these two ounces, beaten and searst to a very fine powder, then take an ounce of the iuyce of Licoras, and dissolve it in halfe a pint of white wine, then take three ounces of the Syrrup of Colts-foot, of Sallet oyle, and of life honey, of each halfe a pinte, then mixe all this with the former powders, and with as much wheate flower as will bind and knit them altogether, worke them into a stiff paite, and make thereof balles as bigge as french walnuts, hulls and all, and so keepe them in a close Gally pot, and when you have occasion to use them, take one and annoynt it with sweet Butter & give it the horse in the manner of a pill, and ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, and thus doe (if it be to prevent sickness) for three or foure mornings together. But if it be to take away infirmity, as Glanders, &c. then use it at least a weeke or more. But if to take away molten-grease, then instantly

ly after his heate, and in his heate.

But if it to fatten a horse, then use it at least a fortnight: now as you give them thus in the manner of a pill, so you may give them dissolved in sweet wine Ale, or Beere.

Lastly, if it bee to fatten a horse, then you shall take the second Balls: that is to say, of Wheate-meale sixe pound, or as Physitians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Aniseeds two ounces, of Comen seeds sixe drammes, of *Carthamus* one dramme and a halfe, of Fenugreeke seeds one ounce two drammes, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, of Sallet oyle one pint two ounces, of honey one pound and a halfe, of white wine foure pints: This must be made into paste, the hard Simples being pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into balls as bigge as a mans fist, & then every morning and evening when you would water your horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these balls, by lathering and chafing the same in the water, and then give it him to drink. The horse it may be wil be coy at the first to drink, but it is no matter, let him fast till he take it: for before two balls be spent, he will refuse all waters for this onely: This is the medicine above all medicines, and is truely the best scouring that can be given to any horse whatsoever: for besides his wonderfull feeding, it clenseth the body from all bad humours whatsoever.

## CHAP. LX.

*Of the Breast-paine, or paine in the breast.*

**T**Hough most of our *Farriers* are not curious to understand this Disease, because it is not so common as others: yet both my selfe and others find it is a disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the Horse with death. The *Italians* call it *Grannezza di petto*, & it proceedeth from the superfluity of bloud and other grosse humours, which being dissolved by some extreame and disorderly heat, resorteth downward to the breast, and paineth the horse extreamly that he can hardly goe. The signes are, a stiffe staggering, and weake going with his fore-legges, and hee can very hardly, or not at all bow downe his head to the ground, either to eate or drinke, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The cure is first to bathe all his breast and fore-booths with the oyle of Peter, and if that doe not help him within three or four daies, then to let him bloud on both his breast veins in the ordinary place, and then put in a rowel either of haire, corke, horn, or, leather, of all which, and the manner of rowelling, you shall read in a more particular Chapter hereafter in the booke of *Chirurgery*

Now there be other *Farriers* which for this sicknesse will first give the horse an inward drench, as namely, a pint of sweet wine, and two spoonfull of *Diapente*, then bathe all his breast & legs with wine and oyle mingled together, & in some ten or twelve daies it will take away the grief.

## CHAP. LXI.

Of the sicknesse of the Heart, called  
the Anticor.

**T**His sicknesse of the heart, which by the ancient *Farriers* is called *Anticor*, as much as to say, against or contrary to the heart, is a dangerous and mortall sicknesse proceeding from the great abundance of blood which is bred by too curious and proud keeping, where the horse hath much meate, and little or no labour, as for the most part your Geldings of price have, which running all the Summer at grasse, doe nothing but gather their own food, & such like, where the masters too much love and tenderness is the meanes to bring the horse to his death, as wee find daily in our practise: for when such naughty and corrupt blood is gathered, it resorteth to the inward parts, and so suffocateth his heart. The signes where of are, the horse will many times have a small swelling rise at the bottome of the Breast, which swelling will increase and rise upward even to the top of the necke of the horse, and then most assuredly it kills the horse: he wil also hang his head either downe to the manger, or downe to the ground, forsaking his food, and groaning with much painefullnesse. This Disease is of many an ignorant Smith taken sometimes for the Yellowes, and sometimes for the Staggers, but you shall know that it is not by these observations: First, neither about the whites of his eyes, nor the insides of his lippes shall you perceive any apparent Yellowes, and so then it cannot

cannot be the Yellowes, nor will he have any great swelling about his eyes, nor dizzinesse in his head, before he bee at the point of death; and so consequently it cannot be the Staggers. The cure whereof is two fold: the first a prevention, or preservative before the disease come: the second a remedie after the disease is apparent.

For the prevention, or preservative, you shall observe, that if your horse live idly, either at grasse or in the stable, and withall grow very fat, which fatnesse is never uncompanied with corruptnesse, that then you faile not to let him bloud in the neck-vein before you turne him to grasse, or before you put him to feed in the stable; and likewise let him bloud two or three months after, when you see hee is fed, and at each time of letting bloud, you must make your quantity according to the goodnesse of the bloud: for if the bloud be blacke and thicke, which is a signe of inflammation and corruption, you shall take the more: if it be pure red, and thin, which is a signe of strength and healthfulnesse, you shall take little or none at all. There be others which use for this prevention, to give the horse a scouring, or purgation of Malmsey, Oyle and Sugar candy, the making and use whereof you shall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your horse to feed, and as soon as you see his skin full swolne with fatnesse

Now for the remedie, when this disease shall bee apparent; you shall let him bloud on both his platveins, or if the Smiths skill will not extend so far, then you shall let the Horse bloud one the Neckveine,



veine, and that he bleed abundantly: then you shall give him this drinke. Take a quart of Malmsey, and put thereunto halfe a quartan of Sugar, and two ounces of Cinamon beaten to powder, and being made warme give it the horse to drinke: then keepe him very warme in the stable, stuffing him round about with soft wisps very close, especially about the stomack, lest the wind doe annoy him: and let his ordinary drinke be warme mashes of malt and water, and his food only that, whatsoever it be which hee eateth with the best stomacke.

Now if you see any swelling to appeare, whether it bee soft or hard: then besides letting him bloud, you shall strike the swelling in divers places with a Fleame or Launcet, that the corruption may issue forth, then annoynt it with Hogges grease made warme: For that will either expell it, or bring it to a Head, especially if the swelling bee kept exceeding warme: There be other Farriers which for this disease use to let the horse bloud as is aforesaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmsey, well brewed with three spoonfull of the powder called *Diapente*, and if the swelling arise, to lay thereunto nothing but hay well sodden in old urine, and then keep the same dyet as is aforesaid. Others use after the letting of bloud, to give the horse no drinke, but only ten or twelve spoonfulls of that water which is called Doctor *Stephens* Water, and is not unknowne to any Apothecary: and then for the rest of the cure to proceed in all things as is before specified, and questionlesse I have seen strange effects of this practice

CHAP. LXII  
*Of tyred Horses.*

Since wee are thus farr proceeded into the inward and vitall parts of a horses body, it is not amisse to speake something of the tiring of horses, and of the remedies for the same, because when a horse is truly tired (as by over extreame labour) it is questionlesse that all his vitall parts is made sicke and feebled. For to tell you in more plainnesse what tiring is, it is when a horse by extream and uncessant labour, hath all his inward and vitall powers which should accompany and rejoyce the heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward parts, and lesse deserving members, leaving the heart forlorne and sick, insomuch that a generall and cold faintnesse spreadeth over the whole body and weakneth it, in such sort that it can indure no further travaile, till those lively Heates, Faculties and powers bee brought unto their naturall and true places backe againe, and made to give comfort to the heart whom their losse sickned.

Now for the tiring of horses, though in truth it proceedeth from no other cause but this before spoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, wee say every horse that giveth over his labour is tired, you shall understand, that such giving over may proceed from foure causes: the first, from inward sicknesse: the second, from some wound received either of body or limbes: the third, from dulnesse of spirit, Cowardlinesse, of Restinesse; and the

the fourth from most extreame labour and travaile, which is true tyrednesse indeed. Now for the first which is inward sicknesse, you shall looke into the generall signes of every disease, and if you finde any of those signes to be apparant, you shall straight conclude upon that disease, and taking away the cause thereof, have no doubt but the effect of his tiring will vanish with the same: for the second, which is by some wound received, as by cutting or dismembring the sinews, ligaments, muskles, or by straying or stooming any bone or joynt, or by pricking in shoeing, or striking naile, iron, stub or thorne into the sole of the horses foote, and such like.

Sith the first is apparent to the eye, by dis-joyning the skin, the other by halting, you shall take a survey of your horse, and finding any of them apparant, looke what the grieve is, repaire to the latter part of this booke, which intreateth of Chirurgery, and finding it there, use the meanes prescribed & the tiring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which is dulnesse of Spirit; Cowardnesse or restinesse, you shall find them by these signes: If he have no apparant signe either of inward sicknesse, or outward grieve, neither sweateth much, nor sheweth any gteat alteration of countenance: Yet not withstanding tyreth, & refuseth reasonable labour, then such tiring proceedeth from dulnesse of spirit; but if after indifferent long travaile the horse tyre, & then the man descending from his backe, the Horse run or trot away, as though he were not tyred: the man then mounting againe, the horse utterly refuse to go forward, such tiring proceedeth from cowardlinesse,

but if a horse within one, two, or three miles Riding being temperately used, & being neither put to any tryall of his strength, nor, as it were scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tyre, it proceedeth onely from Restinesse and ill conditions. Then for the cure of any of all these, proceeding from Dulnesse, Fearfulnesse, and Vnwillingnesse, you shall take ordinary Window-glasse, and beate into fine powder: Then take up the skinne of each side the Spurre veine betweene your finger and your thum, and with a fine naile or botkin, make divers smal holes through his skinne, then rubbe Glasse powder very hard into those holes; which done, mount his backe, and doe but offer to touch his side with your heeles, and be sure if he have life in in him, he will goe forward, the greatest feare being that he will still but go too fast: but after your journey is ended, and you alighted, you must not fayle (because this powder of Glasse will corrode and rot his sides) to annoint both the sore places with the powder of Iet and Turpentine mixt together, for that will draw out the venom, and heal his sides againe. There be others which use when a Horse tyred thus through dulcwardlinesse or Restinesse, to thrust a burning Brand or iron into his Buttocks, or to bring Bottles of blazing straw about his eares, there is neither of the cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tyred horse, which tyreth through a natural faintnesse, drawne from exceeding labour, the signes to know it being long travel, much sweat, and willingnesse of course during his strength: the

Cure

cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to powre oyle and vineger into his nostrills, and to give him the drinke of Sheeps-heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the consumption of the flesh, being the 57 Chapter of this booke, and to bath his Legges with a com fortable bath, of which you shall finde choice in the Chapter of Baths, or else charge them with this charge: Take of Bole-armoney, and of Wheat flower, of each halfe a pound, and a little Rozen beaten into fine powder, & a quart of strong Vineger; mingle them well together, and cover all his legges therewith, and if it bee in the Summer, turne him to grasse, and he will recover his wearinesse. Others use to take a slice of fresh Beefe; having steeped it in Vineger, lap it about your bit or snaffle and having made it fast with a threed, ride your Horse therewith, and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, bee sure to give your horse rest, much warmth, and good feeding, that is, warme mashes, and store of provender, or else he will be the worse whilst he liveth.

Now if it be so that your horse tyre in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before the value of your horse, & that you must seeke unnaturall meanes to controle nature: In this case you shall take (where the powder of Glasse before spoken of cannot be had) three or four round pibble stones, and put them into one of his Eares, and then tye the Eare that the stones fall not out, and the noyse of those stones will make the horse go after he is utterly tyred; But if that faile; you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the Horses

Eare, and thrust a long rough sticke, full of nickes, through the same; and ever as the horse slackes his pace, so saw and fret the sticke up and downe in the hole, and be sure whilst he hath any life he will not leave going.

Many other torments there are which bee needlesse to rehearse, onely this is my most generall advice, if at any time you tire your horse, to take of old urine a quart, of Salt peter three ounces, boyle them well together, and bathe all the horses four-legs in the same, and without question it wil bring to the sinewes their naturall strength and nimbleness; and for other defects warme and good keeping wil cure them.

And although some of our Northern Farriers do hold, that oaten dough wil prevent tiring, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any horse that would eat it, the dough will so sticke and clam in the horses mouth: therefore I hold the Cures already receited to be fully sufficient. But for further satisfaction use these, which I reserved for my own privacy.

☞ Take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto halfe an ounce of the powder of Elicampaine, and brew them well together, and give it the horse with an horne.

☞ Take a bunch of *Peneriall* and tye it to the mouth of your bit or snaffle, & it will preserve a horse from tiring. Now if all these faile, then take off your horses Saddle, and rub his backe all over very hard with the hearb called *Arssmart*, and lay *Arsemart* under his Saddle, and so ride him.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*Of the Diseases of the stomacke, and first of  
the loathing of meate.*

**T**His Disease of the loathing of meat, is taken two wayes, the one a forsaking of meate, as when a Horses mouth, either through the inflammation of his stomacke, doth breake out into Blisters, or such like venemous soares: or when he hath the Lampass, Gigges, Wolfes teeth, and such like. The cure of all which you shall readily find in the second part of this booke, which treateth of Chyrurgery: the other a dislike of his meate through the imtemperature of his stomacke, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankenesse of blood, or extreimity of travaile, as you may perceive by daily experience when a horse is set up in his stable very hot, & meat instantly givē him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuse it. Hence it comes, that I doe ever hate the noone tide baiting of horses, because mens journeyes commonly crave haste, the horse cannot take such a naturall cooling as hee ought before his meate, and thereby breeds much sickenesse and disease: for meate given presently after travaile when a horse is hot, is the mother of al infirmity: or else it proceedeth from the intemperature of the Stomacke, being too cold, as being caused by some naturall defect. Now if it proceede from heat onely, which you shall know either by his sudden loathing of his meate, or the extreame heate of his mouth and breath: Then to coole his stomacke a-

gaine you shall either wash his tongue with vineger or give him to drink cold water mingled with Oyle and Vineger. There be other Farriers which use to give this drinke : take of milke and wine of each one pint, and put thereunto of Mel Rosatum three ounces, and having washed his mouth with Vineger and Salt, give him the drinke luke warme with a horne. But if the loathing of his meate proceed from the coldnesse of his stomacke, which onely is knowne by the standing up and staring of the haire : Then by the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall give him Wine and Oyle mixt together divers mornings to drinke : but others of our late Farriers give wine, oyle, Rue, and Sage boyl'd together by a quart at a time to drinke. Others to the former Compound will adde white Pepper and Myrrh. Others use to give the horse Onions pill'd and chopt, and Rocket seed boyled and bruised in Wine. Others use to mixe wine with the blood of a Sow pigge. Now to conclude, for the generall forsaking or loathing of meate, proceeding either from hot or cold causes in the stomacke, there is nothing better then the greene blades of Corne (especially wheate) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the yeare serve for the gathering thereof. Others instead thereof, will give the horse sweet wine and the seeds of Gith mixt together, or else sweet wine and Garlicke well peel'd and stamp't, being a long time brewed together.



## CHAP. LXIII.

*Of the casting out of the horses drinke.*

**T**He ancient Farriers, especially the Italians, constantly do affirme, that a horse may have such a Palsey, proceeding from the coldnesse of his stomacke, and may make him unable to retaine and keepe his drinke, but that many times he will vomit and cast it up againe: For mine own part, from other causes, as from cold in the heade, where the Rhume bindeth about the Roots and Kirnels of the tongue, hath as it were strangled and made straight the passages to the stomacke: There I have many times seene a horse cast his water that he dranke, in very abundant sort backe againe through his Nostrills, and some times strive with great earnestnesse to drinke, but could not at all. The signes of both (from which cause soever it proceed) is only the casting up of his drink or water, and the cure thereof is only to give him Cordiall and warme dringes, as is Malmsey, Cinamon, Aniseedes and Cloves, well brewd and mixt together, and to annoint his breast, and under his shoulders, with either the oyle of Cypresse, oyle of spike, or the oyle of pepper, and to purge his head with fumes or pills, such as will force him to sneeze, of which you may see store in a chapter following: for such fumigations joyning with these hot oyles, wil soone dissolve the humours.

## CHAP. LXV.

*Of Surfetting with glut of provender.*

**T**Here is not any disease more easily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horse, then this surfeit which is taken by the glut of provender, it commeth most commonly by keeping the Horse extreame sharp or hungry, as either by long travaile or long standing empty : and then in the height of greedinesse, giving him such superabundance of meate, that his stomacke wanting strength to digest it, all the whole body is driven into an infinite great paine and extremity. The signes are great weaknes and feeblenesse in the Horses limbes, so that he can hardly stand, but lyeth downe oft, and being downe walloweth and tumbleth up and down as if he had the bots.

The cure thereof, according to the common practise of our common Farriers, is to take a halfe penny worth of blacke Sope, and a quart of new milke, and as much sweet butter as Sope, and having on a Chafing dish and Coales, mixe them together, and give it the Horse to drinke : this will cleanse the horses stomacke, and bring it to it's strength againe.

But the ancient Farriers did use first, to let the horse bloud in the necke veine, (because every surfeit breeds distemperature in the bloud) then trot the horse up and down an houre and more, and if he cannot stale, draw out his Yard, and wash it with white Wine made luke-warme, and thrust into his  
yard

yard either a clove of Garlicke, or a little oyle of Camomill, with a piece of small waxe candle. If hee cannot dung, first with your hand rake his Fundament, and then give him a Clister, of which you shall read hereafter : When his Clister is received, you shall walke him up and down till he have emptied his belly, then set him up, and keepe him hungry the space of two or three dayes, observing ever to sprinkle the hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drinke be warme Water and Branne made mash-wise : After he hath drunke the drinke, let him eat the Branne if hee please, but from other provender keepe him still fasting, at the least ten dayes.

There be other Farriers that in this case, use only to take a quart of Beer or Ale, and two peny worth of Sallet oyle, and as much Dragon Water, a penny-worth of Treacle, & make al these warme upon the coals, then put in an ounce of Cynamon, Aniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the horse luke warme to drink.

All these receites are exceeding good, yet for mine own part; and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, and there is nothing better for this disease then moderate exercise, much fasting, and once in four or five dayes a pint of sweet wine, with two spoonfull of the powder of Diapente.

## CHAP. LXVI.

*Of foundring in the body, being a surfeit got either by meate, drinke, or labour.*

**T**His Disease, of foundring in the body, is of all surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, & most incident to horses that are daily travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much provender suddenly after labour, the horse, being then, as it were, panting hot (as we may daily see unskilfull horsemen do at this day) wherby meate which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evill and grosse humours, which by little and little spread themselves thorough the member, doe at length oppresse and almost confound the whole body, absolutely taking away from him all his strength, insomuch that he can neither go nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to rise againe: Besides, it taketh away from him his instrumentall powers, as the office both of urine and Excrements, which cannot be performed but with extreame paine. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather leane, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to drinke too much in his travaile being very hot, whereby the grease being suddainly cooled, it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulnesse, that without speedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of death onely. Now whereas some Farriers doe hold, that this Foundring in the body, should be no other then the foundring in  
the

the leggs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of evill humours which resort downe-ward, they are much deceived: For it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of corporall and substantiall evils, which by an unnaturall accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawne from the French word *Fundu*, signifying melting, truely I think it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to intitle the Disease, then any coherence it hath with the name it beareth: For mine owne part, I am of opinion, that this Disease which wee call Foundring in the body, doth not onely proceed from the causes aforesaid, but also and most oftent by suddaine washing Horses in the Winter season, when they are extreame fat & hot with instant travaile, where the cold vapour of the water striking into the body, doth not onely astonish the inward and vitall parts, but also freezeth up the skin, and maketh the blood to lose his office. Now the signes to perceive this Disease are, holding downe of his head, staring up of his haire, coughing, staggering behind, trembling after water, dislike of his meat, leaneness, stiffe going, disability to rise when he is downe: And to conclude, which is the chiefest signe of all other, his Belly will be clung up to his backe, and his backe rising up like a Camell.

The cure according to the opinion of the Farriers is, first, to rake his Fundament, and then to give him a Clister: Which done, and that the horses belly is emptied, then take of Malmsey a quart, of Sugar halfe

halfe a quartern, of Cynamon halfe an ounce of Licoras, and aniseeds, of each two spoonefull beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmsey, warme them together at the fire, so that the honey may be molten, then give it the horse luke-warme to drinke: which done, walke him up and down either in the warm stable, or some warme roade the space of an houre, then let him stand on the Bit fasting two houres more, onely let him bee warme cloathed, stopt, and littered, and when you give him Hay, let it be sprinkled with water, and let his provender be very cleane sifted from dust, & given by a little at once; and let his drinke be warme mashes of malt and water. Now when you see him recover & get a little strength, you shal then let him bloud in the neck veine, & once a day perfume him with Frankincense to make him neese, and use to give him exercise abroad when the weather is warme, and in the house when the weather is stormy.

Now there be other Farriers which use for this disease to take a halfe peny worth of Garlicke, two penny worth of the powder of pepper, two pennyworth of the powder of Ginger, two penny worth of Graines bruised, and put all these into a pottle of strong Ale, and give it the horse to drink by a quart at a time, dyeting and ordering him as afore-said: & when he getteth strength, either let him bloud in the necke veine, or the spurre Veins, or on both: to conclude, there is no drinke nor dyet which is comfortable, but it is most soveraigne and good for this infirmity.

## CHAP. LXVII.

*Of the greedy worme, or hungry evill  
in Horses.*

**T**HIS hungry evill is a Disease more common then found out by our Farriers, because the most of our horse-masters being of great ignorance hold it a speciall vertue to see a horse eate eagerly, whereas indeede this over-hasty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and sicknesse of the inward parts; and this Disease is none other then an insatiate and greedy eating, contrary to Nature and old Custome, and for the most part, it followeth some extreame great Emptinesse, or want of naturall foode, the beast being even at the pinch, and ready to be chap-falne. There be some Farriers which suppose that it proceedeth from some extreame cold outwardly taken by traveling in cold and barren places, as in the frost and snow, where the outward cold maketh the stomacke cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakened. The signes are onely an alteration or change in the Horses feeding, having lost all temperance; and snatching and chopping at his meate, as if he would devoure the Manger: The cure, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first to comfort his stomacke by giving him great slices of white bread toasted at the fire, and steeped in Muskadine, or else bread untoasted, and steeped in Wine, and then to let him drinke wheat flower and Wine brewed together. There be others which use to knead stiffe cakes

oft

of Wheate flower and Wine, and to feed the horse therewith. Others use to make him bread of pine-tree nuts and wine mingled together, or else common earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine own part, I hold nothing better then moderately feeding the horse many times in the day with wholesome Beane bread, well baked, or oates well dryed and sifted.

### CHAP. LXVIII.

*Of the diseases of the Liver in Generall, and first of the inflammation thereof.*

**T**Here is no question but the Liver of a horse is subject to as many diseases, as either the Liver of a man or any other creature, onely through the ignorance of our common Farriers ( who make all inward diseases one sicknesse) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let passe, and many times poysoned with false potions; but true it is, that the liver sometimes by the intemperatenesse thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by meanes of evill humour, as Choler, or fleagme over-flowing in the same, Heat ingendring Choler, and Coldnesse Fleagin, the Liver is subject to many sicknesses, & is diversly pained, as by Inflammations, Apostumation, or Ulcer, or by Obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs : or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signes to know if the disease proceed from hot causes, is leanenesse of body, the loathing of meate, voyding Dung of a strong



strong scent, great thirst, and loosnesse of belly. The signes to know if the disease proceed from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite of meate, dung not stinking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceede to the particular Diseases of the Liver, and first of the inflammation, you shall understand that it commeth by meanes that the bloud through the abundance, thinnesse, boyling heate, or sharpnesse thereof, or through the violence of some outward cause, breaketh out of the Veines, and floweth into the body or substance of the Liver; and so being dispossessed of his proper Uessels, doth immediately putrifie, and is inflamed, corrupting so much of the fleshly substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it commeth, that for the most part, the hollow side of the liver is first consumed, yea sometimes the full side also: This inflammation by a natural heate is sometimes turned to putrifaction, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of nature or Art, it doth breake and runne, then it is called an Ulcer, or filthy sore. Now the signes of an inflammation on the hollow side of the liver (which is the least hurtfull) is loathing of meate, great thirst, loosnesse of belly, and a continuall unwillingnesse to lye on the left side: but if the inflammation be on the full side of the Liver, then the signes be short breathing, a dry Cough, much paine, when you handle the horse about the Wind pipe, and an unwillingnesse to lye on the right side. The signes of Apostumation is great heat, long fetching of breath, and a continuall looking to his side.

side. The signes of ulceration, is continuall coldnesse, starting up the haire and much feeblenesse and fainting, because the filthy matter casteth evill vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart and occasion death. Now for the cure of these inflammations, some Farriers use to take a quart of Ale, an ounce of Myrrh, an ounce of Frankincense, and brewing them well together, give it the horse divers mornings to drinke. Others use to take three ounces of the seedes of Somallage, and three ounces of Hysop, and as much Southerwort, and boyle them well in oyle & wine mingled together, and give the horse to drinke; keepe the horse warme and let him neither drinke cold water, nor eate dry dusty hay.

#### CHAP. LXIX

*Of Obstructions, stoppings, or harde knobs on the Liver:*

**T**HESSE Obstructions or stopping of a Horses liver, do come most commonly by travelling or labour on a full stomacke, whereby the meat not being perfectly digested, breedeth grosse and tough humors, which humors by the extremity of travel, are violently driven into the small veines, through which the liver ought to receive good nutriment, and so by that means breedeth obstructions & stoppings. Now from these obstructions (when they have continued any long time) especially if the humors be cholericke breedeth many times hard knobs on the liver, which knobs maketh the horse continually lye  
on

on his right side, and never on the left, because if he should lye on the left side, the weight of the knob would oppresse the stomacke, and even sicken all the vitall parts in him.

The signes of these Obstructions or stoppings, are heavinesse of Countenance, distention or swelling, great dulnesse and floath in the Horse when he beginneth his travell, and a continuall looking backe to his short ribs, where remaineth his greatest paine and torment. Now the cure thereof is to seeth continually in the water which he drinketh, *Agrimony*; *Fumitory*, *Camomil*; *Wormewood*, *Licoras*, *Aniseedes*, *Smallage*, *Parsley*, *Spicknard*, *Gentian*, *Succory*, *Endive* and *Lupins*, the vertues whereof are most comfortable to the Liver. But forasmuch as the most part of our English Farriers are very simple Smiths, whose Capacities are unable to dive into these several distinctions, and that this Worke ( or Master-piece ) is intended for the weakest braine whatsoever, you shall understand that there bee certaine generall signes to know when the Liver of a horse is grieved with any grief, of what nature or condition soever it bee; and so likewise generall receipts to cure all the griefes, without distinguishing or knowing their natures : You shall know then if a horse have any grieffe or paine in his Liver by these signes. First, by a loathing of his meate : next by the wasting of his flesh, drynesse of his mouth, and roughnesse of his tongue, and great swelling thereof, and refusing to lye on the side grieved: And lastly, a continuall looking backward.

Now the generall cures for the sicknesse of the Li-

L

ver

ver, is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, to give the horse Aloes dissolved in sweet wine for it both purgeth and comforteth the liver. Others use to give him to drink Ireos stampt and mixt with wine and water together, or instead of Ireos, to give him Calamint, called of the Latins Polimonia. Others give Savery with oyle and wine mixt together. Others use Liverwort and Agrimony with Wine and oyle. Others use comfortable frictions and to steepe his provender in warme water, and to mixe with his provender a little Nitrum, not forgetting to let him stand warme, and lye soft: But that which is generally prayed above all medicines, is to give the Horse a Wolfes Liver beaten to powder, and mixt eyther with Wine, Water, Oyle, or any other medicine.

¶

Now for a conclusion of this Chapter, if the Farriers skill bee so good, that he can distinguish the Nature of each severall infirmity about the Liver, then I would have him for to understand that for inflammations (which are the first beginners of all diseases) would be used simples that mollifie & disperse humours, as by these, Linseed, Fenugreek, Camomil, Aniseeds, Mellilot, & such like, to which mollifying simples, would be ever added some simples that are astrigent or binding, or as these: red Rose leaves, Bramble leaves, Wormewood, plaintaine, Mirrhe, Masticke, Storax, and such like. Now for Apostumes they are to be ripened and voided, & ulcers must be cleansed & scoured downward, either by excrement or urine, and therefore the use of such simples as provoke either the one or the other (of which you shall finde

finde plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

## CHAP. LXX.

*Of the Consumption of the Liver.*

OF the Consumption of the Liver, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the mourning of the Chine : yet because amongst our best Farrriers it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers opinions. First, some hold it commeth onely from sudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it commeth of any humour, especially of cholericke matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the liver, which rotting by leasurable degree, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the Liver, proceeding, as they thinke, from corrupt meates, and sweet drinks. And the last thinketh it commeth by extreame heat gotten in travaile, which inflameth the bloud, doth afterward putrifie, corrupt, & exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver : because the Liver is spungious like the Lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate ; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity : For the Liver being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the body for want of good nutriment, doth in time consume. The signes of this disease is a loathing of meate, and a stretching forth of the horses body at length as he standeth, hee will seldome or never lye downe, his breath will stinke marvelously and he will continually cast exceeding foule matter, either at one Nostrill, or at both, according as one

side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he casteth, he will ever have betwixt his neither jawes, about the middest of them, a hard knob or kinnell about the bignesse of a Walnut. Now the preservative of this disease, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take halfe a pint of Malmsey and as much of the bloud of a young pigge, and to give it the horse luke-warme to drinke. Other Farriers use to give the horse no other foode for the space of three dayes, then warme Wort, and oates baked in an Oven, being sure that the horse be kept fasting the first night before he received his medicin. Others suppose, that if into the wort which he drinketh, you do put every morning two or three spoonfull of the powder made of Agrimony, red Rose leaves, Saccarum, Rosaccum, Diarchadon, Abbatis, Disantelon, Licoras, and of the Liver of Wolfe, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goates milke luke warme, is very good: Others hold that Malmsey, and the juyce of Fetherfew given to drinke is also good.

Others use (and hold it equall with the best) to take an ounce of Sulphur vive beaten into fine powder, & a peny weight of Myrrhe beaten to fine powder; mixe them together with a new laide egge, and give them to drink with halfe a pint of Malmsey; use this divers times, and keepe the horse fasting, yet separate him from other horses, for this disease is infectious.

## CHAP. LXXI.

*Of the diseases of the Gall.*

**A**S is the Liver; even so the gall of a Horse is subject to divers and many infirmities, as to obstructions, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulnesse and emptinesse of the bladder, and stone in the Gall; and these obstructions doe chance two severall waies: First, when the passage by which Choler should passe from the Liver unto the bladder of the Gall; as unto his proper receptacle, is stopped; and so the Bladder of the Gall remaineth emptie: for you are to understand, that the Gall is none other thing then a long, slender, little greenish bladder, fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholericke bitter moisture, which would otherwise offend not onely the Liver, but the whole body also. Now if the passage of this necessary vessell bee stopped, there cannot chuse but follow many infirmities as either vomiting, the laxe, the bloody flux, or the yellows.

Secondly, when the way whereby such Choler should issue forth of the Bladder of the Gall downe into the guts and excrements, is closed up, and so superaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence springeth dulnesse of spirit, suffocating, belching heat, thirst, and disposition to rage and fury; and truly to any beast there is not a more dangerous disease then the over flowing of the Gall: But our later experience findeth that a horse hath no Gall at all:

but that filthy & corrupt matter is wasted and spent either by sweat, exercise, or else doth turne to infirmity. The signes of both these kinds of evils, or obstructions, are yellownesse of the skin, infected with yellow Jaundise, and a continuall costivenesse of the body: and the cures of them are, according to the most ancient Farriers, to give the horse milke, and great store of Saffron, boyled together, or instead of Milke, to give Ale, Saffron, and Aniseeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold that Selladine roots and leaves chopt and bruised, and boyled in Beere; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or herbe of grace, and given the Horse luke-warme to drinke, is most soveraigne.

Now for the stone in the Gall, which is of a blackish colour, it commeth from the obstruction of the conduits of the bladder, whereby the choler being too long kept in, becommeth dry, and so converteth first into gravel, and after into a solid and hard stone, of which both the signes and the cure, are those last before reherfed.

#### CHAP. LXXII.

*Of all such diseases as are incident to the Spleene.*

**T**He Spleen is a long, narrow, flat, spungy substance, of a pale fleshy colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the receptacle of Melancholy, and the dregges of the bloud, and is as subject to infirmity, as any inward member whatsoever, as to Inflammations, Obstructions, knobbes, and swellings



swellings, it is through the Sponginesse, apt to suck in all manner of filth, and to dilate and spread the same over the whole body: The appearance thereof is on the left side under the short Ribbes, where you shall perceive some small swelling, which swelling gives great griefe to the midriffe, especially after a full stomacke, taking away much more of the horses digestion then his appetite, and being suffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and growes in the end to a hard knobbe, or stony substance.

This disease, or diseases of the spleene, are incident to horses most in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit, or greedy eating of greene meates. The signs of which diseases are these, heavinesse, dullnesse, paine on the left side, and hard swellings, short breath, much groaning, and an over-hasty desire to his meate. The cure, according to the opinion of our best Farriers, is to make the horse sweate either by labour or cloathes, then to give him to drinke a quart of white Wine, wherein hath beene boyled the leaves of Tamariske bruised, and a good quantity of Comin-seede beaten to powder, and give it luke warme. Others use, after the horse hath sweate, to powre into his left Nostrill every day, the juyce of Myrobalans, mixt with Wine and Water to the quantity of a pinte. Others take Comin-seede and Hony, of each sixe ounces, of Lacerpitium as much as a bean, of Vineger a pinte, and put all these into three quarts of water, & let it stand so all night, and give the horse a quart thereof next morning having fasted all night. Others make the horse to drink

of Garlicke, Nitrum, Hare-hound, and Wormwood sodden sharpe Wine, and to bathe all the Horses left side with warme water, and to rub it hard. There be others which use to cauterize or scarifie the Horses left side with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgment in the practise.

CHAP. LXXIII.

*Of the Yellows or Jaundise.*

**A**S before I said, from the Obstructions or overflowings of the Gall and spleene, doth spring this disease which our common Smiths call the yellows, and our better Farriers the Jaundise; and you shall understand, that of this yellows or Jaundise, these are two kinds, the first an overflowing of choler, proceeding from the sicknesse of the Gall, and it is called simply the yellows, or yellow Jaundise; because the outward partes of the body, as Eys, Skinne Mouth, inside of the lips, and the like, are dryed and coloured yellow; the other an overflowing of Melancholy, proceeding from the sicknesse of the Spleene, and is called the blacke yellows, or blacke Jaundise, because all the outward parts are blacke. Now both these Jaundise, or yellowes, have their beginnings from the evils of the Liver; the yellow Jaundise, when the liver by inflammation, hath all his blood converted into Choler, and so over-whelmes the body; and the blacke Jaundise when some Obstructions in the Liver-veine, which goeth to the spleene, hindreth the spleene from doing his Office, and receiving the dregges of blood from the  
Liver,

Liver, or else when the spleene is surcharged with such dreggs of bloud, and so sheddeth them backe againe into the Veines.

Now although this distinction of the blacke Jaundise, or blacke yellowes, will appeare strange unto our common Farriers, yet it is most certaine, that whensoever a horse dyeth of the yellowes, he dyeth onely of the blacke yellowes: for when it commeth unto the case of mortality, then are all the inward powrs converted to blacknesse, and the yellow substance is cleane mastred; but whilst the matter is yellow, so long the horses body is in good state of recovery. Besides, these yellowes doe ever follow one the other, and the lesser hath no sooner got preeminence, but the greater pursues him; of all the inward diseases in a horses body, that is most common oftneft in practise, & yet most mortal if it be not early prevented. The signes of this disease of yellow Jaundise; are yellownesse of his eyes, nostrils, inside of the lippes, the skin, the yard, and the urine: his ears and his flanke will sweate, and he will groane when he lyeth downe, and he will not onely be faint, but utterly forsake his meate also. The cures which are at this day in practise for this disease, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and poysonous: Every Smith almost making a medicine of his owne invention, God knows weake and to little purpose, but for the best receipts which at this day are used by any good Farriers whatsoever, I will diliver you the whole Catalogue.

First, for the Ancient Farriers, both Italian and French, they did use to take of Tyme and Comin, of  
each

each like quantity, and stamping them together to mingle it with Wine, hony, and water; and then to let him bloud in the pasternes.

But now the Farriers of latter dayes use, first to let the horse bloud in the Necke-veine, suffering him to bleed, till you perceiue the bloud to grow pure, then to give him this drinke: Take of white Wine or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron, of Turmericke, of each halfe an ounce, and the iuyce that is wrung out of a great handfull of Selladine, and being luke-warme, give it the horse to drinke, then keepe him warme the space of three or foure dayes, giving him warme water with a little branne in it. Others use after the horse is let bloud in the necke-veine: First to rake him, then to give him a suppositary made of Salt, honey, and Majoram, and then give him to drinke halfe an ounce of Myrrhe dissolved in a quart of Wine or Ale. Others use to give after bloud-letting, onely cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others which after Bloud letting, will onely stoppe his Eares with Selladine, and then binde them fast up, and let him have no exercise for twelve houres after. Others use after the letting him bloud, to give him a Glister, then to take Saffron, and Turmericke, and mixing them with a quart of Milke, give it him to drinke luke warme. Others use to let the horse bloud in the third barre of the roofe of his mouth, with a sharpe Knife, and after he hath bled well, to take a halfe penny worth of English Saffron, and a penny worth of Turmericke, and a new laid egge, with the shell, and all small broken, and mixe it in a quarte of  
stale

Stale Ale or Beere. and so set him up warme.

Others use to take after bloud-letting of Turmericke, and Saffron a like quantity, and two or three Cloves, & sixe spoonefull of Vineger and Verjuyce, and to put into each eare of the horse, three spoonefulls thereof, and then stoppe his eares with blacke Wooll, and so tye them up for seven or eight dayes after. Others take long pepper graines, Turmericke and Lycoras, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong Beere or Ale, and give it the Horse to drinke. Others use after taking and bloud-letting to take the juyce of Ivy leaves, and mingle it with Wine, to squirt it into the horses Nostrils, and to let him drinke onely cold Water mixt with Nitrum, and let his foode be grasse, or new hay sprinkled with water.

Thus you have seen, I dare well affirme, all the best practises which are at this day knowne for this disease, and where they all faile, there is no hope of cure, (as the old Farriers affirme) yet let me thus far further informe you. This disease of the Yellowes or Jaundise, if the Keeper or Master be not a great deale the more skilfull and carefull, will steale upon you unawares, and (as I have often seen) when you are in the midst of your journey, remote and distant far from any towne that can give you succour, it may be your horse will fall down under you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour, questionlesse he will be dead.

In this extreimity you have no helpe, but to draw out a sharpe pointed Knife; Dagger, or Rapier for a neede, and as neare as you can, opening the Horses mouth)

mouth Strike him bloud about the third bar of the rooffe of his mouth, and so letting him eat and swallowing his owne blood a good while, then raise him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to place of rest, then be sure to blood him, and give him halfe an ounce of the powder of Diapente in a pint of Muskadine well brewed together, and thus do three or four mornings together, and let him be fasting before, and fast two houres after, and after the potion give him a little moderate exercise, or else there will a worse fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the blacke Jaundise, which of some Farriers is called the dry yellows, though for mine owne part I hold it to bee incurable, yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary humour, and prescribe this physicke for the cure thereof: First, to give the horse a Glister made of Oyl, water, milke, and nitrum after his Fundament is raked, then to powr the decoction of mallowes mingled with sweete wine in his Nostrills, and let his meate be grasse or hay sprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his provender dryed oats: He must rest from labour, and be often rubbed. Now there bee other Farriers, which for this disease would onely have the horse drinke the decoction of wilde Coleworts sodden in wine; the effects of all which I onely refer to experience.

## CHAP. LXXIII.

*Of the Dropsie, or evill habit of the body.*

Whereas we have spoken before of the Consumption of the flesh, which proceedeth from surfeits, ill lodging, labour, colds, heats, and such like: you shall also now understand, that there is another Drynesse or Consumption of the flesh which hath no apparant cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropsie, or evill habit of the body, which is most apparently seene, when the horse by dislike doth lose his true naturall colour, and when baynesse turnes to dunnesse, blacknes, to duskishnes, and whitnesse to Ashinesse, and when he loseth his Spirit, strength, and alacrity. Now this commeth not from the want of nutriment, but from the want of good nutriment, in that the bloud is corrupted either with fleame, choler, or melancholy, comming (according to the opinion of our best Farriers) either from the spleene, or the weaknesse of the stomacke or Liver, causing naughty digestion.

Others thinke it commeth from foule feeding, or much idlenesse, but for mine own part, albeit I have had as much tryall of this disease, as any one man, and that it becommeth not mee to controle men of approved judgement; yet this I dare averre, that I never saw this disease of the evill habite, or evill colour of the body, spring from any other grounds, then either disorderly and wilde riding, or from Hunger, or barren Woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropsie, there is small or no difference.

For

For the Dropsie being divided into three kinds, this is the first thereof, as namely, an universall swelling of the body, but especially the Leggs, through the abundance of water lying betweene the skin and the flesh. The second, a swelling in the covering or bottome of his belly, as if the Horse were with foale; which is only a watrish humour abiding betwixt the skin & the rim: And the third a swelling in the same place by the like humour abideth betwixt the great bag and the Kell.

The common signes of this disease, are shortnesse of breath, swelling of the body or legges, losse of the Horses naturall colour, no appetite unto meate, and a continuall thirst, his Backe, Buttockes, and Flanks will bee dry, and shrunke up to their bones; his Ueines will bee hid that you cannot see them, and wheresoever you shall presse your finger any thing hard against his body, there you shall leave the print behind you, and the flesh will not rise of a good space after: when he lyeth downe he will spread out his limbs, and not draw them round together, and his haire will shed with the smallest rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but onely two Dropsies, that is, a wet Dropsie, and a windy Dropsie, but being examined, they are all one with those recited, have all the same signes and the same cure, which according to the ancient Farriers is in this sort: first, to let him be warme covered with many cloaths, and either by exercise, or other wise drive him into a sweate; then let his backe and body bee rubbed against the haire, and let his foode be for the most part, Cole-worts, Smalladge, and Elming Boughes



Boughes, or whatsoever else will keepe his body soluble or provoke Urine: when you want this food let him eate grasse, or hay sprinkled with water, and sometimes you may give him a kinde of pulse called Ciche, steeped a day and a night in Water, and then take out and layd so, as the Water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which onely would have the horse to drink Parsley stampt & mixt with wine or else the root of the herb called panax stampt and mixt with wine. Now whereas some Farriers advise to slit the belly a handfull behind the Navel, that the Wine and Water may leasurely issue forth, of mine owne knowledge I know the Cure to be most vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter spoyle & killing of the horse: for a horse is a beast, and wanting knowledge of his own good, will never be drest but by violence, and that violence will bring downe his kel so as it will never be recovered. Now for these drop-sies in the belly, although I have shewed you the signes and the cures; yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other Drop-sie which is the swelling of the Legs, and the losse of the colour of the haire, it is very ordinary and in hourly practise: the best cure whereof that ever I found amongst the Farriers is this.

Take of strong Ale a Gallon, and set it on the fire, & then skum off the white froth which riseth, then take a handfull of wormwood with stalks and put them into the Ale, and let them boyle till it become almost to a quart: then take it off, and straine it exceedingly, then dissolve into it three ounces of  
the

the best Treacle, and put in also an ounce and a halfe of long pepper and grains beaten to very fine powder : then brew them altogether till it be no more but luke warme, and so give it the horse to drinke, the next day let him bloud on the neck-vein, & annoint his fore-legs with traine Oyle, and so turne him into good Grasse, and fear not his recovery.

CHAP. LXXV.

*Of the Disease in the guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholick.*

**A** Horses Guts are subject unto many and sundry infirmities: as namely, to the wind cholick, fretting of the belly, costivenesse, Laxe, bloody flux, and wormes of divers kind. Now for the Cholicke, it is a grievous and tormenting pain in the great Gut or bag, which because it is very large and spacious, & full of empty places, it is the more apt to receive divers offensive matters, which do breed divers infirmities, especially Winde, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the body, as it were, swel, and offendeth both the stomacke and other inward members. This disease doth not so much appeare in the stable, as abroad in travaile, and the signs are these: the horse will often offer to stale, but cannot, he wil strike at his belly with his hinder foote, and many times stamp, he will forsake his meate, and towards his flanke you shall see his belly appeare more full then ordinary; and he will desire to lye downe and wallow. The cure thereof, according to the most ancient Farriers, is only to give him a Glister made eyther

ther of Wilde Cucumbers, or else of Hens-dung, Nitrum, and strong vineger, the manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of Glisters: and after the Glisters labour him.

Others use to give the horse the Urine of a childe to drinke, or a glister of sope and Salt water. Others to give him five drammes of Myrrhe in good Wine, and then gallop him gently thereupon. Others use to give him Smallage and Parsley with his provender, and then to travail him till hee sweate. But for my own part, I hold it best to take a quart of Malmsey, of Cloves, Pepper, Cynamon, of each halfe an ounce, of sugar halfe a quartern, and give it the horse luke-warme, and then ride him at least an houre after; but before you ride him, annoynt all his flankes with Oyle-debay, or oyle of Spike. Now if whilst you ride him he will not dung, you shall then Rake him, and if need be, enforce him to dung, by thrusting into his Fundament a pill'd Onion jagged crossewaies, that the tickling of the luyce may inforce ordure: and by no meanes, for four or five dayes let him drinke cold water, nor eat any grasse or greene Corne, but keepe him upon wholesome dry meat in a warme stable.

#### CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Belly-ake, or fretting in the belly.*

**B**ESIDES the Cholicke, there is also another grievous paine in the belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake or fretting in the belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of greene pulse when it growes

M

on

on the ground, or raw undried pease, beans, or oates or else when sharpe fretting humours, or inflammations, or abundance of grosse matter is gotten betweene the great gut and the panicle. The signes are much wallowing, great groaning, and often striking at his belly, and gnawing upon the manger. The cure according to the opinion of some Farriers, is first to annoynt your hand with Sallet oyle, butter or grease, and then thrusting it in at the horses Fundament, pul out as much dung as you can reach, which is called raking a horse : then give him a glister of Water and Salt mixt together, or instead thereof give him a Suppositary of Honey and salt, and then give him to drink the powder of Centuary & wormwood brewd with a quart of Malmsey. Others use onely to give the horse a Suppositary of New-castle Sope, and for mine own part I hold it only the best.

CHAP. LXXVII.

*Of the Costivenesse, or belly-bound.*

**C**ostivenesse or Belly bound, is when a horse is so bound in his belly that he cannot Dung, it is a disease of all other most incident to running horses, which are kept in a dry and hot dyet. Now my Masters the great Farriers, affirme that it proceedeth from glut of provender, or over much feeding and rest, or from winde; grosse humours, or cold, causing Obstructions, and stoppings in the guts; but I suppose (and imagin that all the best Keepers of Hunting or Running horses will consent with me) that it rather proceeds from much fasting, whereby the  
Gut.

Gut wanting fresh substance to fill it, doth out of its owne great heate, bake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certaine rule that nothing can over flow before it be full. Or else it may proceede from eating too much dry & hot food, which sucking up the fleagme and moysture of the body, leaves not sufficient whereby it may be digested; however it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The signes are onely abstinence from the office of nature ( I meane dunging ) which is most usuall in all beasts. The cure whereof according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers, is to take the water wherein Mallowes have beene long boyled to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto halfe a pint of oyle, or instead thereof, halfe a pint of butter very sweet, and one ounce of Benedicte Laxatu, and powre that into his Fundament Glisterwise: then with a string fasten his tayle hard to his Tuell, and then trot the horse up and downe a prety while, that the medicine may worke so much the better; then let his taile loose, and suffer him to voide all that is in his belly, then bring him into the Stable, and having stood a while, give him a little wel-clarified Honey to drinke, then cover him and keepe him warme, and let his drinke for three or foure dayes be nothing but sweete warme Mashes of Malt, and Water. Other Farriers use to take eleven leaves of Lorell, and stamping them in a Mortar, give it the horse to drinke with one quart of good strong Ale.

Others use to take an ounce of Brimstone finely beaten to powder, and mixing it with Spurge, to

give it the horse in a Mash to drinke. Now for mine own part, I could wish you, if the disease bee not very extreemly violent, only but to rake the Horses Fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloathes till hee sweat, and then give him a handfull or two of cleane Rye, and a little brimstone mixt with it: for brimstone being given with provender at any time, will scoure: but if the disease be raging and violent, take a quarter of a pound of white Sope, a handfull of Spurge, and a handfull of Hemp-seede, bray them very well together, and give it the horse to drinke with a quart of Ale luke-warme, then let him fast and exercise him more then halfe an houre after; and be sure to keepe him very warme, and let his drinke be onely warme Mashes. A world of other scouring receits there be: but you shall finde them more at large in the Chapter of purgations, Glisters, and Suppositaries.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

*Of the Laxe, or too much scouring of Horses.*

**T**He Laxe, or open fluxe of a horses body, is a dangerous disease, and quickly bringeth a horse to great weaknesse and faintnesse, it proceedeth sometimes from the abundance of Cholericke humours, descending from the Liver or Gall downe into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold Water immediately after his Provender, sometimes by suddaine travelling upon a full stomack before his meate be digested, sometimes by hasty running or gallopping presently after water: and sometimes

times by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens dung: there is no Disease that taketh more sore upon a horse in a short time than this, and yet sith nature her selfe in this disease seemeth to bee a physitian to the horses body, I would not wish any Farrier to goe about too suddenly to stop it; but if you finde that by the continuance, Nature both loseth her owne strength, and the horse the good estate of his body, then you shall seeke remedy, and the cure thereof according to the opinion of ancient Farriers is this: Take of Beane flower and Bole armony; of each a quarterne, mixe them together in a quart of red wine, and give it the horse luke warme to drink, and let him be kept very warme and have much rest: also let the water that he drinketh be luke warme, and mixt with Beane flower; yet by no meanes lethem drinke above once in four and twenty houres, and then not to his full satisfaction. Others take a pinte of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, halfe an ounce of Cynamon, and as much of the rinde of a Pomegranat, and mixing them together give it the horse luke warme to drinke, and let him not drinke any other Drinke, except it be once in foure and twenty houres, halfe a horses draught of warme water mixt with Beane flowre. Others take a halfe penny worth of Allom beaten into fine powder, and Bole armony beaten smal, and a quart of good milk, mingle them together till the milke be all on a curd, and then give it the horse to drinke, observing the Dyet before rehearsed: But if this disease shall happen to a sucking Foale, as commonly it will, and I my selfe have seene many that for want of Experi-

ence have perished thereby, you shall then onely give it a pint of strong Uerges to drinke, and it is a present remedy. For the Foale onely feeding upon Milke, and that Milke avoiding in as liquid forme as it was received, the verges will curdle it, and so make it avoide in a grosser and more tougher substance.


### CHAP. LXIX.

#### *Of the bloody Flixie in Horses:*

**I**T is not to be doubted but that a horse may have the bloody Flixie, for in my experience I have seen it, besides the confirmation of all my masters, the old Farriers. Now of the bloody flixie they make divers kinds, for sometims the fat of the slimy filth which is voyded, is sprinkled with a little blood: sometimes the excrements is watriſh blood, like the Water wherein bloody flesh hath beene washed: sometimes blood mixed with Melancholy, and sometimes pure blood, but all these proceeding from one head, which is the exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by one cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Guts, or in the outward great Gut, you shall observe if the matter and blood bee perfectly mixt together, then it is in the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thicke outward Guts. Now this bloody Flixie commeth most commonly of some sharpe humours, ingendring either by naughty raw food,



food, or unreasonable travell, which humours being violently driven, and having passed through many crooked and narrow waies, doe cleave to the Gnts. and with their heate and sharpenesse fret them and cause exulcerations and grievous paine. Sometimes this bloody flixie may come from extreame cold, extreame heate or extreame moystnesse, or through the violence of some extreame scouring formerly given wherein some poysonous simple, as Siomony, Stibium, or such like may bee applyed in too great a quantity, or it may come from the weaknesse of the Liver, or the other members which serve for digestion. The signe of this disease, is onely the avoyding blood with his excrements, or blood instead of Excrements : And the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take Saffron one ounce, of Myrrhe two ounces, of Southerne-wood three ounces, of parsley one ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittlewort and Hyssop, of each two ounces, of Cassia, which is like Cynamon, one ounce, let all these be beaten into fine powder, and mingled with Chalke, and strong Vineger wrought into a paste, of which past make little cakes, and dry them in the shadow, and being dryed dissolve some of them in a pint and a halfe of Barley milke, or for want thereof in that juyce which is called Grimor Ptisane, and give it the horse to drinke : for it not onely cureth the bloody flixie, but being given with a quart of warme water, it healeth all grieffe and paine either in the belly or bladder, which commeth for want of staling.

Now for mine owne part, I have ever used for  the

the bloody Flixie, but this medicine onely. Take of red Wine three pints, halfe a handfull of the Herbe called Bursa Pastoris, or Shepherds purse, and as much Tanners barke taken out of the Fat and dried boyle them in the Wine till somewhat more then a pinte be consumed, and then straining it very hard, give it the horse luke warme to drink, if you do add unto it a little Cynamon it is not a misse. There bee other Farriers which use to dissolve in a pint of red wine, four ounces of the conserve of Slowes, and give it the horse to drink: but either of the other medicines are fully sufficient.

CHAP. LXXX.

*Of the falling downe of a horses Fundament.*

**H**orses sometimes, by means the disease formerly spoken of, which is the bloody Flixie, and sometimes by a naturall weaknesse in the inward bowells, comming through the resolution of the Muscles, serving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their Fundaments fall downe in great length, both to the much paine to the horse, and great loathsomnesse to the beholders. Now the resolution or falling down, may come partly by over-much straying to dung when a horse is costive, and partly by over-great moysture, as it happens in young children: for than a horse no creature hath a moyster body. Now the signes are apparent, hanging downe of the Fundament, and the cure is this. First you shall looke whether the Fundament be inflamed, that is, whether it be much sweld or no, if it be  
not

not inflamed, then you shall annoynt it with oyle of Roses warmed on a Chafing dish and coals, or for want of such oyle, you shall wash it with warme red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you shall bathe it well with a soft sponge, dipt in the decoction of Mallows, Camomill, Linseed, and Fenugreeke, and also you shall annoynt it well with oyle of Camomill and Dill mingled together, to asswage the swelling: and then with a gentle hand, and warme Linnen cloathes, thrust it faire and softly up into his true place, that done, bathe all the tuell about with red Wine, wherein hath been sodden Acatium, Gals, Achorne cuppes, and the paring of Quinces: Then throw upon it either the powder of Bole armonicke or of Frankincense, or Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, or such like, and then give him to drink the dry pills of pomegranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warme water, and be sure to keepe the horse very wame, and in his body neither too soluble or loose, nor too costive or hard bound, but of a meane & soft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtfull.

CHAP. LXXXI.

*Of the Bots, Truncheons, and wormes in  
a Horses body.*

**M**Y Masters, the old ancient Farriers are of opinion, that the Guts of a horse doe breede three sorts of Wormes, that is to say, little short Wormes with great red heads, and long small white Tayles; which we call Bots: short and thicke Wormes all of a bignesse like a mans finger, which wee call

call Truncheons, and great long wormes as bigge as a mans finger, and at the least fixe inches in length, which wee call by the simple name of Wormes onely.

Now in mine own experience and all other mens, I find a fourth sort, which is of a middle size, and are red and fiery, with thick, short, sharpe heads, and are called poysonous red Wormes, and are of all other most poysonous and dangerous, for they will ascend up even to the throate of the horse, and will choake and kill him, and sometimes they will eat through his stomacke and so confound him.

Now for mine owne part, I am of opinion, that the first which are bots, are not bred in the guts but in the stomacke onely, because having cut up many Horses, I never could yet finde any one Bot in the Guts, yet great store of both the other wormes, nor ever cut up the stomacke of a Horse, but I found great abundance of Bots, and neither of the other Wormes: whence I am confidently opiniated, that Bots are ever bred in the stomacke, and both the other sorts of wormes in the guts: Truth it is, that all three do proceede from one false cause, which is a Rawe, Grosse, and Flegmaticke matter, apt to putrifaction, and ingendred by foule and naughty feeding, and as they proceede from one selfe cause, so have they all one signe, and all one cure. The signes then are, the horse will forsake his meate, and not stand upon his legges, but wallow and tumble, and beat his belly with his feete, and sometimes the paine will be so extreame, that he will beate his head against the ground; and truely the violence of the  
red-wormes

red-wormes are wonderfull, for I have seene horses whose stomacke have been eaten quite through with them, so that the meate which they eate, could not abide in their stomacke, but fell upon the swallowing into the body, making the body swell like a Tun, and so have dyed with huge torment. Now the cure according to the ancientest Farriers is, to take a quart of sweet milk, of honey a quarterne, and give it him luke-warme; then walke him up and downe for the space of an houre after, and so let him rest for that day, with as little meate and drinke as may be: and by no meanes suffer him to lye downe. Then the next day when the horse is fasting, take of Rue a handfull, of Savin as much, and being well stampd, put thereunto a little brimstone, and a little Soote of a Chimney beaten into fine powder, put all these things together in a quart of Wort, or new Ale, and there let them lye in steep the space of an houre or two; then strain it hard through a faire cloath, and give it the horse to drinke luke-warme, then bridle him, and walke him abroad the space of an houre, then set him up, and let him stand on the bit, two or three houres after, and then give him a little hay.

Other ancient Farriers use onely to give the horse for this disease, the warme Guts of a new slaine Hen or Chicken, being thrust downe the horses throate, and sure it is passing good, especially if a little Salt be mixed with them: And this must be done three mornings together fasting, keeping the horse from drinking three or foure houres after. Others use to take three ounces of the roots of caphers, beatē with halfe so much Uineger, and put it downe the horses throat:

throat : or else a pint of Milke , and a spoonefull of Sope given the horse to drinke : or Brimstone and milke given to drinke, all very soveraigne. Others use to bind about the snaffle or bit; mans dung new made, and so ride him therewith.

Others take of Gentian, Aloes and Savin, of each halfe an ounce, and brew them together with Hony and strong Ale. Others use to take onely a quart of cold sweet wort. Others take Savin and Southerwort or else Wormewood, and the tops of Broome small chopt, and mixe it with the horses provender. Others use to give the horse to drinke luke warme, Elderberries sodden in milke. Others use to give the horse with his provender, his owne haire chopt small, and mixt with Bay salt. Others put hot embers in Water and presently straine it, and give it the horse to drinke. Others make little round bals of Hony, and the fine powder of Chalke, and putting them into Ale make the horse swallow them. Others use to take especially for the long wormes, a halfe a peny worth of Fenugreeke, of Aniseeds, a quarter of a pound, a halfe peny worth of Bay berries, as much Lycoras and as much Turmericke, and a little quantity of Brimstone, beate them into powder, put then into a quart of Ale, and give it the horse fasting luke-warme to drinke : then ride him an houre after, then set him up warme foure and twenty houres after. Others use, especially for the Truncheon, to take two spoonefull of the powder of Worme-wood, finely searst, and put it in a pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while let it stand & soake all night, & then give it the horse in the morning fasting, then  
keepe

keepe him without meat or drinke foure houres after Others use to give the horse to drinke, two spoonfull of Worme-seede, and as much brimstone, as powder of Savin, with a quart of Malmsey, Ale or Beere. Others use to take as much blacke Sope as a Walnut, and as much brimstone beaten to powder, and a head or two of Garlick pill'd and bruised, and put into a quart of good Ale, and give it the horse luke warme to drinke.

This medicine may also be administred to a mare great with Foale, if she be troubled with the bots or other Wormes, so that the blacke Sope be left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foale in the Mares belly, yet for mine owne part I never give any inward Physicall Medicines to a Mare great with Foale, but if I find her troubled with wormes, as is easie to be done by the stinking of her breath, by the sliminesse of her mouth, and by the greatnesse of the worme veins under her lips: then presently I do nothing but let her blood in the rooffe or palat of her mouth, and make her eat her owne bloud; for that I know will both kill Wormes, and helpe most inward maladies. But leaving Mares with Foale, let us returne againe unto horses. There be other Farriers which use to take a handfull of new Hens-dung, and a quart of stale Ale, and braying them well together; then take a handfull of Bay salt, and put two egges to it, and having mixt them all well together, give it the horse to drink. Others use to take half a peny worth of Saffron, and as much Allum, and mixe them with a pint of Milke, and give it the horse to drink: or else give him Greene Willow, and Greene Reede to eate.

Others

Others use (and thinke it the best of all other Medicines) to take the guts of a young Hen or Pigeon, and roule it in a little blacke Sope, then in Bay salt, and so force it downe the horses throat. Others use (especially for the Truncheons) to let the horse drink Hennes dung, Mint, Sage, and Rhue, with Beere or Ale, & to let him bloud in the nostrils. To conclude, except you see the horse very much pained, you shal need to give him nothing but Rozen and Brimstone mixt together, and blended with his provender, having care that you ever give it fasting, and long before the horse do drinke.

¶ Lastly, and as the chief of all medicines for all manner of Wormes, take as much precipitate as will lye on a silver two pence, and worke it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another peece of Butter as bigge as an Hennes-egge, and so give it the Horse fasting in the manner of a pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no water that night, and let him fast two houres, then feede as at other times.

#### CHAP. LXXXII.

##### *Of the paine in a Horses Kidneys.*

**T**HERE is no question but the same infirmities which doe belong unto the Liver or Spleen of a horse doe also belong unto the Kidneyes, as inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes, and Vlcers; and truly in opening of horses, I have found the Kidney sometimes wasted, which I imputed to some matter of Inflammation: I have likewise found  
much



much Gravell, which was onely through Obstructions, and I have seene the Kidneyes as blacke as inke, which could not come without an ulcerous Apostumation. But forasmuch as a horse is a beast, who cannot tell the manner of his paine, nor wee so heedfull as we might have beene, to observe the Symptome of every grieffe; we are inforc'd to conclude all vnder one name, which is the paine in the Kidneyes, gotten either by some great straine in leading or by some great burthen bearing.

The signs are, the horse will go rolling and staggering behind, his Vrine will be blackish and thicke, and his stones (if he have any) will be shrunke up into his body; if he have not, you shall perceive the sheath of his yard to be drawn backward, and the great veine which runneth up the side of his thigh, called the Kidney-veine, will slacke and beate continually. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first to bathe his backe and loines with oyle, wine, and Nitrum, warmed together, and after he is bathed, cover him with warme cloathes, and let him stand in Litter up to the belly, then give him to drinke water wherein hath been sodden Dill, Fennell, Aniseedes, Smallage, Parsley, Spikenard, Myrrh, and Cassia, or as many as you can conveniently get of these simples. The next morning fasting give him to drinke a quart of Ewes milke, or for want thereof, halfe so much Sallet oyle, and Deeres suet molten together: or if you can get it, the roote of Daffodill boyled in Wine, and let his provender be dried oates; and in his dyet keepe him about tenne dayes; and he will recover.

## CHAP. LXXXIII.

*Of the disease belonging to the Bladder or Urine,  
and first of the Strangury.*

ACCORDING to the determinate opinion of all the best and ancientest Horse Leaches, the Bladder of a Horse is subject to three dangerous diseases, as first the strangury, or Strangullion: the second, the Paine-pisse: and the third the stone, or pissupprest. Now for the first, which is the Strangury, or Strangullion, it is, when the Horse is provoked to stale often, and avoydeth nothing but a few droppes, it commeth without doubt, either by the heate and sharpnesse of Urine, caused either by great travell or by sharp and hot meates and drinkes, or else by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by meanes of some Aposthume in the Liver and Kidneyes, which aposthume being broken, the matter resorteth down into the Bladder, and with the sharpenesse thereof causeth a continuall provocation of pissing. The signes are (as I said before) a continual desire to pisse, yet avoyding nothing but a few droppes, and those with such paine, that he will wiske, wry, and beate his tayle as he pisseth.

The cure whereof, is to bathe the horses hinder Loynes with warme water, and then take bread and Bay-berries, and temper them together with May Butter, and give him two or three balls thereof down his throat three daies together.

Others use (and I have ever found it the best) to take a quart of new milke, and a quartan of Sugar, and  
brewing

brewing them well together, give it the Horse to drinke six mornings together; observing to keep the horse from all sharp meates, as mow burnt hay, bran, and such like.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

*Of the paine-pisse, or pissing with paine.*

**T**His disease of paine-pisse, is when a horse cannot pisse but with great paine and labour, and doth proceede sometimes from the weakenesse of the bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof; and sometimes through the abundance of fleagme and grosse humours stopping the necke of the Bladder. The signes whereof are, the horse will stretch himselfe out as though hee would stale, and thrust out his yard a little, and with the paine clap his tayle betwixt his thighes to his belly, and having stood so a good while, in the end he will stale a good quantity.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to take the juyce of Leekes, sweete wine, and oyle, and mingle them together, to powre it into his right nostrill, and walke him a little up and downe upon it: or else to give him to drinke Smallage seede, or else the rootes of wilde Fennell sodden with Wine. Others use to put fine sharpe Onions cleane pill'd and a little bruised, into his fundament and then to chafe him immediatly upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a mans hand, or else to take the scraping of the inward parts of the horses owne hoofes, beaten into pow-

N

der,

der, and mingled with Wine, and powre it into his right nostrill, and then ride him upon it. Others use to lead the horse to sheepe coats, or sheepe-penns, where great store of sheepe are wonted: and making the horse to smell of the dung and pisse of the sheep, it will provoke him to stale presently. Others use to give the horse white dogs dung dryed and mingled with Ammoniacum, Salt, & Wine to drinke: or else hogs dung only with wine, or the dregs of horse pisse and Wine.

CHAP. LXXXV.

*Of the stone, or Pisse-supprest in a horse.*

**T**He Stone, or Pisse-supprest in a Horse, is when a horse would faine stale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well bee called the suppression of the Urine: It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Masters, the old Farriers, sometimes from the weakenesse of the Bladder, when the water conduite is stopped with grosse humours, or with matter descending from the Liver, or from some inflammation or hard knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit, or for that the sinewes of the bladder are numbed, so as the bladder is without feeling: or it may come by keeping a horse in long travell, and not suffering him to stale, but most commonly and ofttest commeth from obstructions in the kidneyes, where, by the causes aforesaid, a certaine red gravell being bred, and falling downe into the Conduits, by mixture of Fleagme and other grosse humours, is there brought to be a hard stone, and stoppeth the passage  
of

of the urine: For the signs there needeth no more but this, that would faine pisse, but cannot.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, is first to draw out his yard, and bathe it well with white wine, and pick it; and scour it well, lest it be stopped with dirt and filthinesse; then put a little oyle of Camomill into his yard with a waxe candle, and a bruised clove of Garlicke: but if that will not force him to stale, then take of parsley two handfulls, of Coriander one handful, stamp them and straine them with a quart of white Wine, and dissolve therein one ounce of Cake sope, and give it luke-warme unto the Horse to drinke; and see that you keep him as warme as may be, and let him drink no cold water for the space of five or sixe dayes, and when you would have him to stale, let it either be of good plenty of straw, or upon the grasse, or in a sheep coat. Others (and those of the best esteem for horse-leach-craft at this day) use only to give white Wine cake-sope, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horse drinke it warme.

Others use to annoynt the Horses belly first with warme water; then when it is dryed, to annoint it againe with Sallet oyle, Hogs grease and tarre mixt together and made warme, and so hold a hot Iron against his belly whilst it is annointing, that the oyntment may the better enter the skin: But I hold this medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other paine in the belly, then for the Stone; yet it is approved good for all. Others use to take a pint of white wine or Ale, and mixe it with a little Garlicke, and the whites of ten egges, and give

it the horse to drinke: or else give him the juyce of red Cole-worts mixt with white Wine, or the roote of Alexanders bruised, and sodden in Wine to drinke, and wash his yard with Vineger. Others use to take either Worm wood, Southern wood, or Galingale, or Mallowes, or Pimpernell: some of these, or any one of those, stampt and strained, and give it the horse with Ale to drinke. Others use to take a pint of white Wine, halfe a pint of Burr-seede beaten very small, two ounces of Parsley-seede, halfe a handfull of Hysope, halfe an ounce of blacke Sope, mixe them all well together, and warme it, and give it the horse to drinke, or else take un-set Leekes, and stamp them small, and Sope, Milke, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the horse to drinke. Others use to take a Nutmeg, and a handfull of Parsley-seede, beate them to powder, then take as much butter, and mixe them al together in a quart of strong Ale, and give it the horse luke warme to drinke: or else take the seede of Smal-lage, Parsley, Saxefrace, the rootes of Philupendula, cherry-stone Kirnells, grummell seedes, and Broome-seeds, of each a like quantity; beate them into fine powder, and give it the horse with a pint or a quart of white Wine,

Now albeit these medicines before rehearsed, are daily in practise, and approved very soveraigne, yet for mine owne part, I have found none more soveraigne then this: Take a quart of strong Ale, and put it into a pottle pot: then take as many Keene Radish roots, cleane washt, being slit through and bruised, as will fill up the pot: then stopping the pot very close that

that no ayre may come in, let it so stand four and twenty houres, then straine the Ale and the roots very hard into a cleane vessell, and give it the horse fasting in the morning to drink: then ride him a little up and down, and so set him up warme, and watch him, and you shall see him stale. This you must doe divers mornings together.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

*Of a Horse that pisseth blood.*

**T**here is nothing more certaine then that a horse many times will pisse blood instead of urine, the cause (as the most ancient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these grounds: either overmuch labour, or too heavy a burthen, especially when the Horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to breake some veine in his body, and then you shall see cleare blood come out, and no Urine at all, but if the blood be mixt with Vrine, then they suppose it commeth from the kidneyes, having some ragged stone therein, which through great travaile doth fret the veines of the Kidneyes, and make them bleed, through which as the Vrine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine owne part; I have not found any greater cause for the pissing of blood then the taking up of a horse from grasse in the strength of Winter (as about Christmas) and presently, without a daies rest in the stable, to thrust him into a long and weary journey: from this cause I have seene many horses after two or three dayes journey to pisse blood in most grie-

vous manner. The signes are needlesse. The cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farrier, is this : First, let the horse bloud in the pallat of the mouth, to convert the bloud the contrary way; then take of Tragarant which hath been steeped in white Wine, halfe an ounce of poppy seed one dramme and one scruple, and of Storax as much, and twelve pine apple Kirnels; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the horse thereof every morning the space of seaven dayes, the quantity of a Wall-nut, infused in a quart of sweete wine. Other latter Farriers use to let the horse stand in the necke, and boyle that bloud with Wheate, and with the powder of dried pomegranate pills; then strain it, and give it him three or foure mornings together to drinke, and let him by no meanes tra-vaile thereupon : or else give him of husked beanes boyled with the huskes of Acornes beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a drinke with the rootes of Daffodill mingled with Wheate flower, and Sumach sodden long in water, and so to be given to the horse with sweete Wine : or else to make him drinke of Goats milke and Sallet Oyle, straining thereunto a little Frumenty : or else to give him sodden beanes and Deeres suit in Wine, each of these are of like force and goodnesse. Now there be others which use for this disease to take Barley, and seeth in the juyce of Gum-folly; and give him the Barley to eat, and the juyce to drinke : or else take the powder of Lycoras and Aniseedes rouled up in Honey, and make round bals thereof, and cast downe the horses throate two or three of them :  
Lastly,



Lastly, and the best, take Lycoras, Aniseeds, and Garlicke bruised together with Sallet oyle and honey, and give it in a quart of new milke to the horse to drinke, it is very soveraign also; and these two medicines last rehearsed, are exceeding good also for any cold or Glanders.

## CHAP. LXXXVII.

*Of the Colt evill.*

**T**He Colt evill by the most ancient Farriers, especially the Italians, whose hot Countrey affoordeth the beasts of more hot and strong natures then ours doth, is thought to be a continuall standing erection, together with an unnaturall swelling of the yard, proceeding either from some winde filling the arteries & hollow sinews, or pipes of the yard, or else through the abundance of seede, provoked by the naturall heate of the Horse; but our Farriers, who have not seene that experience, because our Horses are of a colder temper, say it is onely a swelling of the sheath of the yard, and of that part of the belly about the yard, together with the Cod also, proceedeth from corrupt seede, which commeth out of the yard, and remaineth within the sheath, there putrifieth: And this judgment we finde by experience to be most true. Now you shall understand, that Geldings as well as Horses are subject thereunto, because they want naturall heate to expell seede any further.

The signes are onely the outward swelling of the sheath and Cod, and none other: and the best

cure is first to wash the sheath cleane with luke-warm Vineger, then draw out the yard and wash it also : which done, ride the horse twice every day, that is, morning and evening into some deep running water up to the belly, tossing him to and fro, to allay the heate of members till the swelling be vanished, and if you swim him now and then, it will not do amisse. Others use to bathe his Cods and yard with the juyce of House-licke, or with the water wherein Kinholm hath ben sod. Now this Colt evil wil sometimes stop the Horses urine that he cannot pisse : then you shall take new Ale, and a little blacke Sope, and give it the Horse to drinke. Others use to wash the horses cods and sheath with butter and vineger made warm. Others use to wash his Yard and Cods with the juyce of Hemlocke, or else take bean flower, vineger, and Bole-armonicke, and mixing them together, lay it plaister-wise to his sheath and Cods. Others make him a plaister of wine Lees, House-lick and bran mixt together, and laid to his sheath and cods : but if the first receipt will serve, I would not wish you to use any other medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

*Of the mattering of the Yard.*

**T**His disease of the mattering of the yard, is seldome seene but amongst the hot races or breeds of horses, as the Jenet, the Barbary, and such like; and it happneth ever at covering time, when the horse and mare both being too hot, doe burne themselves, by which meanes there issueth forth of the  
horses

horses yard much filthy matter. The signs are the falling downe of the matter, and a swelling at the end of the yard, and the horse can by no meanes draw up his yard, or cover it within his sheath. The cure is to take a pint of white wine; and boyle therein a quarter of roch-allom, and with a large Serring of squirt, squirt in three or four squirtfull into his yard one after another, and be sure that your squirt goe home unto the bottom, that the liquor or lotion may scour the bloody matter away: this do five or sixe times every day till the horse be whole.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

*Of the shedding of the seede.*

**T**He shedding of the Seede, or the falling away of the Sperme in horses, is none other then that which we call in men the running of the Reynes: it commeth, as our old Farriers say, either by abundance and ranknesse of seed, or by the weaknesse of the stones, and seede vessels, not able to retaine the seede untill it be digested and thickned; but truly for mine owne part, I thinke it commeth oftner (especially amongst our English horses) by some great strain in leaping, or by teaching a horse to bund, and making him bound the compasse of his naturall strength. The signes are onely the shedding of his seede, which will be white, thinne, and watrish. The cure, according to the ancient experiments, is first to ride the horse into some cold water up to the belly, insomuch that his stones may be covered with water: which done, bathe his fundament with water  
and

and oyle, then cover him exceeding warme, and give him every day to drinke, red wine and hogges dung till the fluxe of his seede stay; but latter experience hath found this receipt better. Take of red wine a quart, and put therein a little Acatium, the juyce of Plantan, and a little Masticke, and give it him to drinke; and then bathe all his backe with red wine, and oyle of Roses mixt together, but other Farriers take Uenice Turpentine, and being washt, beat it wel with halfe so much Sugar, and then make round bals as big as Walnuts, and give the horse five every morning, till the fluxe stay.

CHAP. XC.

*Of the falling down of the yard*

**T**He falling downe of the yard, is when a Horse hath no strength to draw up his yard within the sheath, but lets it hang downe betweene his legges ill-favoredly: it commeth (as our best Farriers suppose) either through the weaknesse of the member, by meanes of some resolution in the muscles and sinewes, serving the same, caused by some great strain or stripe on the backe: or else through extreame wearinesse and tiring. The signe is onely the apparent hanging downe of the member: and the cure is, (according to some opinions) to wash the horses yard in salt water from the Sea, or for want thereof, with water and salt; but if that wil not prevaile, then prick al the outmost skin of his yard with a sharp needle, but yet as slightly as may be, and not deepe; and then wash al the prickes with strong vineger, and this wil not

not only make him draw up his yard againe, but also if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it up againe. There be other Farriers which for this disease will put into the pipe of the horses yard, hony and salt boyled together, and made liquid, or else a quick flye, or a grain of Frankincense or a clove of Garlicke clean pill'd and bruised, and bathe his back with oyle, wine, & Nitre made warm and mingled together.

But the best cure, according to our English practise, is, first, to wash all the yard with white Wine warmed, and then anoint it with oyle of Roses and hony mixt together, and so put it up into the sheath, and with a little bolster of Canvase keepe it from falling downe, and dresse him thus once in four and twenty houres, untill he be recovered, and in any case let his backe be kept as warme as is possible, both with cloth and a charge of plaster made of Bole armonicke, Eggs, Wheate flower, Sanguis draconis, Turpentine, and Vineger, or else lay next his backe a wet sacke, or wet hay, and a dry cloth over it, and that will keepe his backe exceeding warme.

#### CHAP. XCI.

*Of the diseases incident to Mares, and first of the barrenesse of the wombe.*

**T**HE onely Disease incident to the wombe of a Mare (as farre forth as our Farriers are experienced) is barrenesse, which may proceede from divers causes, as through the untemperatenesse of the Matrixe, being either too hot and fiery, or too cold  
and

and moist, or too dry; or else too short, or too narrow, or having the necke thereof turned awry, or by means of some obstruction, or stopping in the matrice, or in that the mare is too fat, or too leane, & divers other such like causes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, to take a good handfull of Leeks, and stamp them in a mortar with foure or five spoonfulls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flyes, called Cantharides, then straine them all together with a sufficient quantity of water to serve the Mare therewith two dayes together, by powring the same into her nature with a Glister pipe made for the purpose, and at the end of three dayes next following, offer the horse unto her that should cover her, and after she is covered, wash her nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which use to take of Nitrum, of Sparrowes dung & of Turpentine, of each like quantity well wrought together, and made like a Suppositary, and put that into her nature, and it will cause her both to desire the horse, and also to conceive. There bee some of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the horses mouth that should cover her. Of all which let onely experience be your warrantise.

#### CHAP. XCII.

##### *Of the pestilent Consumption in Mares.*

**T**Here is a certaine pestilent Consumption incident to Mares when they are with foale, proceeding from cold fleagme, gathered by raw foggy food  
in.

in the Winter season, which descending from the Kidneyes, doth oppresse the matrixe, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that if shee be not holpen, she will want strength to foale her foale. The signs are, suddaine leanness, and a drooping of spirit, with much dislike of meate, and a continuall desire to be layd. The cure is, to powre into her nostrills three pints of fish brine, called Garume, three or foure mornings together, and if the griefe be very great, then take five pints, and it will make her vent all fleagme at her nostrills.

## CHAP. XCIII.

*Of the rage of Love in Mares.*

IT is reported by some of our English Farriers, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the yeare, when their bloud begins to wax warme, if they chance, when they goe to the water, to see their owne shadowes therein, that presently they will fall into an extreame love therewith, and from that love into such a hot rage, that they wil forget either to eat or drinke, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The cure of this folly is presently to leade the Mare to the Water againe, and there to let her see her selfe as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and to take away her folly.

## CHAP. XCIII.

*Of Mares which cast their Foales.*

**T**He occasion why mares cast their Foales, that is, to Foale them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as strains, strokes, intemperate riding, rushings, hard wintrings, or too great fatness, and such like. Now you shall understand that this aborsment, or untimely casting of a Foale, is most dangerous to the life of the Mare: For nature being, as it were, detained from her true & perfect custom, which is the preservation of health, cannot choose but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the body and pores being set open to the ayre, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot choose but be suffocated with unwholsom Uapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foale, and withall falleth sicke upon the same, you shall presently take her into the house, and set her up very warme, then give her two spoonful of the powder of Diapente well brewd in a pint of Muskadine, and feed her with sweet hay, and warm Mashes for at least a weeke after.

## CHAP. XCV.

*Of Mares that are hard of Foaling*

**I**F it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduits, which leade from the matrix be so straitned that the Mare cannot foale and so be in danger of her life: then it shall be good that



that you helpe her by holding and stopping her nostrills with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not have passage; and she will foale with a great deale the more ease, & much sooner, and sure the pain is nothing, because a Mare always foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath foaled, she cannot voyde her secundine, which is the skinne wherein the foale is wrapped, in that natural manner as she ought, you shall then take a good handfull or two of Fennel, and boyle it in water: then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pint of old Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of oyle, and mingle them altogether over the fire, and being but luke-warme, powre it into the Mares nostrils, and hold her Nostrils close with your hand, to keepe it in a prety while after, and no question but she will voide her secundine presently.

#### CHAP. XCVI.

*Of making a Mare to cast her Foale.*

**I**F at any time you would have your Mare to cast her Foale, as having present occasion to use her, or in that the Foale is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a bottle of new milke, and two handfulls of Savin chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boyle them till one halfe bee consumed; then straine it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warme to drinke, then presently gallop her a good pace, then set her up, doe thus two mornings, and before the third she will have cast her Foale. Others use with their hand to kil the Foale in the mares belly.

but it is dangerous, & the former medicine is more sufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us returne againe to Horses and Mares in generall.

CHAP. XCVII,

*Of the drinking of Horse-leaches by horses.*

**I**F a Horse at any time drinke downe horse-leaches they will suck his bloud and kill him. The signes are, the Horse will hang downe his head to the ground, and abundance of filthy flaver will fall from his mouth, and sometimes some bloud also. The cure is, presently to give him a pint of sallet oyle to drinke, and that will make them fall away and kil them. But the best is to give him halfe an ounce of Diapente brewed in a pint of good strong Beere or Ale.

CHAP. XCVIII.

*Of swallowing downe Hens dung, or any venemous thing whatsoever.*

**I**F a horse chance to swallow downe any hens dung with his hay, it will fret his guts, and make him to avoyde most filthy matter at his Fundament. The cure whereof is to take a pint of Wine, halfe a pint of honey, and two spoonfulls of Smallage seed bruised, and mixing them well together, to give it the horse to drinke, and then to walke him well upon the same that he may empty his Belly. But if the horse chance to lick up any other venemous thing, as Neut, or such like,

like, which you shall know by the instant swelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members; then the cure is first to put him into a sweate, either by cloaths or exercise; then to let him bloud in the palate of the mouth, and looke how much he bleedeth, so much let him swallow downe hot: or else give him strong Wine and salt mixt together: or else take the roote, and leaves, and fruite of Briony, which being burnt to ashes, give the horse a good spoonfull therof with a pint of sweet wine to drinke.

Now for mine own part, I have ever seud to take a pint of Sallet oyle, and too spoonfull of Sugar candy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder Diapente, and brewing them together, give it the Horse to drinke: or for want of Diapente, so much of the shaving either of Ivory, or of an old Stags horne, especially the tips thereof burnt.

#### CHAP. XCIX.

*Of purging Medicines in generall, and first  
of the Suppositary.*

**P**urging is said of our most ancientest Farriers, to be an emptying and discharging of all and every superfluous humors which distemper the body with their evill qualities: For such humors breed evill nutriment, which when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good Diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heate, then must it by force either be taken away by Purgation, Glister, or Suppositary. Now for as much as a horse is troubled with many diseases in the Guts, and that nothing can  
O  
purge

purge the gut with that gentlenesse which a Suppositary doth; I will here first begin to speake of Suppositaries.

Understand then that a horse being surfeited, and full of evill humours needing to be purged, it is best first to give him a Suppositary; lest if you should come to apply a Glister, the great Gut being stopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the medicine not able to worke beyond it, lose both labour and vertues; so that I make account the Suppositary is but onely a preparative to the Glister, and but onely to cleanse and make loose the great gut, which cometh to the tuell. The gentle Suppositary then, and that which purgeth fleagme in the best maner, is to take a square piece of cake sope, or white new castle sope, about five or sixe inches long, and shaving it round till it be not above three inches about in the midst, and a little smaller at each end then in the midst; then annoint it over with Sallet oyle, and so with your hand thrust it up more then a full spanne into his Fundament; then suddainly clap his taile to histuell, and hold it hard and close more then halfe an houre, in which space the most part of the Suppositary will be wasted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the Suppositary at his pleasure. The next Sppositary to this, and which purgeth choler abundantly, is to take Savin, stamp small, staves-aker and salt, and boyle them in honey till it be thicke, then take and knead it, and role it of a prety thicke long role, as before you were taught for the hard sope, and minister it at his tuell. The next to this, and that which purgeth melancholy, is to

to take a keene Onion, and pilling off the skinne, jag it a little crosse wise with your knife, and so thrust it up into the horses Fundament. There is besides these Suppositaries, on other Suppositary, which is to take a quart of honey, and boyle it one the fire til it come to be thicke like a Salve, then powre it forth upon a table, and kneade it like a piece of dough: then when it begins to harden, or grow stiffe, (as it will doe when it begins to coole) then role it up under your hand, and make it in the forme of a Suppositary, as is before shewed, and administer it in the same manner. This Suppositary is good to purge the gut of any foule humor, and therewithall is comfortable to the body.

Now you must also understand, that as these Suppositaries are preparative before Glisters, so they are likewise to be used simply of themselves, where the sicknesse of the horse carrieth no great danger: For upon every slight occasion, or small drinesse which is to be dissolved with the most gentle Medicine, to administer a Glisten, were to bring the horses Body to such an intemperate loosenesse, as would prove much worse then the former contrary drines. Therefore I wish every carefull Farrier (because the body of a horse would not be tempered withall too much by physicke) first, in the case of costivenesse, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppositary: as namely, the first prescribed and naked like a mans fist, or else like a role or quantity of Roch-Allome, or else foure inches of a great tallow Candle or Percher of foure in the pound? which if it worke effectually, and keepe the horses

body soluble, then to proceede no further ; but in case it do not, but that the offensive matter still breedeth and encrease, then to administer a Glister ; and where that faileth to take away the offence, to administer a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this generall rule, and never to faile in the performance, which is, never to be administer either Suppositary or Clister, but first immediately before you give it, to rake your horse, which Raking is in this manner. First, you shall annoint all your hand and arme over either with Sallet Oyle, sweete butter, or fresh grease ; and then thrust it into the horses Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, fleagm, and filthy matter that you can feele, even as high up as the great bagge : Which done, then either administer your Suppositary or Glister, which you please, at your leisure ; and in any case, whilst the horse is thus in Physicke, keepe him exceeding warme.

CHAP. G.

*Of Glisters and their Uses.*

**T**He natures and properties of Glisters are divers and therefore it is necessary that every carefull Farriers learne to know to what end they serve, and which hath druggs or simples they ought to be compounded : For every Glister is to be made according to the disease. Now of Glisters, some are to ease griefes, and to allay the sharpenesse of the humours, some to binde, some to loosen, and some to purge ; and some to heale ulcers, These Glisters by cleansing the  
the

the Guts, refresh the vitall parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and strong Purgation. Therefore whensoever a horse through grossnesse of humours, corruption of bloud, or abundance of fleagm, choler, or melancholy, is brought unto that evill habit of body, that of necessity he must be purged, and that especially his paine is in his Guts and body, you shall then, as before I said (having made a probation of a Suppositary) first of all to administer a Glister; lest by purging suddenly with any Purgation or potion, you stirre up a multitude of evill humours, which finding no passage downward (because the guts being stopped with wind & dregs) do strike upward, and so perhaps put the horse into much greater danger:

Now for the composition of Glisters, you shall understand that they be made of foure things; that is, of Decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyle, or such like unctuous matter, as butter, or soft grease, and fourthly of divers salts, to provoke the vertue expulsive. A decoction is the broath of certaine hearbes and simples boyed together in water, untill the third part be consumed. Now sometimes for want of such decoctions, you may if you please, use some fat Beefe broth, or the broth of a sheepes head, or such like, or Milk or whay, or some such like liquor, mingled sometimes either with Honey or with Sugar, according to the quality of the disease: the Glister being either Lenitive, that is to say, easing of paine: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together: or else Absterfive, which is, wiping away, or cleansing of filthy matter. Now of this decoction or broath bee-

ing very cleane strained, you shall never take above three pints at the most, and may times but a quart; into which you shall put such drugges as are needefull, exceeding not at the most, above three or foure ounces, according as the simples be more or lesse violent: of the oyle you shall never use in a Glister above halfe a pint, and of Salt not above three or ioure drams. You shall also continually administer your Glister luke-warme, either with some long horn, or a large Glister pipe made for the purpose, and fixed to the largest bladder you can get; and this Glister pipe is of all the best, and doth least lose labour. When you doe administer a Glister, you shall set the horses hinder parts somewhat higher then the foreparts, and then you shall put the Glister pipe in at his tuell into his Fundament up to the heade, and having the confection within the bladder, wring it with a very good strength into his body. A Glister would be administered to a horse when hee is rather empty then full paunched, whether it be in the fore noone or afternoone. Now for the retaining or holding of the Glister in the horses body, three quarters of an houre is sufficient, of what quality soever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as soone as the Glister is administered unto the horses body, you must draw out the pipe with all the gentlenesse that may bee, and suddainly clappe his taylor to his tuell, and so hold it with your hand, without any moving or stirring of the horse, till the medicine hath his full time of working.

Now to come unto particular glisters, that you may know which Glister is for which purpose, the first is,  
take



take of the pulpe of Coloquintida, halfe an ounce, of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary and of Worme-wood, of each halfe a handfull, of Castoreum a quarter of an ounce, boyle them in three pints of water, then being strained you shall dissolve therein of Gerologundinum three ounces, of salt three quarters of an ounce, and of oyle Olive halfe a pint, and so luke-warm administer it Glister wise, as hath bin before expressed : this Clister is exceeding soveraigne for the pestilence in horses; or for any Fever of what nature soever.

The next is to take the decoction of Mallowes, and to mixe therewithall, either fresh butter, or Sallet Oyle, and so luke warme administer it : this is of all Glisters the most gentlest, and as the former Glister is obsterfive or clensing, so this is lenitive and a great easer of paine, it is most soveraigne for a Horse that is taken, or that hath any contraction or Convulsion, and generally for any costivenesse in a horse whatsoever proceeding from inward surfeite or sicknesse, as from the surfeit by provender, foundring in the body, and such like. The next is to take of salt water, or cleane Brine a quart, and dissolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and then lukewarme administer it: this Glister is very good for the Cholicke, or any other sicknesse of the guts or Belly. And thus from these three Glisters you may compound many Glisters, but in mine opinion, if you use no more then them only, they will be fully sufficient.

## CHAP. CI.

*Of Purgations and their uses.*

**T**He purging of horses is ever by one of these two wayes, either by pills, or by Potion: Pills are any solid and substantiall stuffe fixed together in one body, and being made into round balls, are cast down the Horses throate. And a potion is, when you give the Horse any liquid purging matter to drinke, whether it bee purging powders dissolved in Wine or Ale; or that if it be any other liquid stuffe. Now for Pills; they only purge and make cleane the head and braine, bringing fleame and other grosse humours downe into the Excrements: And potions cleanse the stomacke, guts, and every other inward members. Now the Art of the true carefull Farrier is in choosing of the simples, whereof these pills or Potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the same, First then, it is needfull that every good Farrier (before he goe about to purge his horse) know with what ill humour a horse is opprest, as whether it proceed from choler, fleagme, or melancholy, and where the humours doe most abound; and then what simples are best to purge those humours, and with that propertie, quality, and temperament they be indured; for some simples are most violent, and next couzens to strong poysons, as Scamony, or Coloquintida: some againe are gentle; and rather nourishing then medicinall, as Manna, Cassia, whay, prunes, and such like: and some are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a meane, as Rubarbe, Agaricke,

Agaricke, Sene, and Aloes. Now the ancient Farriers did use to purge their horses with the pulpe of Colocynthida, sometimes with the Rootes of wilde Cucumbers, and sometimes with the broth of a sodden Whelp mixt with Nitrum, and such like, but at this day they are not of our practise, and therefore I wish him that for his experience still to make a tryall of strong medicines, or know the working of every simple ( which is a most praise worthy Ambition, ) first to make his proofes upon Jades, whose losse he respecteth not, and so by that working to adventure on better horses.

But to returne to my purpose, the Farrier who goeth about to purge a horse by purgatiō, must consider the nature of the horses disease; & the strength of the horse, and with them joyn the nature, strength, and quantity of the medicine: he must also consider the climate under which the horse is bred; the time of the disease, the time of the yeare, and the time of the day. For as the diseases and the humours which cause the diseases, are sundry, so they must be avoided by fundry medicines, fundry waies compounded, according as experience from a continuall practise shall instruct you: wherein you are to observe and note, that weak, delicate, and tender horses are not to be purged with that Violence which strong, stubborn, and sturdy horses are, and therefore in such cases, the quality and quantity is to be looked unto of every simple. The Climate is to be respected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the disease: For some diseases must be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Pestilence, Yellowes, Staggers, and all Violent

lent inward diseases, and some not til the matter bee thoroughly digested, as Colds, Strangles, and Apostumations. Now albeit the sicknesse proceeds from cold humours, yet you must not administer as hot simples in Summer as in Winter; nor in the contrary case, so colds things in Winter as in Summer, whereby you see the time and the season of the yeare is to be respected. Then touching respect of the day, you are to observe that day to bee best that is most temperate, sith too much heate maketh a horse faint, and too much cold doth hinder the medicine from Working. A little regard is to be had to the winde and weather; for a moyst day hath a South-winde, is to be preferred before a North winde with a dry day. Now the best houre of receiving any kinde of Potion, is ever in the morning, after he hath fasted from meate and drinke all the night before. As scone as your horse hath received any pil or potion, let him be walked or gently ridden up an downe one houre at the least, and then set up, and suffered to stand on the Bit two houres after, well littered and cloathed, and stopped; but if you perceive that hee beginneth to grow sicke or ill (as most commonly horses will) then you shall suffer him to lye downe, and as soone as his sicknesse is past, you shall offer him to drinke a Mash of Malt and water luke-warme: for any other meate keepe him fasting till his medicine have done working.

Now to come to particular receipts and medicines themselves, you shall easily understand, that although the ancient Farriers doe make but two kinds, that is to say, Pils and Purgations, yet I divide them  
into

into three, that is to say, Scourings, pills, and Purgations. Scourings are those wholesome, naturall, and gentle purging medicins, which stirring up no great Fluxe of humours, doe onely keepe the body cleane from such evils as would arise and grow, being every way as wholesome in health, as in sicknesse, and may most properly be termed preparatives; or preparers of the body to entertaine more stronger medicines. To speake then first of the most gentlest and naturall scouring, it is onely grasse being given to a horse onely fifteene dayes together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not scoureth. Next unto grasse is forrage, which is onely the blades of greene Corne, as Wheate, Rye, Barley, and such like, being given seven dayes and no more. Next is greene Thistles, being cut up, and given the horse to eate the space of five dayes and no more. And the last of this nature is the Mashe made in this manner: take a pecke of ground malt, and put it into a paile, then take a gallon and a halfe of Water boyling hot from the fire, and put it into the malt, then with a staffe, mash and stirre them together at least halfe an houre, till tasting the Water you feele it as sweete as Honey, then being luke warme, give the horse to drinke. All these scourings doe onely but cleanse the guts and coole the body, adding comforts to the spirits, and ingendring strength, onely the mash is to be used after labour, or instead of drinke in the time of any great sicknesse. Scourings of a little stronger nature are these: first, when you give your horse any Provender, to mixe with halfe a pecke of Oates, a handfull or two of clean drest hemp-seede: or else

to

to take a good quantity of Boxe tree-leaves and put them into a pewter dish, then set them before the fire, and let them dry leasurely till they be so hard that you may crush them into powder, then take as much of the powder of Brimstone as there is powder of Boxe, and mixe them together, and amongst halfe a pecke of Oates mixe a handfull of this powder and give it the horse to eate, both these scourings are to be used after labour, especially when the horse hath sweat much.

These two scourings worke upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expell, they purge the stomacke, head, and intrailles, they kil al kind of worms, and dry up fleagme. Scourings of the strongest nature are to take of Sallet oyle half a pint, and of new milk from the Cow a pinte, brew it together, & give it the horse luke-warme: or else take a pint of Muskadine, and halfe a pint of Sallet oyl, and being mixt together give it the horse to drinke: Or else halfe a pint of oyl, and a pint of Sack mixt together, and given the horse to drink luk-warme.

These scourings cleanseth the Head, Body, and guts of all fleame or molten grease, which any violent labour hath dissolved: they are exceeding good for any manner of cold or stoppings in the Wind pipes, and if you adde unto them good store of Sugar-candy, it will preserve and keepe the horse from sicknesse. Now for pills, you shall very plainely understand that the first and easiest are these, either to take twenty cloves of Garlicke cleane pild and bruised, then a quarter of a pound of sweete Butter; and so roule up the Garlicke in foure or five balls:

or pellets, as big as two Wallnuts a peece: And so taking out the Horses tongue thrust them downe his throate one after another: or else to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, and as much red Saunders, beate them well together in a mortar, and then make it into four or five balls, and put them downe the Horses throate. Pils of some-what strong nature, are to take a handfull of Rosemary leaves, and chopping them small, mixe them with a quarter of a pound of sweete butter, and then making it into round bals, give them unto the horse: Or else take round peeces of raw Mellons, and thrust them downe the Horses throat: Or else to take five greene figs, and put them downe the horses throate.

The strongest Pill is this: take of Lard two pound laid in water two houres, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the cleane fat thereof, and stampe it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Lycoras, of Aniseedes, and of Fenugreeke, of each beaten into powder, one ounce and a halfe, of Aloes likewise in powder one ounce, of Agaricke halfe an ounce, knead all these together like paste; and make thereof foure or five bals, and give it the horse. The last recited Pill is singular good for the dry cough, and all the other pils are most soveraigne for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from fleagme, melancholy, or any other cold or moyst cause whatsoever. Now for Purgations, which are the strongest cleansers of the body, they be these: take two ounces of Mirrhe, & mixe it with a pint of wine, and it will purge all sickness which proceedeth of Choler: the signs whereof are, his belly will swell, be very hot, and hee can neither

neither dung nor break winde. Take a pint of wine and beat a raw egge therein, and adde to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimstone, and halfe an ounce of Myrrhe beaten to powder, & give it the horse luke-warme, and it will purge all inward diseases proceeding of melancholy. Two spoonfuls of the powder Diapent, given with halfe a pinte of swines grease, purgeth all diseases proceeding of fleagme. Take as much blacke Sope as a Walnut, a quart of new milke, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet oyle, and give it the horse luke warme, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the horse exceeding sicke. Take the guts of a Tench or Barbell, being cut into little small peeces, and give it the horse in a quart of white Wine, & it will purge the horse from all costivenesse or pain in the guts; Rye being boyled, so that it burst not, then dried again, and giving the horse instead of Proven-der, purgeth and killeth all manner of wormes. Take of Radish roots one ounce, of the roote called Panax, and of Scamony, of each halfe an ounce, beat all these together, and boyle them in a quart of honey, then give the horse two spoonfuls of this in a quart of ale luke warme to drink, and it will purge all grosse humors, from whence proceedeth either the falling evill, or any disease of the braine.

Take and boyle Elicampaine rootes in milke till they be soft, that you may bruise them to pap, and then adding thereto halfe a pint of Sallet oyle, give it the horse to drinke luke warme, and this will purge and cleanse any kind of Glaunders. Take of sweete sope a quarter of a pound, and make it into three bals, and give them to the horse, & it wil purge  
all



al evil humours whatsoever, both violently, and most abundantly.

### CHAP. CII.

*A most excellent rare scouring for any horse, sicke or sound, and especially for running or hunting horses, whose grease must necessarily be molten.*

**F**Orasmuch as the greatest Art which doth belong to the keeper either of running or hunting horse, consisteth in the taking away from the Horse his grosse glut and fat, which not onely offendeth the vitall parts, but also stoppeth up the conduites and vessels of winde, and that it cannot any way be done, but by scouring after exercise, you shall understand that the best of all scourings, which hath hitherto beene approved, is this which I will here set downe: You shall take twenty Raisins of the Sun, and picke out the stones, and tenne figges, which you shall slit in the midst round-wise, boyle them in a pottle of running water till the water be consumed, and thickened: then take the powder of Lycoras, Aniseedes, and Sugar-candy finely searst, and mixe it with the Raisins and Figges, stamping and working them together till it bee brought to a stiffe paste, then making round balls thereof of a pretty bignesse, role and cover them all over with sweet Butter, and give so many of them unto the horse as you shall thinke meet for his strength; provided that the day before you must give your horse such exercise as will be sure to melt his grease, and that immediately before  
you

you give him this medicine, you also warme him thoroughly, that the humors being againe stirred up, the medicine may worke more effectually.

CHAP. CIII.

*Of Neezing or fumigation, and the use thereof.*

**T**Here is yet also another manner of purging of a Horse, & especially his head, and that is by forcing him to neeze or snort violently at his Nose, casting forth all filthy and grosse matter, which otherwise will offend and oppresse the Braine; and this neezing is wrought sometimes by fumes or Smoaks, sometimes by powders, and sometimes by oyles, the sharpenesse of which, tickling the tender and quicke parts of the head, doe compell this snorting and neezing: Surely there is no purgation more wholesome, for as it clenseth and separateth grosse matter, so it comforteth and maketh strong the Braine. Now to come unto the particular medicines which doe procure this neezing, they be these: squirt into a horses nostrils either mans urine which is old, or the urine of an Ox which hath had much rest, and it will force a horse to neez, and is most wholesome for any Quotidian Fever. Take the powder of Gumdragant, Eusens, and damask Roses wel mixt together, and blow it with a quill into the horses nostrils, and it is good either against the Fever in Summer or Winter. Take warm vineger and squirt it into his nostrils, and it is comfortable against the Fever which commeth by raw digestion.

Take

Take of Garlicke stalkes a handfull, being broke into little pieces, and a good quantity of *Frankincense*, and being put upon a chafing dish and coales, hold the chafing dish under the horses nostrills, so that the fume may ascend up into his head: and this is most excellent against the head-ach. Take feathers and brimstone, and burne them on a chafing-dish and coales under the horses nose: or blow pepper and Perithre beaten to powder up into his Nostrils, either of both these are most excellent against the sleeping evill. Take the powder of Mother-wort and blow it up into a horses nostrills, and it is good against the falling evill. Take two Goose feathers annoynted over with Oyle de Bay, and thrust them up and downe in the horses nostrills: or else to take Sage, Penyriall, and Wheate, long sodden together, and put into a bagge as hot as may bee, which bagge would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the smoake and savour thereof may ascend up into his nostrills: Or take a clout annoynted with Sope or Oyle de Bay, and rub it up and downe his nostrills as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstructions in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphure, and burne them on the coales, and hold it under the horses nose: or take oyl de Bay, Euforbium and white Ellebore, & annoynting two feathers therewith, thrust them up into the horses nostrills: both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the stalkes of Briony or wild Uine, two handfulls, and bruising them betwixt two stones, & being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, and fasten

P

the

the bag so to the horses head, that the sent may go up into his nostrills without touching the hearbe with his mouth : And this is excellent against the mourning of the Chine, or any inward cough. Take of Rosemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dryed and beaten into fine powder, of each like weight, and with a quill blow them up into the horses nostrills : or take the powder of white pepper, or of Salt niter, or of Iris Ilirica, or blacke Eleboris, and blow them with a quill up into the horses nostrills : or take Linnen chopt, dipt in the dregs of oyle, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out againe, and let the smoake ascend up into the horses nostrills : or squirt into his nostrills Aristolochia, mixt with wine, or Salt niter mixt with water : or salt and Roch allom mixt with wine: or take ground Ivy beaten small, and thrust up into his nose : or Bay berries beaten small, and burnt on the coals under the horses nose : or a coale of fire put into a lump of wet hay, making a smothering smoake, and held under the horses nose. Any of these are most excellent against any disease of the head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glaunders, Strangle, and such like.

Yet al these have their severall imperfections : the best Fumes then of all others whatsoever, is to take the best Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruising them grossly together, burne them under the horses nose,

## CHAP. IV.

*Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their severall uses.*

**F**Rictions or Bathes, are a certaine rubbing, anointing, or bathing of a horses body all over, especially against the haire, because the medicine may sinke in so much the better with comfortable and soveraigne Vnguents, whose vertues doth loosen the skin, cheare up the inward spirits, and spread a lively heate and feeling over the whole body : And of Frictions, both according to the opinion of the old Farriers, and also of the best of this present age, these are the most soveraigne. Take of Damaske Roses one pound, of old oyle a pint, of strong Vineger a pint and an halfe, of Mints and Rew, beaten into powder, of each one ounce and a halfe, together with one old dry Nut : beate them, and mingle them well together : Then being strained and made luke warme, if it be in the Summer time, and that the Sunne shine hot, take the horse abroad : But if, otherwise, keepe him in the stable, and heating a barre of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over, and on each side the Horse, and with the oyntment rubbe and chafe the horse all over against the haire, untill the horse beginne to sweate, then cloath the horse very warme and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all Winter Fevers, or any inward sicknesse that commeth of Cold. Take of blacke Elleborus two or three handfulls, and boyle it in a sufficient quantity of strong Vineger ; and with that rubbe and chafe all the horses head and body quite

over once or twice a day; and it is most excellent against Frenzy, madnesse, or any drynesse, or scalines of the skinne.

Take oyle de Bay, or Dialthea, and annoynt all the horses body all over therewith, holding a pan of coales, or hot barre of Iron, neere the oyntment to make it sinke in, or else make him a bathe of running water, wherein is boyled Rew; Worine-wood, Sage, Juniper, Bay leaves, and Hyssope, and bathe all his body therewith: Either of these are most soveraign for the mourning of the Chine, or any disease of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleene. Take wine and oyle, and having mixt them together, chafe & rub the horses body therewith, and it is most soveraigne for any inward sicknesse, especially the liver. To bath a horse in salt water is very wholesome, both for the horses skin, and also for any disease in the stomacke.

Lastly, take of Mallowes, of Sage, of each two or three handfals, and a Rose cake; boyle them together in water, then being boyled till the water bee all consumed, adde a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet oyle, and mixing them together, bathe all the horses foure leggs therewith, and all the parts of his body also: and there is nothing more soveraigne for a horse that hath been tyred or over travailed. To let bloud, and with that bloud, and oyle, and Vinegar, presently to annoynt his body, helps most sort of infirmities.

## C H A P. C V.

*Generall Drenches or Medicines for all the inward  
Diseases or surfeits in horses.*

**T**Here is no medicine more soveraigne for al diseases which breed in a horses body, then to take halfe an ounce of the powder called Diapente, and brew it either with a pint of Sacke, if it be for colds, or Muskadine if it be for heart sicknesse, and so give it the horse to drinke fasting in the morning: and do this at least three mornings together, especially when the horse beginneth first to droop. The next to this, is to take of Selladine two handfuls, both roote and leaves, chop them and bruisse them: then take of Rew as much, of red Sage and Mint as much, and of Aloes halfe an ounce: boyle these in a pottle of Beere or Ale till the one halfe be consumed, and then give it the horse-luke warme to drinke.

Take foure ounces of Diapente; and mixe it with four ounces of clarified Honey, and keepe it in a close glasse, and give halfe an ounce thereof with a pint of sweet wine to the horse to drinke, and it is an excellent drench. Take of Lycoras an ounce, of Aniseedes, Comen seeds, and Elicampaine roots, of each half an ounce, of Turmerick and Baies, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long pepper & Fenugreek, of each two drams, beat these smal and searce them, and put five spoonfuis thereof into a quart of Ale warmed, with a little butter or oyle, and it is very soveraigne for any disease comming of cold causes. Take a quart of good ale or wine, a raw egge beaten and mingled

with twelve scruples of quicke Sulphure, and foure scruples of Myrrh made into powder, and give it the horse to drinke, it is a good drench. The powder of Brimstone mixt with sweete wine is a good drench also. The roote of the Sea onion, the rootes of popler, called the Greeke Rhammos, mingled with common Salt, given in water, keepeth the horse long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreeke, and bruise it, seeth it in water till it waxe thicke, adde a pound of sweet butter, an ounce of Linseed Oyle, and as much of the oyle of Nuts; mingle them well together, and give it the horse in three or foure dayes to drinke, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine simply of it selfe, or Rue simply of it selfe, boyled in Beere or Ale, and as much Brimstone as a Wall nut is an excellent Drench for any long taken surfeite. Garlicke and Housleeke beaten together in a Morter, and then boyled in beere or Ale from a pottle to a quart; then mixt with Licoras, Aniseedes, and Sugar-candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet oyle, is an excellent Drench for any inward sicknesse which doth proceed from hot causes, as is the Frenzie, the Anticor, and such like. And thus much of generall drenches, and their uses.

## CHAP. CVI.

*How to make the powder called Diapente.*

**T**His word Diapente is as much as to say composition of five simples: for the receipt is thus compounded. Take of *Gentian*, of *Aristolochia*, of *Bayberries*, of *Myrrh*, and of the shavings of *Ivory*, of each like



like quantity, beate them into very fine powder, and then searce it. This powder is praised to be a soveraign preservative or medicine against al inward diseases: and therefore I would wish every Farrier, and all such as are the masters of good horses, never to be without it.

CHAP. CVII.

*A most famous receipt, which is both a singular drench  
and a singular oyntment, called of the  
Italians Accopum:*

**T**AKE of Euforbium half an ounce, of Castoreum one ounce, of Adraces half a quarter of a pound, Bdelium halfe an ounce and halfe a quarter, of pepper a quarter of a pound, Fox grease halfe an ounce, Opoponax one ounce, Lacerpitium three quarters of an ounce, Amoniacum halfe a quarter of a pound, Pidgeons dung asmuch, Galbanum halfe an ounce, Nitrum one ounce one quarter, Spuma Nitri three quarters of an ounce, Ladanum a full quarter of a pound, Perethrum, and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cardadam two ounces, seede of Rew halfe a quarter of a pound, seede of Agnus Castus one ounce, Parsley halfe an ounce, dried rootes of Ireos, of Flower-de-luce one ounce owne quarter, Hyssop and Carpobalsamum a quarter of a pound, Oyle of Flower-de-luce a quarter of a pound and halfe a quarter; Oyle de Bay asmuch, Ole of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, Olem Cyprinum three quarters of a pound and halfe a quarter: the oldest Oyle Olive one pound and a halfe

halfe, pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces. Turpentine a quarter of a pound ; melt every one of these that will melt, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the Simples beaten into fine powder : and after that they have beene a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and straine it into a faire Uessell, and whensoever you will give your horse any thereof, give it him with Wine, or four or five spoonfuls with a pinte of Sacke or Muscadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing stiffe or hard, then soften it with the oyle of Cipresse, so that it may bee good and thicke.

This Confection is both a medicine and an oyntment, if you put it in the horses nostrils, it wil draw out all noysome humours, and discharge his head of al grieve : if you anoynt his body therewith, it healeth all convulsions, colds, and drinesse, or withering of the body, and if you bathe his Limbes therewith, it driveth away all wearynesse and tiring ; and if you give it him with wine to drinke, it cureth al kind of inward maladies.

#### CHAP. CVIII.

*How to make the oyle of Oates.*

**T**Ake of Milke two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put there to a quarter of a pound of burnt Allome, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and cast it away ; then straine the whay through a course cloath in a cleane vessell : then take a quarter of a pecke of cleane husked Oates that were

were never dryed, and put them in the whay, and set them on the fire till the Oates burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender that is full of holes, so that the whay may goe gently from them without any pressing (for you must keepe the Oates as moyst as may be :) this done, put the Oates in a frying pan, and set them over the fire, stirring them continually, till you see the Vapour or smoake of them to ascend upwards, but as it were runne about the pan, then suddainly take them off, and putting them into a presse, presse them most exceedingly, and looke what commeth from them is onely the oyle of them, which you must save in a close glasse. Now there are other more artificiall and curious wayes to distill and extract this Oyl, but this of all other is the most easiest and surest for every meane capacity. This oyle of Oates is of all medicines and simples whatsoever, the most excellent and soveraigne for a horses body, as beeing extracted from the most naturall, wholesome, and best foode which doth belong unto a horses body. This oyle being given by foure or five Spoonfuls at a time in a pint of sweete Wine, or a quart of strong Ale, and some of the whay powred into the horses Nostrils, doth cure the Glaunders before all other medicines. It is also (given in the same manner) the best of all purgations; for it purgeth away all those venemous and filthy humours, which feedeth the most incurable Farcy whatsoever. And for mine owne part, as long as I can conveniently come by this oyle of Oates, so long I will never in any medicine whatsoever, use any oyle or unctious matter

ter then it onely: I having found by experience, that it is the soveraign of all simples of that kinde, whatsoever they be.

CHAP. CLX.

*Certaine briefe observations to be observed at home and abroade, whilst the horse is in health.*

**T**Hese observations now following, are gathered from the most exact principles, and unfallible grounds of all the best & surest approved horsemen either of this Kingdome, or of any other Nation within Christendome.

First then, for the generall feeding of your horse when he is in health, you shall feed him with straw, Hay, Oats, fine little Wheat, Beans, Barly, bread made of Beans, Pease, or Firches, or any other meate that swels not in the horses body.

It is the opinion of Camerarius first to give provender, then hay, and lastly water; but our English custome is, first hay, then water, and lastly provender.

In your travaile feede your horse betimes for all night, that thereby the horse may sooner take his rest.

The quantity of Provender which you shall give your horse at one time, shall bee as much as you can hold in the palme of both your hands at sixe times, or three pints by measure.

Horse bread which is made of cleane beans, cleane pease, or cleane fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your horses meate and drinke bee exceeding sweete and cleane, yet his water by no meanes ex-

treame

treame cold running water from the rocke ; for it pierceth too much.

To rubbe your horses mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eate and drink with a much better appetite:

Let your horse neither eate when hee is hot, nor drink when he is hot, neither presently after his travaile.

Labour your horse moderately when the weather is either extreame hot or extreame cold, that so you may avoyde extreame heates, or suddain colds:

Travaile not your horse too late, that your owne eye may see him well dryed, and well fed before you take your owne rest.

Never take your saddle from your horses backe suddainly.

Lend not your horse, lest your selfe walke on foot.

Let your horse ly cleane and dry, keepe your stable sweet, let no swine lye neare it, nor let any pullen come within it.

Let your horse be ever tied with two Reines.

Let the light of your stable be ever towards South and North, yet so as the North windowes may in the Winter be shut close at pleasure, and opened in the Summer to give fresh ayre.

Ride your horse oft a little ou stony wayes, that hee may the better feele his feete, and harden his hoofes.

Have ever neare your stable some close plaine green, that your horse being let loose, hee may oft tumble himselfe thereon.

Let

Let your horses bed be of soft sweet straw, somewhat above his knees, of which, Wheate straw is the best: for though Barley straw bee the softest, yet a horse will covet to eat it, and it is unwholesome, and Wheate straw is not unwholesome to eat, yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oat straw it is the best in the Superlative, for it is both wholesome to eat, and soft to lye upon.

Curry or dresse your horse twice a day, that is, before water, and when hee is curried, rubbe him with your hand, and with a rubber, his head would bee rubbed with a wet cloath, and his cods made cleane with a dry cloath: his fore-top, his maine, and his taile, would be often wet with a wet main comb, and ever where the horses hair is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the plaunchers of your stable lye even and Levell, that your horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let not any mud wal be within your horses reach; for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholsome.

Give your horse plenty of Garbage ( which is chopt wheate straw ) both with his provender, and without.

Let your hay bottles be very little, and tyed very hard: for so your horse shall eat with the best stomacke, and make least wast.

To sprinkle water upon your hay, is most wholesome, and to sprinkle Fenugreeke upon your provender, is as soveraigne: the first is good for the winde, the latter for wormes.

Give

Get your horse daily exercise, for that gets the best stomacke to his meate.

Purge your horse once a yeare with grasse, or with green blades of Corne called Forrage, for fifteen days together; yet before you purge him, in any case let him bloud; and whilst he is in purging, by no meanes let him have any provender.

A horse after travail hath ever more bloud then any beast whatsoever.

Green grasse or Forrage cleanseth the bloud, encreaseth strength, healeth diseases, avoydeth melancholy, helpeth the horses growth. And maketh the skin smooth: whilst the horse is at soyl, by no means let him take cold.

The Northern man watereth two houres before he rideth at the least: then lets the horse eate a little hay, then gives provender, but not much, and bridleth the horse up a quarter of an houre before hee rideth: At night he watereth two miles before hee taketh his lodging, then rideth easily: he neither walketh his horse, nor stuffeth him, nor looseth any girt, but onely rubbeth him very cleane, and so lets him bite upon his bridle halfe an houre after, with good store of lltter under him; then hee gives the horse hay, and after provender: before he goeth too water againe, (yet but a little) then seeth the horse throughly well dressed and rubbed, well littered, and most sufficiently meated.

There bee others which walke after labour, then rub well, littered and unbridleth: both which bee good, so that the one have not too much warming, nor the other too cold a stable. But howsoever,  
stuffe.

stufte not your horse backwards, but betwixt his fore legges, and formost girt: for backward stuffing is perilous, least drawing his yard when hee would stale, he draw backe in his sheath any of the Litter that stop him. The Northern mans use agreeth with the French principles, which saith: Use no other walking then your selfe on your horse backe, by riding him gently till you come at your Inne, and so make him cold, then shake litter under him, rubbe his legs, his belly, and every part of his body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, rub his head well, and give him hay; slacke no girt till it bee night that the windowes be shut; suffer the horse to drinke but a little at once, to avoide suddaine cooling of the stomacke, or driving the horse into a shaking Fever: At night rub and curry well, and feede according to the horses stomacke.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the Horses sinews be chafed, and never water in travail till the horse have staled, and forbear to travaile him fast before he hath drunke, that he may not drinke in his great heate, and they hold the standing water the best; after water for a mile they ride softly till his water be warmed in his belly, and before they come to their Inne they doe not water, nor of an houre after they have unbridled: then they cloath well, and give Provender; having a care that their horses stand not in the winde, and that they have bin rubbed dry and clean. Now all these principles are exceeding good, yet I would wish every traveler to learne how his horse hath been used, and what custome (if it bee not too much against reason) still to follow.



If you come late to your Inne, and that your journey be great and earnest, so that your horse will not eate till he have drunke, and yet is hot notwithstanding, then let his drink be milk given in the dark, lest the whiteneffe make him refuse it: this is both cordiall and pleasant: if you cannot get milk enough, then mingle milk with Water luke-warme, for no drinke would be given a horse hotter.

If your horse either by labour or any surfeits be brought low, leane, and weake, you shall give him Mares milk to drinke many days together, and it will make him strong.

It is not good to wash your horse, especially if he be either hot or very fat: otherwise you may wash his legs above his knees, so that in no case you wash his belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his washing, then by no means walke him, but set him up and dresse him: The purer the water is wherein you wash your horse, the more wholsome it is, so that it be not too extream cold.

The best hours to water your horse in, (when he lives at rest) is betwixt seaven and eight in the morning, and foure or five in the evening.

When you travail, at every steep hill light, both to refresh your horse and your selfe.

Let a fat or hot horse have his water at four times, and not as much as he will drinke at once, give him provender twice at night, and but once in the morning: let his cloath neither bee too hot, nor with straw too much stuffed: when hee eateth good hay, let him have lesse provender then when hee eateth straw: give his meate by little at once to avoid glutting.

ting of him, and let him stand two houres every day without meate.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preserve, and doth keepe both strength of body; and legges: for in rubbing and combing, a horse doth take much delight, and it doth better then much meate.

To feed with Barley (according to the opinion of the ancient Italians) increaseth good bloud, encreaseth strength and courage, and maintaineth health, but with us here in England, we find oats to be much better feeding.

In the doggs-dayes it is not wholsom to ride your horse oft in the water to allay his naturall heate.

The Masters eye to see his horse well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the stable sweate and cleane kept, preserveth health and wonderfully feedeth the horse.

Cleanse and picke the soals and bottomes of your horses feet oft, and stuffe them well with Oxe dung, annoynt his hooves with fresh grease, tarre, or turpentine.

Much rest is the mother and the nurse of many diseases.

When you ride, look often to your sadle, and your horses shooes; and you shall finde much more ease in your journey.

## CHAP. CX.

*Certaine speciall Principles in Foales and  
in Horses.*

**T**He Foals whose legs be long, wil ever be tall, for of all beasts their leggs in length ever grow the least, and by the bignesse of their legs you shall guesse the strength and greatnesse of their bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can possibly, never be housed till they be past three yeares old.

The Greeke horse (which we call the Turkey horse) is a most excellent horse, swift, bold, wel headed, tall, and strong, many of them be White, some Bay, some Sorrell, and some black.

Arabian horse is most swift, and most beautifull.

The horse of Africa, which we call the Barbary horse, is of good courage, swift, and nimble, & therefore both the Turkey horse and he must be used with all lenity and gentlenesse, and not with beating.

The Frizeland horse is fiery, yet the worst of any.

The Flemish horse is worse then the Frizeland.

The Spanish Jenet is good, swift, and light.

The Neapolitan Courser for all uses is most excellent and beautifull.

And the English horse is best both for great burthens or long travail.

Observe either to winne your horse by patience and gentlenesse, and never be angry or madde with your horse, if he be of great mettle; onely the dull horse must with much beating be quickned and enflamed.

Q

Anoint

Annoynt your bit when you put it first into your horses mouth, with honey, and the powder of Licoras, or else with hony and salt: and a ino time put any Bit or Snaffle into your horses mouth before you have washt.

Never take your horses backe before you have the bridle reines fast in your hands; and when you walk downe any Hill, by no meanes drive your horse loose before you.

If your horse have a long back, let him have a large saddle, and if he have a low back, let the Saddle have a high seat, and if his backe be short, let the bouldsters stand the neerer and closer together.

If your horse be dul, you must spurre him soundly, and after such spurring, rub his sides with Salt.

#### CHAP. CXI.

*Certaine generall observations concerning Mares.*

**I**N length and height, a Mare groweth till she be five yeares old, and a horse till he be six.

When a Mare is past two yeares old she may be covered, but the best time is after four year old.

Common Mares may bring Foales every year, but let your best Mares bring but every second yeare, especially if they bring horse Colts.

After covering by no meanes travaile your Mares:

To get horse Colts, cover before the full of the Moone, and when the signe is a Femall: and to get Mare colts cover after the ful, and in the Male signe: for note it, there be twelve signes, sixe Male, and sixe Female.

To

To make a Mare stand to her horſing, ſet her by the horſe two or three dayes, that hee may much deſire and be acquainted before hee cover her: After bring them out, and let him ſerve her, and have ready a payle of water, which when the horſe ſhrinketh from her, powre upon the ridge of the Mares back: then ſet them ſo farre aſunder as that the one may not heare the other: Doe this three mornings, and three evenings together, then let her not come neere the horſe after, till ſhee be knit, leaſt the deſire of him againe, make her to ſhoot out that which ſhee kept before.

To know whether your Mare be with Foal about Christmas or no, powre a little Water into her eare, and if ſhee onely ſhake her head, ſhee is then with Foale, but if ſhe ſhake both head and body alſo, ſhee is not with Foale.

When you wean your Foales, take them from the Mares foure dayes before the full of the Moone, and after the Foales have ſo remained foure and twenty houres, let them againe ſuck till they waxe very full: then remove them for altogether, and the next morning give every one three ſlips of Saven, and ſo after let them have till they be three years old, a plenty of meate abroad rather, then in the ſtable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either Neapolitan Courſer, or Arabian, Turke, or Barbery, and for amblers, either the Spaniſh Jenet, or the Iriſh hobby.

Put your Mares to the horſe, from middle March till middle May, or middle June, the Moone having newly changed.

It is good to put the horſe and the Mare for three

or foure nightes together in some vast empty house, and in the morning take the horse away, & feed him well; but feede your Mare sparingly, especially give her little water.

At the end of sixe monthes, by no means chafe your Mares; for then they are in quickning, and many easily be made to cast their Foales.

The Wal eye either in Mare or horse, doth never see perfectly, especially when there is any snow on the ground.

A mare goeth with Foale a eleven months and ten dayes.

Let your Mare be of a meane stature, large, and broad, and of good shapes; and the Stallion of like shape, but somewhat taller; and temper their natures thus: Put unto the hot horse the coole mare, and to the hot mare the coole horse: and let your grounds wherein you breed, bee dry, hilly, and with running streames in it.

#### CHAP. CXII.

*Certaine speciall notes to be observed in the buying of a horse.*

**F**irst, marke his colour and his shape, that is to say, a comely well proportioned head, with an out-looking eye, good well raised shoulders, and a thicke large breast, broad brawne, large and broade flat legges, short pasterns, and little feete: for long pasterns shew weaknesse, and broade feete shew duknesse, feele if he have no Glanders betweene his chaps

chaps, no splents, curbe nor spaven, looke hee be not pursicke or broken-winded: put your hand before his eyes, to know if he see well. Looke into his mouth for his age: if hee bee past eight yeares old, feele all downe the strunt of his tayle with your hand, and if you feele that it be smooth, then the horse is not very old, but if it have any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not, for his good dayes are past. Let him runne at the halter end, for if hee be lame (having that liberty) hee would favour that Legge which is amisse, and leane upon it. If he turn up the white of his eye, or lay his eare to his necke when he is ridden, hee is a sullen Jade, and full of naughty qualities: if when you stirre him in the stable, he stare and looke back upon you with a stout Countenance, it is a token of a good stomacke in him; and great aptnesse to be taught: if hee stirre the end of his tayle as he passeth out and is ridden, and yet doth not whiske it, it sheweth that his pace is imperfect: bee sure to see him turne as short as may be, that you may know whether he be swayd in the backe or no: the middle stature is the best, and the short knit horse is the strongest. The wall eye ever seeth the worst.

The horse that is of nature Gentle, Swift, light, Nimble, of easie pace, and good colour, strong feete, good Loyns, speedy in eating, and good at his Provender, is ever the best for use, and the readiest money in the Market at all times. See if the haire in the spurring place be white, for it argueth slownesse and spur-galling.

The Horse that will paw and beate the ground.

Q<sub>3</sub>

with

with his foote when hee is stayed from going forwards, is ever like to bee good and durable in travaile.

Many other notes there are that are needlesse to rehearse, which by the observing of these will easily come into your memory.

### CHAP. CXIII.

*Generall notes concerning some Simples  
already spoken of.*

**A**L L manner of Marrowes or Pithes, of what kind soever they bee, must bee kept by themselves in a dry coole place, and preserved from all filth or uncleannesse, and from the annoyance eyther of wind or fire, and so they will last fully out a whole year.

You shall keepe no Syrrups, nor sweete Electuaries, nor Pilles, nor powders, nor conserves of Flowers, nor any oyntments, Suets, or Emplaisters, above one whole yeare, onely bitter Electuaries, or conserve of Fruites or Rootes, will last fully out two yeares.

Of Oyles, some will last long; some must bee new made: Oyles extracted out of Wood or mettalls, will last long.

Gather rootes in Autumn, but take the small sprigs from them, and make them cleane and dry.

Dry small Rootes in the shade and Winde, and great rootes eyther in the Winde and Sunne, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keepe long, provided that neither

Sunne



Sunne nor moysture injureto hurt them.

Gather all manner of hearbes when they doe most flourish, and drye them in the shade, except they be very moyst and apt to putrifie; they last for the most part a whole year.

Gather seedes and fruites when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole yeare.

Gather the Rind or Barke of any simple when the Hearb is ripe: drye them, and they will last many yeares.

*The end of the first Booke.*



Faint, illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

1601

Maister Taylor Lincolne Inne

The end of the first Booke

Done to the Record Entry

Beard and Great & Little

Moor Gate London

THE SECOND  
BOOK,

CONTAINING ALL CURES  
Chyrurgicall, or such infirmities as being  
only outward, crave the use of Chyrurgery,  
and are called in Horfe-leech-craft,  
*Horfes Sorrances.*

Newly Imprinted, Corrected, and Enlarged  
with many notable Additions, and most certaine  
approved Medicines, never revealed be-  
fore this Impression.

Written by *Geruase Markham*, Gent.



Imprinted at *London* by *W. Wilson*, dwelling in the  
Well-yard, in little *St Bartholmewes* neere the Hof-  
pitall Gate. 1656.

Vertical text on the left margin, possibly bleed-through or a list of entries.

Faint, illegible text at the top of the page, possibly a title or header.

Section of faint, illegible text in the middle of the page.



Faint, illegible text at the bottom of the page, possibly a signature or footer.



## THE SECOND BOOKE.

### CHAP. I.

*What proportion of measure is required in every member of a well-shapen Horse.*

**F**OR AS MUCH as the great substance of this Art of Chirurgery, or second part of Horse-leach-craft, applyed onely unto outward infirmities, consisteth of Incisions, Cauterizings, Corrodings, and Dismembrings, as well as of Comfortings, Incarnating, Cleansing, Conglutinating, and binding up members in their true forme, and that all joyntly together, goe but about to make a true and well-formed Body : I thinke it meeetest that I beginne with the true proportion and measure which is required in every member of a well shaped horse, that the carefull Farrier thereby understanding how, and in what fashon every Lineament should be placed, or what portion and quantity they doe continue, he may at no time through ignorance  
either

either dismember or disgrace the same : as I have many times seen simple Farriers doe, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in sunder the maine cords, sinews and tendons, by which a horses limbes are governed.

To begin then, you shall understand, that according to the description of the most ancient and worthy Farriers : there are in a horses Palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like steps, one above another standing (when his mouth is turned upwards) like a paire of staires : his tongue would be halfe a foote long, his upper lip sixe inches, and his neither lip five inches long; each of his jawes would bee ten inches long, his head from his eyes downe-ward full twelve inches long, his eares five enches long, the circuit or compasse of his eye, foure enches about, his necke from the nape of his head unto the withers would be seven handfuls, from the withers to the fillets twelve handfuls, and from the fillets to the setting on of the taylor sixe handfuls : The length of the shoulder would be twelve inches, and the length of his shanke sixe inches, the length of his hinder hoofs would be twelve inches, and his cambrel five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the taile would be an hundred inches. Now as horses are bigger or lesser, so these measures either exceede, or are lesse, neither doe I confidently build upon these inch quantities of the ancient Farriers, because I having my selfe measured many horses, I never yet could finde any certainty in the proportions : onely this is the most certaintest rule that ever I could finde, that looke what quantity,

is betweene the Nape of the Horses necke, and the uttermost part of the Withers, there must ever be twice so much betweene the Withers and the setting on of the taylor: and looke what quantity is between the top of the shoulder-blade, or top of the Withers to the elbow of the horse, it must be twice so much from the elbow to the setting on of the Hoofe: And looke how much it is from the top of the Hippe to the stifling place, it must be twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on of the hinder hoofe: And this is the certainest rule that ever I could finde for a horses truest proportion. And therefore for your better satisfaction, behold this picture that is now here placed, which is the Anatomy of a most perfect horse, with lines drawne from every member, directing and shewing all the outward diseases or Sorrances belonging to a horses body.

#### CHAP. II.

*Of the veines belonging to a Horse, and how many there be.*

**I**T is most necessary that every good carefull Farrier know all the principle veines in a horses body, especially those which in the time of need, or in sicknesse are to be opened: And therefore to beginne you shall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountaine of bloud, both in Man and beast, doth arise one main great conduit or large veine, which ascending into the body, doth divide it selfe into thus many severall branches or lesser Rivers. First within

within the palate of his mouth, above the first and third barres, are two notable veines which the best Farrier doe touch and strike when the horse hath any disease in his head, brain, or stomacke: He hath also other two which descend downe from the lower parts of his eyes unto his nostrils, and are ever opened for any griefe in the eyes: Hee hath two others which are above his eyes, and runne crosse the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple veines, which are likewise opened for all manner of cold diseases in the head; hee hath also two great maine veines running along each side of his windpipe, even from the uppermost joynt of his neather chap downe to the breast, which are called the necke veines, and are those which are ordinarily opened for any disease whatsoever. He hath then two veines which arise upwards from betweene his foure legs to the top of his breast, and are called the breast-veines, and they are opened when the horse hath any Fever, or is sick at the heart. He hath other two which likewise ascend from betweene the fore-legs, but do not mount so high as the breast veines, but rest upon the formost bough of the fore-legge; and they be called the Plat-veines, and they be opened either for foundring, or other griefe in the Limbes. He hath other two veines which run downe from the elbow of the fore-shoulder, downe all along the inside of the fore-legs, and are called the shanke veines, which are opened for splents, mallander, or such like. He hath then foure veines which runne alongst the fetlockes of the horse, and are called the shakle-veines, which albeit thy are but small, yet they are many times





times opened for stiffenes in the joynts, or for tyring: then he hath foure veines about the Cronets in his hoofes, and are called the Cronet veines, and are opened for foundring in the feet, or for ring-bones: then he hath four veines within his foure hoofes, running about his Toes, and are called the toe-veines, and are only opened for foundring, or frettizing in the feet: he hath then two maine great veines which descend downe from his stons alongst the inside of his thighes to his cambrel, and are called the kidney Veines; which are onely opened for diseases in the Kidneyes: He hath then two other veines which descend from above the hinder Cambrel, all alongst the inside of the hinder legs down to the feet lockes, and are called the Spaven veines, which are opened for the blood spaven only: He hath then two veines in his flankes, which are called the flanke-veines, and are opened for any grieffe in the reines or fillets: he hath then two veines in his hinder hanches called the hanch veines, and are opened for any manner of consumption of the flesh, or such like: Then he hath two veines which rune alongst his side, even from the elbow of the foreleg unto the flank, and are called the spur-veines, and are opened for foundring or spurregalling. Lastly, he hath one single veine in his tayle, which is called the tayle-veine, and is opened for the shedding of the haire or any manginess. So there is a horses body of principal veines, which upon occasion must be opened, just thirty seven, as you may perceive by this figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the principall veines and others within a horses body: where you are to understand that the letter *A* sheweth

sheweth the Temple veine, *B* the eye veines, *C* the Pallate-veines, *D* the Neck veines, *E* the breast-veine, *F* the Plat veines; *G* the Shank veines, *H* the Cronet-veines, *I* the Hoofe veines, *K* the spurre veines, *L* the Kidney veines, *M* the Spaven veines, *N* the Flanke-veines, *O* the Hanch-veines, *P* the Taile-veines, *Q* and *R* the Fte-locke-veines. Now for the other small threds, or veines, which as it were, overspread the whole body, because nature will allow no part or member to be empty or voyd of blood, they be also veines, derived from the other maine great veines, yet of no efficacy or force, but such as upon any necessary incision may very well be cut asunder without any fluxe of blood, or other danger: but for the other master veines, they may not be cut but with great perill. And thus much for veines, which are the instruments of heate.

### CHAP. III.

#### *Of the sinewes in a horses body.*

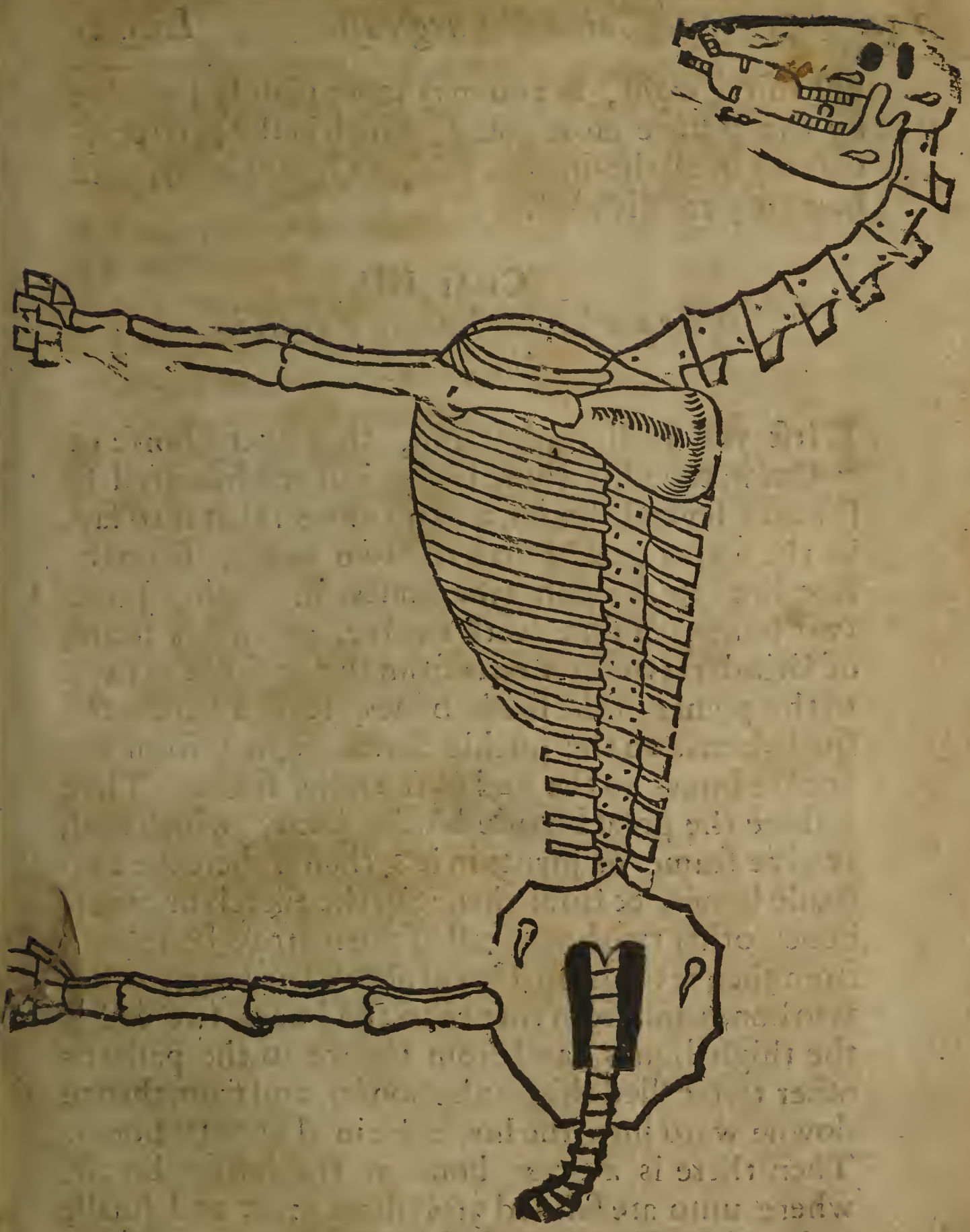
**T**oucying the sinewes within a horses body, you shall understand, that from the Braine, which is the principall Fountaine or Well-spring of sinewes whatsoever, there is derived one great maine sinew or tendon, which passing through the hollownesse of the necke and backe bone, doth extend it selfe even to the nethermost joynt of the horses strunt: From his maine sinew is derived two small branches, which passing through certaine holes in the top of the horses skull, runne downe alongst the horses checkes, even to the poynt of his nostrils: Then

R

hath

hath hee two other branches, which passing through certaine holes in his nether chap, knit that and the upper together, and so runne downe by his great teeth, and meete just below his nether lip: then hath he twenty eight small threds, which running through so many small holes in the seaven bones of his necke, knit them fast together: So likewise hath Knit all his Chine even to the very nether end of his Strunt fast together: The number whereof is infinite and uncertaine: Then hath hee two maine great sinews, which extending themselves over both the spade bones, are divided into many branches, and runne downe into the fore-legges, even into the Coffins of the hoofes, and knit every joynt fast and substantially together: then hath he two other maine sinewes which comming through two holes to the great columell or flat bones of the hippes or huckle, doe extend themselves (being divided into many Branches) downe both the hinder legs, even within the Coffins of the hooffe also, and bind all these severall joynts fast and strongly together. Now lastly, you shal understand that from the setting on of the horses necke, unto the flat columel or huckle bone, doth extend one great broad sinew of three inches broade, being of one only thick and smooth substance, without any one thred or branch derived from it, which not only holdeth together the shoulder blades, but also covereth all the horses chin quite over, and this of the common Farriers is called Pax-waxe: So that a horse hath in all of maine and principall sinewes, from whence a world of other sinews are derived,

just



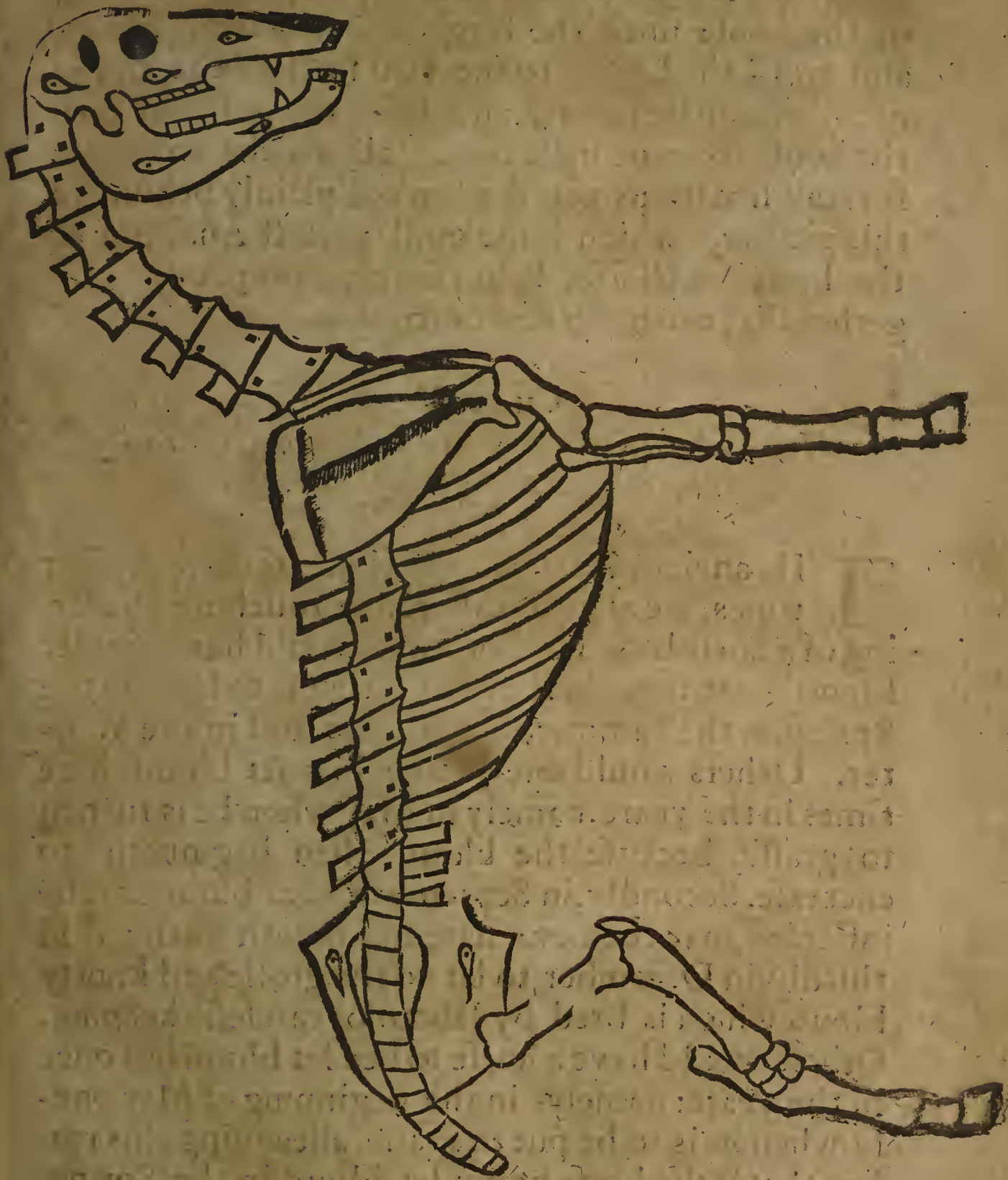
R 2

just thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the picture aforesaid, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the sinewes within a horses body, and how they are divided.

CHAP. III.

*Of the number, and situation of Bones in  
A horses body.*

First you shall understand, that every horse or Oxe hath in his whole body, just one hundred & seventy severall bones, and no more : that is to say, in the upper part of his head two bones, from the fore head to the nose two bones, his nether Jawes two bones, of fore teeth twelve, of Tushes foure, of Grinders twenty foure, from the nape of the neck to the points of the spade bones, seaven ; from the spade bones to the huckle bones, eight ; from the huckle bones to the end of the taile, seaven : Then is there the great broade hinder bone, which hath twelve seames or joynts in it ; then is there the two spade bones, & from thence to the forcels or canal-bones, other two bones called the marrow bones, and from thence to the first joynt above the legges other two bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the thigh bones, and from thence to the pasterns other two called the shanke bones, and from thence downe ward into the hooves be in all 16 little bones. Then there is a great bone in the horses breast, where unto are fastned 36 Ribbes great and small, and to the columell behind be two bones, and from the molares to the joynts other two bones ; and also



Re 3

also two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the hoofe unto the legge, are two small bones, and from the Legges to the two fociis of the Legge other two little bones, and from the pasterns into the hoofe, sixteene little bones: all which, and their severall situations you shall more plainly behold in this picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together that can be by demonstration.

CHAP. V

*How and when a horse should be let blood, the end whereof, and the signs of the necessity*

**T**He ancient Farriers, and those of these present times, are at great difference touching the letting of a horse blood: For some would have him let blood foure times in the year: that is to say, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumen, and in the Winter. Others would onely have him let blood three times in the yeare: namely in May when he is turned to grasse, because the blood then beginneth to encrease. Secondly, in September, that blood if it be inflamed, may then evacuate and breath forth: And thirdly, in December, to let go the grosse and knotty blood which is bred by labour or carelesse keeping. Others would have a horse to bee let blood but once in the yeare: namely, in the beginning of May onely, when he is to be put to grasse, alleadging this reason, that if the horse be not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt bloods will be apt to be inflamed and so draw upon  
the



the horse some grievous sicknes, and this reason is excellent good. Others would have the horse to be let blood in the veine not above once in a year; namely, at the beginning of May: but in the palate of the mouth they would have him let blood at least once every moneth, alledging that it will clear the sight, comfort the braine, and give him good appetite to his meate: but to conclude, there is not any of these opinions but are sound and good, so the horse bee young and in strength, his blood increasing; but if he be old, and his blood in the ebbe; then you cannot let blood too seldom. Now that it is fit a young horse should be let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the Polander horses, who being at liberty (out of naturall instinct in themselves) faile not once a yeare to let themselves blood; yet we have divers of our best Farriers, who would not have a horse let blood beore there be urgent necessity, lest the use of letting blood bring a horse to an evill custome, and draw on sicknesse unexpected; but with that opinion I cannot agree, because I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, then to drive it away being present. Now that oft letting of blood breedeth in a horse weaknesse, and maketh the blood to resort to the inward parts, cloying the heart and intrailles, and making the outward parts fat and unweldy, there is no question but that the letting a horse blood twice in the yeare; namely, at the beginning of May, and the end of December, (at which times onely I would have a horse let blood and no other) should be accounted oft, I see no reason. Now for Stallions, the ancient Farriers would

by no meanes have them let blood, because say they the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of seede doth countervaile five ounces of blood, and truly I am of that opinion too: but whereas they likewise advise by no means to let Geldings blood, because the losse of their stones is the losse of their naturall heate : to that I am much contrary, because I have found it by continuall experience, that Geldings do as oft dye through the corruption and abundance of blood as horses: nay, and much more oftner, in as much as they want the helps which horses have for purging their blouds from uncleanesse. Now in the letting of horses blood, every carefull Farrier is first to respect the Climate under which the horse is bred, knowing that those horses which are bred in cold Countreyes, have ever more blood then those which are bred in the hot: then he must consider the time of the yeare, which would ever be the spring, or the fall of the leafe, both these times being most temperate, neither exceeding in heate nor in cold. Next he must regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the morning fasting, so it be not at the horses awaking from sleepe, but at least an houre or two after then he must looke unto the state of the Moone, that the signe be not in that part of the body where he intendeth to let blood, next he must looke to the horses age : for if he be young, and not come to his growth, it wil hinder his waxing; and if he be old and come to decrepitness, his blood had more need be repaired then wasted. Lastly, he shal looke to the horses strength and ancient custome, and so  
accor-

Accordingly he shal deale with him, obseruing that some horses may better spare two or three pound of blood, then other some one pound. Now thus much I have spoken touching ordinary and natural letting of blood, without compulsion of any sicknesse or disease; but in case where sicknesse or infirmity craveth this office of letting blood, there you shal neither respect Climat, season of the yeare, time of the day, signe, age, strength nor custome, but setting al asid, apply your selfe onely to the removing of the infirmity. Now the signes to know if a horse stand in need to be let blood are these: His eyes wil looke red, and his veines wil swel more then ordinary: also he will have a certaine itch about his Main and his tayl, and still be continually rubbing them; and somtimes will shed some of his haire also: he will now and then pill about the roots of his ears, or in those places where the head-stall of the bridle lyes: his urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung wil be black and hard: also if he hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his backe, or doth not digest his meate wel, it is a signe the horse would be let blood: or if he have any apparent signe or yellownes in the whites of his eys, or in the inside of his Lippes, either upper or nether, it is a signe he would be let blood: for after any of these signes doth most commonly follow some one or other grievous sicknesse, which to prevent is the true art of a skilfull Farrier. Now it is meete that when you intend to let a horse blood (having leasure to do the same) that you suffer him to be thinly dyeted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end that

that his body may be quiet, and not troubled with digestion. Now for the manner of lettng a horse bloud, you shall as neere as you can, let him stand upon even ground, & if it be the necke veine which you would strike, you shall take a long small cord with a noose, and putting over to the horses necke, as close to the setting on of the shoulder as you can, there draw it as straight as is possible, and then fasten it with a running knot, and presently you shall see the veines to appeare as bigge as a mans little finger, even from the nether chap downe to the necke. Now you are to observe that the place where you are to strike the veine in, is even within three fingers or four fingers at the most of the nether chap: as thus; if your horse have a long, fine, thin necke and skinne, then you may strike the veine within three fingers, or lesse of the chap ( sith the higher is ever the better ) but if he have a short chub necke, with a thicke skin and many wreathes or roules, about the setting on of his chaps, then you shall strike the veine at least four fingers from the chap, lest those wreaths together with the thickeesse of the skin, do so defend the veine that your Fleime cannot reach it. When you have thus raised the veine up, you shall cause one to stand on the contrary side of the horse, and with his fist to thrust the veine forth hard against you: then you shall either with a wet sponge, or with a little spittle, wet the part of the veine which you meane to strike, and then separeting the haire, set your Fleime even and directly upon the veine; and then with a good smart blow strike it into the veine: Which done, you shall cause one to put his  
finger

finger into the horses mouth, and tickling him in the rooffe thereof, make him chew and move his chappes, for that will force the blood to spin forth; now the bloud which you take from the horse, it is very necessary that you save in divers vessells, for divers causes: as first, that you may see when all the corrupt bloud is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is growne pure, and so remaineth being cold, that then you suffer the horse to bleed no more: or else that you save it to bathe the horses body therewith, which is most wholesome: or else to meke a medicinie therewithall by mingling with the bloud vinegar and oyle, and so bathe the horses body therewith, especially that place which was let blood. For the ancient Farriers hold an opinion, that it is indued with a certaine naturall vertue and powre to comfort the weake and feeble members of a horse, and to dry up all evill humours. Now as soone as your horse hath bleed sufficiently, you shall let loose the cord, and immediately the veine will stoppe; then with that cord you shall stroake downe the Veine just over the Orifice twice or thrice, which will both close up the hole, and also turne the course of the bloud: this done, set the horse up in the stable, and let him stand fasting two or three houres after, and then after dyet him according as in your discretion you shall thinke meete, that is to say, if he be a sicke horse, then like a sicke horse with good provender and warme mashes: but if hee be a sound horse, then like a sound horse, either turn him to grasse, or keepe him in the stable after his ancient custome.

Now

Now if you would let your horse blood either in the Temple-veines or the Eye-veines, you shall then cord him hard about the midst of the necke, and not neer his shoulders, having a care that you touch not his wind-pipe, and so throttle him: for it will make both these veines shew most apparently. If you intend to let the horse blood in the breast veines, or Plat veines, of some called the four thigh-veines, you shall then cord him behind the shoulders, close to the elbows of the horse, and over-thwart his withers, and that wil make these two veines shew. Now you shall understand, that not any of these veins last spoken of, as about the head or the breast must be let blood by striking them with a Fleime, (though it be the manner of our common Smithes) for it is most beastly and butcherly, and also full of much danger by striking through the veine, (if he be not skilful: ) but you shall with a fine sharp Lancet open the veine, even in such sort as you see a skilfull Chirurgeon open the veine in a mans arme. Now for the letting a horse blood in the palate of the mouth you shal but only with a sharpe pointed knife, prick the horse between the second and third bar, as deep as a Barly corne is long, and he wil bleed sufficiently: as for al other veines in a horses body whatsoever, which are to be opened, you shal understand, that whensoever it is needful that they bleed, that then they must be taken up, and not corded at all. Now touching the taking up of veines, and the manner how to doe it, you shall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this booke.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of outward Sorrances what they are, and of certaine generall observations in the cure of them.*

**O**utward Sorrances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of wayes, that is to say, either it is an evill state and composition of the body, which is to be discerned either by the shape, number, quantity, or sight of the member evill affected and diseased: or else it is the loosening and division of any unity, which as it may chance diversly, so it hath divers names accordingly. For if such a division or loosening be in the bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleshly part, then it is called a wound, or an ulcer: If it be in the veines, then a rupture: if in the sinewes, then a convulsion or crampe; and if it be in the skinne, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all these severally I intend to intreate in the following Chapters. Now forasmuch as in this generall art of Chirurgery, or Sorrances, there are certaine generall observations or caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceede any further, give you a little taste thereof.

First, you shall therefore understand, that it is the duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with oyl, nor to make any incision with knife, where there be either veines, Sinewes, or joynts, but either somewhat lower, or somewhat higher.

*Item,* You shall never apply to any joynt or Sinewe part, either Resalgar, arsnicke, Mercury, sublimate,

mate, nor any such violence Corrasive.

*Item,* It is ever better to launce with a hot Iron then a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize then to incise.

*Item,* Bloud doth ever produce white and thicke matter, Cholera watrish thin matter, but not much, salt Flegme great abundance of matter; and Melancholy many dry scabs.

*Item,* When you let bloud, you must take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a growne horse.

*Item,* You must never let bloud, except it bee either to divers sicknesse, and preserve health, or to refresh and coole the bloud, or else to diminish bloud, or to purge bad humours.

*Item,* In all impostumes or swellings fores, called Tumors, you must observe the foure times of the sicknesse, that is to say, the beginning of the grieffe, the increase of the grieffe, the perfection and state of the grieffe; and lastly the declination and ending of the grieffe.

*Item,* In the beginning of every such swelling Apostumes (if you cannot quite destroy them) use repercussive medicines, if they be not neer some principall part of the body; but then not, for fear of indangering life, and in augmentation, use mollifying medicines, & suppling to ripe them; and when they are ripe, launce them, and let them out, or dry them up, and the declination of them, use cleansing and healing medicines.

*Item,* All swellings are either hard or soft, the hard commonly will corrode, the soft will continue long.

*Item,*



*Item,* If you thrust your finger upon any swelling upon a horses legges, then if it presently rise againe, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent doe remaine and continue still behind, then it is hurt old, and commeth of cold humours, and askes great art in healing.

*Item,* When sores begin to matter, then they heale, but if the putrifaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

*Item,* All cauterizing or burning with hot Irons, strayneth things enlarged, dryeth up what is too much moystned, dissolved things gathered together or hardned, draweth backe things which are dispersed, and helpeth old griefes: for it ripeneth, dissolveth, and maketh them to runne and issue forth matter.

*Item,* You must sometimes burne under the soare, to divert humours, and sometimes above, to defend and with-hold humours.

*Item,* It is ever better to burne with Copper then with Iron, because Iron is of a malignant nature, Steele is of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

*Item,* All actuall burnings is to burne with instrument, and potentiall burning is to burne with medicines, as are Causticks and Corrasives.

*Item,* If you use to blow powders into a horses eyes, it will make him blind.

*Item,* By no meanes take up any veines in the fore-leggs, unlesse great extreimity compell you: for there is nothing that will sooner make a horse stiffe and lame. Many other observations there are, which because they are not so generall as these be, and that I shall

shall have occasion to speake of them in other particular Chapters, I thinke it here meet to omit them; and the rather because I would not be tedious.

CHAP. VII.

*Of the diseases in the eyes, and first of the weeping and watering eye.*

**T**He eyes of a horse are subject to many infirmities, as first to the R humatick, or watry, then to be bloud-shotten, to be dimme of sight, to have the pin and webbe, the haw, the wart in the eye, the inflammation of the eyes, the canker in the eye, or a stroake in the eye: of all which, some come of inward causes, as of humors resorting to the eyes: and some of outward causes, as Heate, Cold, or else by some stripe or blow.

And first to begin with the R humaticke, or watry eye, you shall understand, that according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the fluxe of humors distilling from the Braine, and sometimes from the anguish of some blow or stripe received. The signes are, a continuall watring of the eye, and a close holding of the liddes together, accompanied sometimes with a little swelling. The cure. according to the opinion of some Farriers is, to take of Bolearmonicke, of Terra sigillata, and of Sanguis draconis, of each a like quantity; make them into powder, and then adde unto them as much of the white of an Egge and Vinegar, as will make them moist: and then spread it a plaister-wise upon a cloath. and lay it to  
the

the horses temples of his head above his Eyes : and do this three dayes together, Others use to let the horse bloud in the veines under his Eyes : then to wash the eye twice or thrice in the day with White wine, and then to blow into the fore eye with a quill, the powder of Tartar, Salgemma, and Cuttle bone, of each like quantity : or else take the yolke of an egge roasted hard, and mixe therewith the powder of Comen, and binde it hot to the Eye, and so let it rest a night more. Other farriers use to take of Pitch and Rozen, and of Masticke a like quantity, melt them together : Then with a little sticke, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, anoynt the Temple veines on both sides a handfull above the eyes, as broade as a twelve pence, and then clap unto it immediatly a few flocks of like colour to the horse, holding them close to his head with your hand, until, they stick fast to his head, then let him bloud on both his Eye veines, if both eyes be sore, and then wash his eyes with white Wine.

Others use only to take a pretty quantity of life honny, and to dissolve it in white Wine, and to wash the horses eyes therewith : and sure if it proceede from any blow, it is a medicine sufficient enough, but if it proceed from any Rhume, or inward causes : Then you shall take ground Ivy beaten in a mortar, and mixt with waxe, and so laid to the eyes like a plaster, or else boyle worm-wood in white wine, and wash the horses eyes therewith: also to spurt beere or Ale now and then into the horses eyes, will clear the sight passing wel.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the bloudshotte eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever.*

**F**Or any bloud-shotte eye, proceeding from any cause whatsoever, either outward or inward, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Earriers) of Rose water, of Malmsey, & of fennel water, of each three spoonfuls, of Tutty as much as you can easily take up betweene your thumbe and your finger, of Cloves a dozan beaten into fine powder, mingle them well together, and being lukewarme, or cold, if you please, wash the inward parts of the eye with a feather dipt therein twice a day until the eye be wel: or instead thereof to wash the eye either with the white of an egge, or with the juyce of Selladine. Others use to take the topps of Hawthorns and boyling them in white wine, wash the eye therewith. Other Farriers take a dram of Synoper, and as much life Hony, and as much of Wheat flower, mixe them with faire running water, so that they may be liquid and thin: then seeth them with a very soft fire till they be thick like an oyntment, and therewith annoint the eye.

**¶** But the best receipt that ever I found for this grief, is to take the whites of two egges, and beat it till it come to an oyle, then put to it two spoonfuls of rose water, and three spoonfuls of the juyce of Housslike, mixe them wel together, then dip therein little round plegants or flat cakes of soft tow, as bigge as a horses eye, and lay them upon the horses eye, renuing them

them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it wil make the horses eye sound againe.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of dimmnesse of sight, or blindnesse.*

**D**imnesse of sight or blindnesse, may happen to a horse divers wayes, as by some straine, when the inward firings of the Eyes are stretched beyond their powres, or by the violence of great labour, or by the supporting of a great burthen beyond the horses ability, or by some blow or wound: any of these are mortal enemies to the eyes or sight. The signe is the apparant want of sight, and an evill effected colour of the eye. Now for the cure, it is thus:

If the sight be gone, and yet the ball of the eye be sound, then you shal take, according to the opinion of some Farriers, a pretty quantity of May Butter; with as much Rosemary, and a little yellow Rozen with a like quantity of Selladine, then stamp them and fry them with the May butter, then straine it and keepe it in a close boxe ( for it is a jewell for sore eyes ) and annoynt your Horses Eyes therewith at least twice a day, it is also good to heale any wound. Other Farriers do use to let the Horse bloud in the Eye veines, and then wash his eyes with red Rose water. Others use to take the Gall of a blacke sheepe and beat it, and straine it, and then to wash the eyes therewith: others use to burne the horse under the eye that the ill humours may distill forth, and then to annoynt his eyes either with the marrow of a sheepes shanke, and Rose water mixt together, or else with

the juyec of ground Ivy. Other Farriers use to take a Mould warpe, and lapping her all over in Clay, burne her to ashes, and then to take of that powder and blow it into the horses eyes. Others use to take an empty egge-shell, and fill it with bay salt, then burne it till it be blacke : Then adde to it of burnt Allome the quantity of your thumb, beat them together to fine powder. then mixe some of this powder with fresh butter, and wipe it into the horses eye with a feather, then chap the white of an egge dipt in flaxe, over his eyes : do this once a day for a seven-night, and after but once in two dayes : This is most excellent for any film, and also for a pearl. Others use to take two dry tile stones, and rub them together, and blow the powder of it with a quill into the horses eyes four dayes together.

#### CHAP X.

*A most rare approved medicine for any desperate blindness in a horse, proceeding from any Rhumaticke cause, Surfeit, Straine, Struake, or such like.*

**T**Ake of Vermilion, Betony, and Lavender, and beat them in a mortar with the best Venice Turpentine, till they come to a thicke salve like paste : then make into Cakes or Troches, each as broade as a groate, and dry them : then lay one or two of them upon a chafing dish and coals : And then covering them with a Tunnell, let your horse receive the smoake up into his nostrils, and this do Morning and Evening : and every time you thus Fume him

him, you shall also wash his eyes inwardly, either with the water of Eye bright simply, or with the water of Eye-bright, and the juyce of ground-Ivy mixt together. Now I have knowne many that doe mistake this ground-Ivy, and suppose that the Ivy which is common, and runnes along on the ground to be ground Ivy, but it is not so: for ground Ivy is a weed which commonly growes in bottomes of hedges, by the Ditches side, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough leafe, and is jagged on the edges, and of all simples none is more soveraign for the eyes.

## CHAP. XI.

*Another most excellent and aproved receipt  
for any desperate blindnesse in a horse  
or any beast whatsoever.*

**T**Ake the shels of halfe a dozen eggs, and cleanse away the inner filme from them so cleane as may be, then lay those shels betweene two cleane Tyles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lye a good space till the shels be all dryed, then take them up and beat the shels to very fine powder, then searce it through a laune to fine dust, then with a Goose quill blow this powder into the horses eye, that is offended with Pin, Web, Felime, or any thicknesse or foulnesse, and it is a certaine cure, and thus do morning, noone, and night.

But if he be for any waltered or inflamed eye, for any bruise, Stripe, Lunaticke, or descending hu-

mours, then take a spoonfull and a halfe of fine searst powder of white Sugar-candy, and mixe it with the former powder of shels: then with as much May butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof the best sweet butter without salt, work all into a gentle salve and therewith annoynt the horses eye morning, noon, and night, for it cleanseth, purgeth, comforteth, and cooleth.

#### CHAP. XII.

*Of the Pearle, Pinne, Webbe, or any spot in a horses eye.*

**T**He Pearle, the Pinne, the Webbe, or any unnatural spot, or thicke filme over a horses Eye, proceedeth, for the most part, from some stroake received: Yet the Pearle, which is a little round, thicke, white spot like a pearle, growing on the sight of the horses eye, comes many times from naturall causes, and even from descent of Syre and Damme; as I have often found by experience. The sign is, the apparent sight of the infirmity, and the cure, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is to take six leaves of ground Ivy, and a branch of Selladine, and bray them in a moarter, with a spoonfull or two of Womans milke, and then straine it through a cleane linnen cloath, and put it into a close glasse, and then drop of it as much into the horses eye at a time, as will fill halfe a hassel nutshel, and it is the fittest to be done at night onely. Doe this thrice at the least, and for threed ayes after keepe the horse as much as may be from any light.

Other



Other Farriers use to annoynt the horses eyes with the marrow of Goates shankes, or Deeres shankes, and Rose water mixt together, or else to wash his Eyes with the juyce of the Berries and Leaves of ground Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with white wine; and to blow into his eyes the powder of blacke flint, or of land Oysters: but that powder must be made so exceeding fine; as by art of searcing can any wayes be brought to passe: And for the taking away of any filme or pearl, there is no medicine more soveraign. There be other Farriers which use to take the leane of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a powder, and blow it into the horses eye. Others use to take white Ginger made into very fine powder, and blow it into the horses eyes; yet before you do so, if the Web have continued any long time it shall not be amisse, first to annoynt the horses eye with Capons grease. Others use to blow into the horses eye, the powder of Elder leaves dried, or else the powder of mans dung dried, or the powder of a gray whet-stone mixt with the oyle of hony, and put into the horses eye: others use to take the yolk of an Egge with Salt burnt and beaten to powder, and blow it into the horses eye: Or else the powder of the Cuttle bone. Others use to take either Elder-leaves dried, or mans dung dried, and mixe it with the powder of the shell or bone of the Crab fish, and blow it into the horses eye. Others take Tutte beaten to powder; and with a quill blow it just upon the pearle.

Other Farriers use to take (and sure it is not inferior, but better then any medicine whatsoever

a good quantity of white salt, and lapping it round up in a wet cloath, put it into the fire, and burne it to a red coale: then taking it forth and breaking it open you shall finde in the midst thereof a white coare as big as a bean, or bigger: Then picke out that coare and beat it to powder, and mixe with it a little white Wine, then after it hath stood a while, take the thickest of that lyeth in the bottome, and put it into the horses eye, and with the thin wash his eye, do thus once a day till the pearle be consumed.

Others use to take the juyce of Rhue, and put it into the horses eye, or else to make a hole in an Egge, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the shell with pepper, and closing it in an earthen pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it be quite hot, then take it forth, and beat the Pepper to powder, and blow thereof into the horses eye: Others use to take of pummistone, of Tartarum, and Salgemma of each like weight, and being beaten into very fine powder, to blow a little of that into the horses eye, continuing so to do till the eye be well. Others use onely to blow the powder of Sondevoire into the horses eye, affirming that it alone hath sufficient force and vertue to breake any pearle or Webbe in a very short space, without any other composition: but surely I have found the powder of flint, and the powder of white Salt burnt, to bee much more stronger.

## CHAP. XIII.

*A most excellent and infallible cure for any  
Pin, Webb, Pearle, or spot in  
a horses eye.*

**T**AKE an egge, and make a hole in the top, put out halfe the white, then fill up the empty place with salt and Ginger, finely mixt together, then rost the egge extreame hard, so as you may beate it to fine powder, have formerly lapt it in a wet cloath, then morning and evening, after you have washt the horses eye with the juyce of ground-Ivy, or eye-bright water, you shall blow of this powder therein, and it is a certaine remedy.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the Haw in a horses eye.*

**T**HE Haw is a gristle growing betwixt the nether Eye lidde and the eye, and it covereth some times, more then the one halfe of the eye. It proceeds of grosse and tough flegmy humours, which descending downe from the head, and knitting together, doe in the end grow to a Horne or hard Gristle. The signes thereof, are a watering of the eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether lidde besides any apparent shew of the Haw it selfe, if with your thumbe you doe put downe the nether lidde; of the horses eye. The cure is, take a needle and a double threed, put it through the tippe of the horses care, which done, put the needle likewise through  
the

the upper eye lid of the horse upwards, and so draw up the eye-lid, and fasten it to the eare, then with your thumbe put downe the nether lid, and you shall plainly see the Haw : then thrust your needle through the edg of the Haw, & with the threed draw it out, so as you may lap it about your finger, then fasten the threed about your little finger, to hold it constantly, and then with a very sharpe knife cut crosse the Gristle of the inside next the horses eye, and so separating the skinne & the fat from the gristle, cut the gristle quite out; then cutting your therds draw them cleane out, both of the eye lids, and out of the haw : then wash all the horses eye either with Ale, Beere, or white Wine, and plucke away all the long hairs from about the horses eyes, being sure to leave no bloud within the horses eye. And in this manner of cure you must observe, that by no means you cut away too much of the wash or fat about the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth by the end of the Haw, for that will make the horse blear-eyed. There be other Farriers which use after they have cut out the Haw, to annoynt the eye six daies after with Sallet oyle, the marrow of Sheeps shanks and Salt mixt together.

Others doe take the juyce of ground Ivy stamp in a mortar, with the juyce of Ivy berries, and mixe them either with water or white wine, & so plaister-wise lay it to the horses Eye, renewing it morning and evening, and it will eat away the Haw. Others use after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the eye a plaister of Camomill and of hony beaten together; and of all which is sufficient enough. Now you

are


are to note by the way, that the horse which hath one Haw, commonly hath two, for they continually goe together.

CHAP. XV.

*Of Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke eyes.*

**T**He Moone-eyes, or Lunaticke eyes, are of all sore eyes the most dangerous and noysome, and doe proceed from hot humours, descending from the head, and stirring up by the extreimity of over-riding, or compelling a horse to do more then nature will give him leave: as I have seene a slothful and heavy horse brought to be Moone-eyed by the folly of his rider, who would force him to stand and Trot, contrary to the vigour of his spirit: So like wise I have seene delicate mettled horses brought to be Moone-eyed, when the riders would not temper the freeness of their natures, but have given them leave to runne into all violence. Now they be called Moone eyes, because if the Farrier doe observe them, hee shall perceive that at some times of the Moone the horse will see very prettily, and at sometimes of the Moone hee will see nothing at all. Now the signs hereof are, when the horses eyes are at the best, they will looke yellowish and dimme, and when they are at the worst, they will looke red, fiery, and angry.

The cure is to lay all over the temples of the horses head, the plaister of pitch, Rozen, and Masticke, mentioned in the Chapter of watry eyes: then under each of his eyes with a sharpe knife make a slit  
of

of an inch long about four fingers beneath his Eyes, and at least an inch wide of the eye veines; then with a Cornet loosen the skin about the breadth of a groat and thrust therein a round piece of leather as broad as a two pence with a hole in the midst, to keepe the hole open: and looke to it once a day, that the mattre may not be stopped, but continually run the space of tenne dayes; then take the leather out, and heale the wound with a little flaxe dipt in this salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of Waxe, of each like quantity, and boyle them together, which being a little warmed, will be liquid to serve your purpose; and take not away the plaisters which are upon his temples untill of themselves they fall away; which being falne, then with a small hot drawing Iron, make a Starre in the midst of each temple-veine, where the plaisters did lye, which Star would have a hole in the midst, made with the button end of your hot drawing Iron in this sort 

Now there be other Farriers which instead of the slits under the eye, and the pices of leather, which is a plaine Rowell, onely doe take a small blunt hot iron, and about an inch and an halfe beneath the nether lidde, to burne some five holes all of a row, according to the compasse of the horses eye, and to burne those holes even unto the bone, and then once a day to annoynt them with fresh grease, or sweete butter.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Canker in the eye.*

**A** Canker in the eye commeth of a ranke and corrupt bloud, descending from the head into the Eye, where it congealeth and breedeth a little worme in manner as it were the head of a Pismire, which groweth in the nether end of the Horses Eye next to his Noseward: it proceedeth many times into the Gristle of the nose, which if it chance to eate through, it wil then passe into the head, and so kill the horse. The signs thereof are, you shall see red pimples, some great and some small, both within and without the eye, upon the Eye-lids, and also the eye it selfe will looke red, and be full of very corrupt matter. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take as much burnt Allome as an hazel nut, and as much of greene Copperas, and bake them both together upon a Tyle-stone, and then grinde them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a spoonfull of hony, and mixe them all together, and then with a clout dipt therein, rub the sore till it bleed: and do thus seveu dayes together, and it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers which for this Canker in a horses eye, will first let the horse bloud in the necke veine of the same side the sore eye is, and take away to the quantity of a pottle of bloud: then take of Roch-Allome, and of greene Copperas, of each halfe a pound, of white Copperas one ounce, and boyle them in three pints of running water, untill the halfe  
be

be consumed : then take it from the fire, and once a day wash his eye with this water, being made lukewarme, with a fine linnen cloath, and cleanse the eye therewith, so as it may looke raw, and do this till the eye be whole.

CHAP. XVII.

*For a stripe or blow upon a horses eye.*

**I**F a horse shall catch any stripe or blow upon his eye, either with whip, rod, cudgell, or any such like mischance, or by one horses biting of another when they either play or fight : Then for the cure therof ( if you take it when it is new done ) you shal only blow into his eye either the powder of Sandevoire, or the fine powder of white Salt, after the eye hath been washt with a little beere, but if the eye be more sore and have continued longer, then you shal take a smal loafe of Bread, and pul out al the crummes ; then fill the Loafe full of burning coals, untill it be wel burned within, then take off that crust and put it in White wine. and after it is wel soaked lay it to the sore, then take Sope-water and cold water mixt together, and wash al the Eyebrows therewith, and if for al that it goe not away, then you shal let him bloud on the Templeveines ; and if he do rub or chafe his eye, you shall let him bloud of the veines under his eyes, and wash his Eyes with cold Sope water, but if his Eyes do chance to look red with the blow, then you shal lay unto them a plaister of red Lead and Sallet Oyle beaten wel together. Others use to  
take



take the juyce of Plantaine, stamp and mixt with white Wine, and so laid to the sore eye. Others use both for this disease, or any other sore eye, to stamp strong nettles with a little Beer, and then straying it to squirt thereof into the Horses eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine powder of Sandevoire a little into his eyes, and then be carefull to keep the horses eye from Wind or Cold: but if you must needs ride him, then put a woollen cloath before the horses eye, also it is not amisse to let him bloud one his eye veins, and the twice dressing wil be sufficient.

Other Farriers use first to annoint the sore eye three dayes together with Hennes or Capons greafe to mollifie it: then take a little life honey, and warming it, wipe it into the horses eye with a feather. Others take the juyce of Plantaine mixt with Hony, or else the juyce Time mixt with hony, and put it into the eye. Others use to take the ashes of an old shooe-sole burnt in an Oven, and put it into the horses eye: or else the powder of a gray Whetstone blown into the sore eye, both are speedy remedies. Others use to take the juyce of Smallage and of Fennel, and mixing them with the white of an egge, put it into the horses eye once a day till the eye be whole.

#### CHAP. XVIII.

*For a Wart in the eye.*

**A** Wart in a horses eye, is a fleshly excretion, or a fleshly knot growing either upon the eye, or upon

upon the edge or inside of the eye-lids, it proceedeth from a thicke fleagme, which descendeth to the eye by means that the horse is too much kept in a darke stable without light: and this infirmity will make a horses eye consume and grow little. The cure is to take roch allome, and burne it on a Tile-stone, and then put as much white Coppera s thereunto not burnt, and grinde them to powder, then lay some of that powder just upon the head of the wart, and do this once a day till the wart be consumed away.

#### CHAP. XIX.

*For an inflammation in a Horses eye.*

**H**orses may diversly have inflammations in the Eyes; as by long standing in the stable, with foule feeding and no exercise, or by moates falling into his eyes, or by rankenesse of bloud and such like any of which will breed an inflammation or soreness in the eye. The signs are itching and rubbing of the Eyes, and a little swelling, with some loathnesse to open the eye-lids. The cure is, first to let him bloud upon the temple veines, and upon the eye veines, and then to wash his eyes in milke and honey mixt together. Others after bloud-letting. will wash the horses eyes with hony and Aloes Epatica mixt together: And others will wash his eyes with Aloes dissolved in white wine, any of which is approved to be most excellent for any sore eye.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Impostume in the eare of a horse*

Impostumes which breed in the Eare of a horse proceede from divers causes, as from some great blow about the head, or from Wringings with a hard halter, or from some evill humours congealed in the eares by some extreame cold. The signes whereof appeare plainely by the burning and painefull swelling of the rootes of the eares, and the other parts thereabout. The cure thereof, is first to ripe the Impostume with this plaister: take of Linseed beaten into powder, and Wheate flower, of each halfe a pint, of Honey a pint, of Hogges grease, otherwise called Barrowes grease, one pound: warme all these things together in an earthen pot, and stirre them continually with a flat sticke or slice, untill they be thoroughly mingled and incorporated together, and then spread some of this plaister being warme upon a piece of linnen cloth or soft white leather, so broad as the swelling and no more, and lay it warme unto it, and so let it remaine one whole day, and then renew it againe, continuing so to do, untill it either doe breake, or else grow so ripe that you may launce it downewards, so that the matter may have passage out, then taint it with this taint of flax dipped in this salve even to the bottome, that is to say, take of Metrofatum, of Sallet oyle and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the horse a biggen of Canvase to close in the sore, so as the taint with the oyntment may abide within the

T

fore

fore, renewing the tent once a day untill it bee whole: but if the horse have paine in his ears, without any great paine or inflammation, then thrust into his eare a little blacke Wooll, dipt in the oyle of Camomile, and that will ease him: but if the Impostume be broken before you perceive it, and that you see matter runne from the Horses ears, then you shall take of oyle of Roses, of Venice Turpentine, and of hony, of each like quantity, and mixing them wel together, warm it luke warm upon a few coales, and then dipping black wool therein, thrust it down into the horses eare that runneth, renewing it once a day till the ear leave running,

#### CHAP. XXI.

##### *Of the pole evill*

**Y**He Pole evill is a great swelling inflammation on, or Apostume in the nape of the horses neck, just betweene his ears towards his maine, and proceedeth sometimes from the horses struggling or striving in his halter, especially if the halter be of hard new twound Hempe: sometimes it proceedeth from evill humours gathered together in that place, or else from some stripe or blow given to the horse by some rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little discretion: for that part being the weakest and tenderest part about the head, is the soonest offended and grieved with Sorranes. The signs of this disease is an apparant swelling betweene the horses eares, and on each side his necke, which in continuance of time, will breake of its owne accord, yet doth  
ever

ever rot more inwardly then outwardly, from whence it comes that this disease is more commonly called of our common and ignorant Farriers, the Fistula in the necke, then the Pole evill, & in truth it is an Ulcer so hollow and so crooked, and so full of sharpe matter, like unto like, that it differeth very little from a Fistula, and is of all Impostumes, except the Fistula it selfe, the most hardest to cure: therefore I would wish every careful Farrier to take this cure in hand so soon as is possible, that is to say, before it breake if it may be.

Now for the generall cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus: First, if it be not broken, ripe it with a plaister of Hogges grease, laid unto it so hot as may be, and make a biggen for the pole of his head to keepe it from cold, which biggen would have two holes open, so as his eares may stand out, and renew the plaister every day once untill that breake, keeping the sore place as warme as may be; and if that you see it wil not break so soon as you would have it, then looke where it is softest, and most meetest to be opened, take a round hot Iron or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as big as a mans little finger, and sharp at the point, made like an Arrow head, and then about two inches beneath the soft place, thrust it in a good deepnesse upwards, so as the point of your Cauterizing Iron may come out at the ripest place, to the intent that the matter may descend downeward, and come out at the nether hole, which would alwaies be kept open: And therefore taint it with a taint of flaxe dipt in hogges grease warme, and lay also a plaister of hogges

grease upon the same, renewing it every day once for the space of four daies, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the fire: then at the foure daies end, take of Turpentine halfe a pound, cleane washed in nine fundry waters, and after that thoroughly dried, by thrusting out the water with a slice on the dishes side then put thereunto two yolkes of egges, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together. That done, searck the depth of the hole, either with a quill or a probe, and make a taint of a piece of dry sponge never wet, so long as it may neare reach the bot- tome, and so big as may fill the wound, and annoint the taint with afore said oyntment and thrust it into the wound either with that quill, or else by win- ding it up with your finger and thumbe by little and little, untill you have thrust it home, and then lay on the plaister of hogs grease made luke warme, renew- ing it every day once untill it be whole: but if the swelling cease, then you need not to use the plaister, but onely to taint it; and as the matter decreaseth, so make your taint every day lesser and lesser, until the wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this disease of the Pole-evil have bro- ken of it owne selfe, and by neglecting looking unto, have continued so long that it is turned to a Fistula, which you shall know both by the great and croo- ked hollownesse inwardly, and by a sharpe thin wa- ter which would issue out there outwardly, then you shall take ( according to the opinion of the Farri- ers ) of unslackt lime, and of Arsnicke, of each like quantity, beat them together into very fine powder, put thereto of the juyce of Garlick, of Onions, and of  
Wal-

Wal-wort, of each a like quantity, and of Holly as much as all the rest, boyle them upon a soft fire, and stirre them all well together until they be as thicke as an oyntment; then wash the sore with very strong vineger, and fill the hole full of the afore-said oyntment, by dipping a taint therein twice a day; then lay a plaister of hoggs grease upon the Taint to make it keepe in, and use this untill the horse bee whole,

Other Farriers use to take orpiment, unsleckt lime, and verdegrease, of each like quantity, temper them with the juyce of pellitory, blacke inke, honey and strong vineger, of each like quantity, boyle them and stir them wel together, untill they be very thicke, then make thereof small roubles, and put them into the hollow place of the same sorrhance: now you are to note, that both these and the last recited salve before this, are onely to kill the rankerous and sharpe humour which brings the sore unto a Fistula, which so soone as you have killed, which you shall know by the matter which will be white and thicke, then you shall heale up the sore either with the powder of Savin, or the powder of honey and lime baked together, or else by annointing it with tarre and sallet oyle, or fresh hoggs grease mixt together. There be other Farriers which for this sorrhance doe first open the sore with a hot Iron, and then take red leade and blacke sope, and mixing them wel with water till it be good and thicke, taint the horse therewith till hee be whole.

Others use to take a quart of water, halfe a pound of roch allom, foure penny worth of Mercury, a quar-

ter of a pound of Verdigrease, and mixing them well together, wash the horses sore with his water till it begin to dry up, and then heale it with the powders before named. See further in the new Additions for the Fistula, marked thus ☞

## CHAP. XXII.

*A true and certaine approved cure for any  
Pole-evil whatsoever*

☞ **F**irst shave off the haire from the swelling, then lay on a plaister of blacke Shooe-makers waxe, sprade upon white Allom'd leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broke the Impostume: then take a pint of Wine vinegar, and when it is boyling hot, mixe with it as much clay lome with the strawes, and all in it, as will bring the vinegar unto a thicke pultes, then apply this as hot as the horse can suffer it to the sore, and renew it once a day till the impostume be whole.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*Of a horse that is lave-eard, and how to  
helphim.*

**F**Or a horse to be Lave-eard, is as foule a disgrace and as much deformity to his beauty, as to want the true proportion and use of an outward member whatsoever. It proceedeth from a naturall infirmity, and is ingendred even from the first conception, and  
although



although few of our Farrlers either have endeavoured themselves, or know how to helpe it; yet there is nothing more certaine then that in this sort it may be cured. First, take your horses eares, and place them in such manner as you would have them stand, and then with two little boords, or pieces of Trenchers three fingers broade, having long strings knit unto them, binde the ears so fast in the places where they stand, that by no meanes or motion they may stirre, then betwixt the head and the roote of the eare, you shall see a great deale of empty wrinkled skinne, which with your finger and your thumbe you shall pull up, and then with a very sharpe paire of Sizers you shall clippe away all the empty skinne close by the head: then with a needle and redde silke you shall stitch the two sides of the skinne close together, and then with a salve made of Turpentine, Deeres suet, and honey, of each like quantity melted together, and made into an oyntment, heale up the sore; which done, take away the splents which held up his eares, and you shall see within a short time that his ears will keepe the same place still as you set them without any alteration: And this you shall ever find to be as certaine and true, as the healing of a cutt finger.

## C H A P. XXIV.

*Of the Vives or hard Kernels betweene the  
Chaps and the necke.*

**T**He vives are certaine great Kernels which grow from the roote of the horses eare, down to the lower part of his neather jaw, betweene the chappe and the necke, they are in proportion, long, narrow and round, and are naturall things, proper and due to every horse : but when either through ranke-nesse of bloud, or abundance of corrupt humours resorting to that place, they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foule Sorrances and Impostumations most dangerous : they are inwardly very full of little white salt Kernels, and they breed great paine in the horses throat. This disease as farre forth as I can find by any demonstration, is the disease which in men we call the Squinancie, or Quinzie, and not as some of the old Farriers suppose, the Strangle, for that hath no coherence with the infirmity. For the signs of the disease, there needs smal repetition, insomuch as the griefe is apparant to the eye : and the cure, according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers, is thus : If you see the Kernels begin to ranke and swel, you shall take the horses eare, and laying it downe alongst the necke of the horse, at the very end or tippe of the eare, cut a hole through the skinne of the necke, the length of an Almonde, or better ; and then with a crooked Wire, picke out all those Kernels which you find inflamed : Which done, fil the hole ful of Salt : then about the end  
of

of three dayes, you shall finde the fore beginne to matter : then wash it either with bark water, or with the juyce of Sage : then take of honey, of sweet butter, and of tarre, of each halfe a spoonfull, and melt them together, and as soone as you have washt the sore cleane, put into it of this oyntment the quantity of a beane, and so dresse the horse once a day untill it be whole.

There bee others of our most ancient English Farriers, which for this Sorrhance use first to draw the sore right downe in the midst with a hot Iron from the roote of the eare, so farre as the tip of the eare will reach, being pulled downe, and under the roote againe draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow head in this forme:

then in the midst of the first Line, launce them with a



Lancet, and taking hold of the Kernels with a paire of fine thinne Pinsons, pull them so farre forwards as you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the veine : that done, fill the hole with salt, and heale it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the Italian Farriers use this cure : First, take a sponge steeped well in strong Vinegar, and bind it unto the sore place, renewing it twice a day untill the Kernels be rotten : That done, launce it then in the nethermost part, where the matter lyeth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warme water and a sponge, and then annoynt the place with hony and Fitch flower mixt together ; but in any case beware, during this cure, you touch not the Kernels with your  
bare

bare finger, for feare of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in. Now there be other English Farriers, which use either to ripen the sore by laying to a plaister of hot hogges grease, or a plaister of Barley meale mixt with three ounces of Raisons sod well together in strong Wine; or else they cut out the Kernels. Now whether you cut them out, Burne them out, or rot them out ( of all which I hold rotting the best, ) you shall ever fill the hole with nettles and salt being chopt and mixt together, or else taint it with taints dipt in water & mixt with sallet oyle and salt. Others use to burne them downwards with a hot iron in the midst; from the eare to the jaw bone, drawing two crosse stroakes, and then launch it in the midst, and plucke out the Kernels, and fill the hole with bay Salt, and the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt together : or else put only Salt into the hole, and take the crops of nettles well chopt and mixt with bay Salt, and two spoonfull of strong vineger : and strain it, and put in either eare a spoonfull thereof, and put some blacke wooll after it, and so bind up his eares!

Others use to ripen them, either by laying to the sore wet hay, or wet horse litter : And as soone as they are ripe ( which you shall know by the softnesse ) to launce the skinné, and take out the Kernels, and then fill the hole, with the powder of honey and unslckt lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile stone. Others use likewise after the Kernels are ripened and taken out, to take of Agrimony, honney and violet leaves, of each like quantity, and stamping them well together, to plaister the sore there-  
with

with, till it be whole. Others use after the Kernels are taken out, to wash the sore with Copperas Water, and then to taint the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, and after to heale it with Waxc, Turpentine, and Hogges grease molten well together.

### CHAP. XXV.

*A moe rare and certaine approved medicine, which will cure the Vives, without either burning, melting, rotting, or any such violent extremitie.*

**T**Ake a peny worth of pepper beaten to fine powder, of Swines grease one spoonfull, the juyce of a handful of Rue, of vinegar two spoonfull, mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the horses ears, and tye them up with two strings, or else stitch them together: Then shake the ears that the medicine may sinke downewards: Which done, you shall let the horse bloud in the necke veine, and in the temple veines. And this cure is infallible.

### ● CHAP. XXVI.

*Another cure for the Vives, most certaine and approved.*

**I**F in any of the former receipts you can finde either difficulty or doubt, then to make certaine and speedy Worke: first, shave off the haire from the sweld place, and then clap upon it a plaister of Shoemakers waxe, and remove it not till the sore breake, then renew the plaister & it wil both heale and dry it.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXVII.

## Of the Strangle.

**T**HE Strangle (howsoever our old Farriers make a long discourse thereof) is not (as they suppose) a kinde of Quinzy, but a meane inflammation of the throate, proceeding from some Cholericke or bloody fluxion, which comes out of the branches of the Throate-veines into those parts, and there breedeth some hot inflammation, being stirred up either by some great cold Winter, or cold taken after Labour: It is a great and a hard swelling betweene the horses nether chaps, upon the rootes of the horses tongue, and about his throate, which swelling, if it be not prevented, will stop the horses wind-pipe, and so strangle or choake him: from which effect, and none other, the name of this disease tooke his derivation. The signes of this disease, besides the apparant signe thereof, and the palpable feeling of the same, is, the horses temples of his head will be hollow, and his tongue will hang out of his mouth, his head and eyes also will be swolne, and the passage of his throate so stopt, that he can neither eat or drinke, and his breath will be exceeding short. The cure thereof, according to the most antient Farriers, is with a round smal hot Iron to thrust a hole through the skine on both sides the wessand, and the after it beginneth to matter, to mixe butter, Tanners water, and Salt together, and every day annoynt the sore therewith till it be whole. Others of the ancient Farriers use first to bathe the horses mouth  
and

and tongue with hot water, and then annoynt the fore place with the gall of a Bull, that done, give him this drinke. Take of old Oyle two pounds, of old Wine a quart, nine Figges, and nine Leekes heads well stamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled these a while, before you straine them, put unto them a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and give him a quart of this every morning and evening. Also you may if you will, let him bloud in the Palate of the mouth, and powr wine and oyle into his nostrils, and also give him to drinke the decoction of Figges and Nitrum sodden together, or else to annoint his throate within with Nitre, Oyle, and Hony, or else with honey and hogs dung mixt together. Other Farriers use to rowell the horse under the throate, and to draw the Rowell twice or thrice a day, annointing it with fresh butter, and keeping his head warme. Other of our latter and better experienced Farriers, use first, ( if his years will permit him ) to let the horse bloud in the neck-veine, then to lay to the sore this ripening plaister: Take of Mallows, Linseed, Rue, Smallage and ground Ivy, of each like quantity, boil these together in the grounds of Beere: then put to it some Oyle de Bay and a little Dia Althea, then take it off the fire, & make of it a plaister, & lay it to the sore, suffering the horse to drinke no cold water: after the sore is broken, lay bran steeped in Wine unto it, till it bee whole. Others use to cut the kirkels out betweene the jawes, and then to wash the sore with butter and beere, giving the horse to drinke new milke and garlick, and the juyce of the leaves of Birch, or in win-

ter the bark of Birch, or else to anoynt it with tarre and oyle till it be whole. Now, for mine owne part, the best cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was this.

As soon as I found the swelling begin to arise between his chaps, to take a Waxe candle, and holding it under the horses chapps, close unto the swelling, burne it so long till you can see the skinne be burnt through, so that you may as it were raise it from the flesh, that done, you shall lay unto it either wet hay, or wet horse litter, and that will ripen it, and make it breake: then lay a plaister unto it only of Shoemakers Waxe, and that will both draw and heale it. Now if it breake inward, and will not breake outward, and so avoideth onely at his nose, then you shall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by burning under his nostrils either Frankencense or Masticke, or else by putting a hot coale into wet hay, and so making the smoake thereof to ascend up into the horses head: or else to blow the powder of Euforbium, with a quill into his nose, and so note that whatsoever cureth the Vives, cureth the strangle also.

CHAP. XXVIII.

*Of the Cankerous Ulcer in the Nose.*

**T**Hat which we call the Cankerous Ulcer in the Nose, is only a fretting humour, eating & consuming the flesh, and making it all raw within, and not being holden in time will eate through the Gristle of the nose. It commeth of corrupt bloud, or else  
of



of a sharpe hunger ingendred by meanes of some extreame cold.

The signes are, the horse will oft bleed at the nose, and all the flesh within his nose will be raw, and filthy stinking savours and matter will come out at the nose.

The cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers is : Take of greene Copperas and of Allome of each a pound, of white Copperas one quarterne, and boyle these in a pottle of running water untill a pint be consumed: then take it off, and put thereunto halfe a pinte of honey : then cause his head to be holden up with a drenching staffe, and squirt into his nostrils with a squirt of Brasse or pewter, some of this water being luke-warme, three or four times one after another ; but betwixt every squirting give him liberty to hold downe his head, and to snort out the filthy matter : for otherwise perhaps you might choake him: and after this it shall be good also without holding up his head any more, to wash and rub his nostrils with a fine clout bound to a sticks end and dipt in the fore said water, and do thus once a day untill the horse be whole. Other Farriers use if they see this Canker to be of great heate, and burning in the fore with exceeding great paine, then you shall take the juyce of Purslane, Lettice, and Night shade, of each like quantity, and mixe them together, and wash the sore with a fine cloth dipt therein, or else squirt it up into his nostrils and it will allay the heat.

Others take of Hyssope, Sage, and Rue, of each a good handfull, and seeth them in urine and water  
to

to the thrid part of them : then straine them out, and put in a little white Copperas and honey, and Aquavitæ, and so either wash or squirt the place with it, then when the Canker is killed, make this water to heale it : Take of Rib-wort, Bettony and Daisie sof each a handfull : then seeth them well in Wine and Water, and wash the sore three or four times a day therewith untill it be whole. Others use also to take Chry stall, and beating it into fine powder, to strow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

#### CHAP XXIX.

*Of bleeding at the Nose.*

**M**Any horses, ( especially young horses ) are oft subject to this bleeding at the nose, which I imagin proceedeth either from the much abundance of blood, or that the veine which endeth in that place is either broken, fretted or opened. It is opened many times by meanes that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine, or too supple, and so pierceth through the veine. Again, it may be broken by some violent straine, cut, or blow; And lastly, it may be fretted and gnawne through by the sharpnessse of the blood, or else by some other evill humour contained therein. The cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, to take the juyce of the rootes of Nettles, and squirt it up into the horses nostrils, and lay upon the nape of the horses necke a wadde of hay dipt in cold water, and when it waxeth warme, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers use to take a pint of red wine, and put there-

in

in a quartern of Bole-armonicke beaten into fine powder and being made luke warme, to powre the one halfe thereof the first day into his nostrils that bleedeth, causing his head to be holden up, so as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other halfe.

Others use to let the horse bloud on the breast-veine, on the same side that he bleedeth at severall times: then take of Frankincense one ounce, of Aloes halfe an ounce, and beat them into fine powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the whites of three eggs vntil it be as thicke as honey, and with soft Hares haire thrust it up into his nostrils, filling the hole so full of Ashes, Dung, or Hogges dung, or horses dung mixt with Chalke and Vineger.

Now for mine owne part, when none of these will remedy or helpe ( as all have failed me at some times, when I have used this ) take two small whip-coards, and with them garter him exceeding hard about some te neortwelve inche, above his knees of his fore leggs, and just beneath his elbowes, and then keepe the nape of his necke as cold as may bee, with moist cloaths, or wet hay, and it will staunch him presently.

## CHAP. XXX.

*Of the bloody rifts, or chops in the palate  
of the horses mouth.*

**T**Hese Chops, Clefts, or Rifts, in the palate of a horses mouth, do proceed (as some Farriers suppose,) from the eating of rough hay, full of whims; thistles, or other pricking stufte, provender full of sharp seed, which by continuall pricking and fretting the furrowes of the mouth, doe cause them to rankle, swell, and breed corrupt blood and stinking matter, and without speedy prevention, that Ulcer wil turne to the foulest Canker.

The cure thereof is (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) to wash the sore places very cleane with Salt and vineger mixt together, then to anoynt it with Honey and Allome mixt together. Other Farriers use (especially if the palate bee much swelled,) to prick the rooffe of the mouth with an hot Iron, that the humours may issue out abundantly, and then to anoynt the place with Honey and Onions boyled together, till they be whole.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*Of the Giggēs or Bladders in a horses  
mouth.*

**T**Hese Giggēs, Bladders, or Flappes in a horses mouth, are little soft swellings, or rather postules with blacke heads, growing in the inside of the  
horses.

horses lips, next under his great jaw-teeth : they wil sometimes be as great as a Wal-nut, and are so paineful unto him, that they make him let his meate fall out of his mouth, or at least keepe it in his mouth unchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper : they doe proceede either of eating too much grasfe or naughty rough pricking hay or provender, they are most apparantly to be felt: and the cure is ( according to the opinion of the oldest and most experienced Farriers ) first to draw out the horses tongue of the one side of his mouth, and then take a Lancet and slit the swellings the length of a Date, and then with a Probe picke out all the Kirnels like Wheate cornes very cleane : then take the yolke of an Egge, and as much salt as will temper it thicke like leaven : then make it into little Bals, and thrust into every hole, and faile not to doe so once a day untill it bee whole.

Other Farriers use after they have slit them with an incision Knife, and thrust out the corruption, onely to wash the sore places either with vinegar and Salt, or else with Allome water. Others use with a small hot Iron to burne the swellings, and then wash them with Beere and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it wil heale them. Now that you may prevent this Disease before it comè, it shall be good to pull out the horses tongue often, and to wash it with Wine, Beere, and Ale, and so shall no Blisters breed thereon, nor any other disease.

## CHAP. XXXII.

*Of the Lampasse.*

**T**He Lampasse is a swelling or growing up of the flesh, which overgroweth the upper teeth, which are the sheares in the upper shap, and so hindreth the horse from eating. They do proceede from a bundance of blood resorting to the first Furrow or bar of the mouth, I meane that which is next to the upper foreteeth, it is most apparant to be seene; and therefore needeth no other signs. The cure is ( according to the custome of the oldest Farriers, ) first with a Lancet to let them blood in divers places of the swelling flesh: then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burne out all that superfluous sweld flesh which overgrowes the fore-teeth, and then annoynt the sore place with fresh butter untill it bee whole. Others use after it is burnt out, onely to rub the sore place with Salt onely, or wash it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others use to take a hooked Knife made very sharpe and very hot, and therewith cut the swolne places in two parts, crosse against the teeth; but if they be a little sweld, then cut but the third ranke from the teeth, and so let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the Horse will be well: but if you finde afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting or through the eating of too course meate, that the wound doth not heale, but rather rankle: then you shall



shall take a Saucer full of honey, and twelve pepper-cornes, and bray them together in a mortar, and temper them up with vinegar, and boyle them a while, and then once a day annoynt the sore therewith til it be whole.

### CHAP. XXXII.

*Of the Camery, or Frounce.*

**T**HE Camery, or Frounce in Horses, are small Pimples, or Warts in the midst of the palate of the mouth above, and they are soft and sore, they wil also sometimes breede both in his Tongue and in his Lips: it proceedeth sometimes from the eating of frozen grasse, or by drawing frozen dust with the grasse into their mouths: sometimes, by eating of moyst hay, that Rats or other Uermin have pist upon, and sometimes by licking up of venom. The signes are, the apparant seeing of the pimples, or whelkes, and a forsaking of his food, both through the sorenesse of them, and through the unfavourinesse and rankenesse of the foode that he hath eaten before.

The Cure ( according to the opinion of the oldest Farriers ) is first to let him bloud in the two greatest veines under his tongue, and then wash al the sore places with Vinegar and Salt: Then get the horse new bread, which is not hot, and give it him to eate, and the Horse will doe well enough. But take heede you give but a smal quantity of such bread for feare of Surfeite, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others use with a hot Iron to burne the pimples on the head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt until they bleede, and they will soon heale. Other Farriers use to take out his tongue, and to pricke the veins thereof in seven or eight places, and likewise under his upper Lippe also, and let him bleed wel: then rub every sore place with Salt wel: then the next day wash al the sore places with white wine warme, or else with strong vinegar, and rub it againe with Salt: then for two or three dayes let the horse drinke no cold water, and he wil doe wel.

#### CHAP. XXXIV.

*Of the Canker in the mouth.*

**A** Canker is said of the ancient Farriers to be nothing but the rawness of the mouth and tongue, which is ful of very sore blisters, from whence will run a very hot and sharpe lye, which will fret and corrode or rot the flesh wheresoever it goeth. The signs are, the apparant sight of the sore, besides the forsaking of his meate, because he cannot swallow it downe, but lets it lye halfe chewed betweene his jaws, and sometimes when he hath chawed his meat, he wil thrust it out of his mouth againe, and his breath wil savour very strongly, chiefly when he is fasting.

✠ This disease proceedeth oftest from some unnaturall heate comming from the stomacke, and sometimes from the venom of filthy food.

The cure is (as the oldest Farriers instruct us)

to



to take of Allome halfe a pound, of hony a quarter of a pint, of Collumbine leaves, of Sage, of each a handfull, boyle all these together in three pintes of running Water until one pint be consumed, and wash all the sore places therewith, so as they may bleed, and doe thus once every day untill it be whole. Other Farriers use first to cast the horse, and with a roling pinne to open his mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flaxe, to take out all the stinking grasse, or other meate that lyeth in his jawes, and under the roote of his tongue: then when you have cleansed it thus, you shal heate strong wine vinegar somewhat warme, and then with the same Iron wrapt in Tow, and dipt in wine vinegar, you shal wash all the sore places till they bleed: then wash al his tongue and lippes with the same vinegar, and so let him rise: and then feede him at least seven dayes with warme Mashes and hot graines: but in no wise with any hay, and he wil soone bee whole.

Other Farriers use to take of the juyce of Daffodil rootes seven drams, of the juyce of Hounds-tongue as much, of vinegar as much, of Allome one ounce: mixe these wel together, and wash the Canker therewith once a day untill it be whole. Others use to take of Saven, of Bay-Salt and of Rue, of each like quantity, and stamp them together with as much Barrows grease, and annoynt the sore places therewith untill the Canker be killed, which you may know by the whitenesse, and then healing it up onely with Allome water.

Others use first to wash the Canker till it bleede

with warme Vineger, to take a good quantity of Allome beaten into very fine powder, and to mixe it with strong vineger till it be as thicke as a Salve: then to annoynt all the sore places therewith, and doe not faile thus to do twice or thrice a day until the Canker be whole.

✚ Now for mine owne part, the best cure that ever I found for this Sorrhance, is, to take of Ginger and of Allome, of each like quantity, made into very fine powder: then with strong vineger to mixe them together til they be very thicke like a Salve, then when you have washt the Canker cleane, either with Allome water, or with vineger, annoynt it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dressing, the Canker will be kiled, and after it will heale speedily

#### CHAP. XXXV.

*Of heat in the mouth and lips of a horse.*

**T**HE unnaturall and violent heate which ascendeth up from the stomacke into the mouth, doth not alwaies breed a Canker, but sometimes onely beateth and inflameth the mouth and lippes, making them only swel and burne, so as the horse can take no joy in his food, but through the griefe refuseth his meate. The cure thereof is, first to turne up his upper lip, or that which is most swelled, and with a Lancet jagge it lightly, so that it may bleede, and then wash both that, and all his mouth and tongue with vinegar and Salt.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXVI.

*Of the Tongue being hurt with the bit,  
or otherwise.*

**I**F the tongue of a horse be either hurt, cut, or galled by any accident or mischance whatsoever, the best cure is (as the oldest Farriers suppose) to take of English honey, and of salt Lard, of each like quantity, a little unsleckt Lime, and a little of the powder of Pepper: boyle them on a soft fire, and stirre them wel together til they be thicke like unto an Oyntment: then wash the Wound with white Wine warmed: after that, annoynt the wound with the said oyntment twice a day, and by no meanes let the horse weare any bit til he be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Alome water, and then to take the leaves of a blacke bramble, and to choppe them together small with a little Lard; that done, to bind it with a little clout, making it round like a ball: Then having dipped the round end in honey, to rubbe the tongue therewith once a day until it be whole.

## CHAP. XXXVII.

*Of the Barbes or Pappes underneath  
a horses tongue.*

**T**He Barbes are two little paps which naturally doe grow under every Horses tongue whatsoever, in the nether iawes: yet if at any time they shoote out, and grow into an extraordinary length  
or

or by the over-flow of humours become to be inflamed, then they are a Sorrañce, and with the extremitie of their paine, they hinder the horse from feeding. The cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, absolutely to clip them away with a paire of sheares close to the jaw, and then to wash the sore either with water and salt, or else with Tartar and strong vineger mixt together, or else with vineger and Salt. Any of al which will heale them.

### CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the paine in a horses teeth, of Wolfes teeth, and jaw-teeth.*

**A** Horse may have paine in his teeth through divers occasions, as partly by the descent of grosse humours from the head downe unto the teeth and gummes, which is very proper to Colts and young horses, and plainly to be seene by the rankenesse and swelling of the gummes, and also he may have paine in his teeth, by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfes teeth, which bee two little teeth growing in the upper jawes, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are so painefull to the horse, that he cannot indure to chaw his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or else to keepe it still halfe chewed. Againe, a horse will have a great paine in his teeth, when his upper jawe teeth be so farre growne, as they over-hang the nether jaw teeth; and therewith also be so sharp, as in moving his jawes, they cut and raze the in-

sides

side of his cheekes, even as they were razed with a Knife. Lastly, a horse may have great paine in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or some other naturall weaknesse, the horses teeth grow loose and sore in such manner, that through the tenderesse thereof, he is not able to chaw or grinde his foode. Now for the severall cures of these infirmities, you shal understand, that first as touching the general pain in a horses teeth, which doe come by meanes of the distillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancientest Farriers, first to rubbe al the outside of the horses gummes with fine Chalke and strong vineger well mixt together.

Other ancient Farriers use after they have so washed the gummes, to strow upon them the powder of Pomegranate Pils, and to cover the temples of the head with the plaister of pitch, Rozen, and Masticke molten together, as have beene before sufficiently declared.

Now for the cure of Wolfes teeth, or the jaw teeth ( according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers ) it is thus. First, cause the horses head to be tyed up high to some post or rafter, and his mouth to be opened with a coard so wide, that you may easily see every part thereof : Then take an instrument of Iron, made in all poynts like unto a Carpenters Gouge, and with your left hand set the edge of the toole at the foote of the Woolfes teeth, on the outside of the jaw, turning the hollow side of the toole downewards, holding your hand steadily, so as the toole may not slip nor swerve from the aforesaid teeth : Then, having a mallet in your right hand, strike

strike upon the head of the toole a good stroake wherewith you may loosen the tooth, and make it bend inward, then straying the midst of your toole upon the horses nether jaw, wrinch the tooth outward with the inside or hollow side of the toole, and thrust it cleane out of his head : Which done, serve the other Woolfes teeth on the other side in like manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

Other ancient Farriers use (and I have in mine experience found it the better practise) onely when the horse is either tyed up or cast, and his mouth opened, to take a very sharpe file, and to file the wolfes teeth so smooth as is possible, and then wash his mouth with a little Allome water. Now if the upper jaw teeth over-hand the nether jaw teeth, and so cut the inside of the mouth as is aforesaid, then you shall take your former toole or gouge, and with your Mallet strike and pare al those teeth shorter by little and little degrees, running alongst them even from the first unto the last, turning the hollow side of your toole towards the teeth, by which meanes you shall not cut the insides of the horses Cheekes : then with your file, file them all smooth without any raggednesse, and then wash the horses mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Lastly, if the paine doe proceed from the loosenesse of his teeth, then the cure is, according to the opinion of she ancient Farriers, first to cast the Horse, and pricke all his Gummes over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rubbe them al over with Sage and Salt, and it wil fasten them againe.

Others

Others use to let the horse Blood in the veine under the Tayle, next the Rump, and then to rubbe all his gums with Sage, and to give him in his provender, the tender croppes of blacke bryers : or else wash all his mouth with hony, sage, and salt beaten together, and by no means let the horse eat any moist meate, for cold, moist, and marrish feeding in the Winter, onely breedeth this disease of loosenesse in the teeth, and it is of all other, most proper to the Sorrell horses.

CHAP. XXXIX.

*Of diseases in the necke and withers, and first  
of the cricke in the necke.*

**T**He Cricke in the necke of the horse, is when he cannotturue his necke any way, but holds it stik right forth, in so much that he cannot bow downe his head to take up his meate from the ground, but with exceeding great paine; and surely it is a kind of convulsion of the sinews, which proceeding from cold causes, of which we have spoken very sufficiently before : It also proceedeth sometimes from over-heavy burthens that be laid upon a horses shoulders, or by over-much drying up of the sinews of the necke. The cure therof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, first to thrust a sharpe hot iron through the flesh of the necke in five severall places, every one distant from the other three inches, ( but in any case beware of touching any sinew ) then rowel al the afore-said places either with horse haire, flaxe, or hempe, for the space of fifteene dayes  
and

and anoynt the rowels with hogges greafe, and the necke wil soone be restored. Others use if the cricke causeth the horse to hold his necke straight forward, which sheweth that both sides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing Iron, and draw the horse from the roote of the eare, on both sides the necke, from the midst of the same, even downe the breast, a straw deepe, so as both ends may meet on the breast: then make a hole through the skin of the fore-head, hard under the fore toppe, and thrust in a cornet upward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, a handfull deepe: then either put in a goose feather doubled in the midst, and anoynted with hogs greafe: Or else a rowel of either horne or Leather, with a hole in the midst: any of which will keepe the hole open, to the intent the matter may issue forth: And this you shall keepe open the space of ten daies, but every day during the time, the hole must bee cleansed once, and the feather or rowel also cleansed, and fresh annoynted, and put in againc: and once a day let him stand upon the bit an houre or two, or else be ridden a broad two or three miles, by such an one as will beate the horses head, and make him bring it in: but if the cricke be such that it maketh the horse to hold his head awry upon the one side, which sheweth that but one side of the necke is troubled, then you shall not draw the horse with an hot Iron on both sides of the necke, but onely on the contrary side, as thus: If hee bend his head towards the right side, then to draw him, as is aforesaid, onely on the left side, and to use the rest of the cure as is above said, and if necessity do



do require, you may splent the horses necke also straight strong with splents of wood.

I have cured this Cricke in the necke onely by bathing the horses necke in the oyle of Peter, or the oyle of Spike very hot, and then roling it al up in wet hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping the horse exceedingly warme, without using any burning, wounding, or other violence.

#### CHAP. XL.

##### *Of the Wennes in the necke.*

**A** Wenne is a certaine Bunch or Kirnell upon the skinne, like a tumor or swelling: the inside whereof is sometimes hard like a Gristle, and spongius like a skinneful of soft Warts; and sometimes yellow like unto rusted Bacon, with some white graines amongst. Now of Wennes, some are great, and some be smal, also some are very painefull, and some not painefull at all. They proceed, as some imagin of naughty, grosse, and flegmaticke humors, binding together in some sicke part of the body. And others say they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be most extreame cold; but I say, that albeit they may proceede from these causes, yet most generelly they proceed from some pinching, bruising, biting, ripping or galling, either of girthes, halter, coller, or any other thing whatsoever.

The most certain'st cure thereof is this, take of Malloves, sage, and red Nettles, of eachone handfull: boyle them in running water, and put therenut a  
little

little butter and honey, and when the herbs be soft take them out, and all to bruise them, and put thereunto of oyle de Bay two ounces, and of Hogges grease two ounces, and warme them together over the fire, mixing them wel together : that done, plaister it upon a piece of leather, so big as the Wen, and lay it to so hot as the horse can endure it, renewing it every day in such sort the space of eight dayes, and if you perceiue it will come to no head, then launce it from the midst of the Wenne downward, so deepe that the matter in the bottome may be discovered and let out : which done, heale it up with this salve : Take of Turpentine a quartern, and wash it nine times in faire water, then put thereunto the yolke of an egge, and a little English Saffron beaten into powder, and make a taint or role of flaxe, and dippe it in that oyntment, and lay it to the sore, renewing the same every day once or twice, untill the Wenne be cured.

Others use in this case, with a hot Iron to burne and seare away all the superfluous flesh, and then to heale up the sore either with the Oyntment last rehearsed, or else with the powder of Honey and Lime, mixt together ; and this manner of cure is by much the speedier.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XLI.

*Of swelling in the necke after bloud letting.*

**T**He swelling of a horses necke after bloud-letting may come through diuers occasions, as namely by striking through the veine, so as some of the bloud being gotten betwixt the flesh and the veine, it there corrodeth and turneth to an impostume, or else by striking the veine with a rusty fleagine, whereby the veine rankleth, or by some cold winde striking suddenly into the hole, or lastly, by suffering the horse too soone to thrust downe his head, and graze or feede, whereby humours resorting to that place, breeds a great Impostumation. The cure is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take Hemlocke and stampe it, and then to mingle it with Sheeps dung and wine vinegar, and so making a plaister therof to lay it to the swelling, renewing it once a day untill it be whole. Other Farriers use first to annoynt the place with the Oyle of Camomill warmed, and then to lay upon it a little hay wet in cold water, and bind it about with a cloath, renewing it every day for the space of a weeke, to see whether it wil grow to a head, or else vanish away: if it grow to a head, you may then launce it, and thrust out the matter: then heale it up by tainting it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, dressing it once a day untill it be whole.

## CHAP. XLII.

*How to stanch blood.*

**I**F your horse either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskillfull Farrier that letteth him blood when the signe is in that place, bleedeth so exceedingly that hee wil not be stanch'd, you shall then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, lay unto the wound a little new horse-dung tempered with Chalke and strong Vineger, and not to remove it from thence the space of three dayes : or else to lay unto it burnt silke, burnt felt, or burnt cloath, any of which will stanch blood. Others use to powre into the wound the juyce of Coriander ; or else to let the horse chew in his mouth the leaves of Periwinkle. Others use to take of bruised Nettles, and lay them to the wound : or else wild Tansey bruised, or hot hoggs dung: Others use to take bruised Sage and lay to the wound : or else the coame about the Smithes Forge : or else a clod of earth, or bruised Hyssope : or the soft crops of Hawthorne bruised : or else to take two ounces of the horses blood, and boile it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the wound.

**B**ur when all these faile, as in some extremitities I have found them do ; then for your onely refuge, you shall take the soft downe either of Hares skinne, or of a Conies skin, and stop the wound well therewith, holding it too with your hand till the blood stanch : if it be a grievous sore wound, then assoone as the blood is staked, spread a plaister of Bolearmonicke  
and

and Wine vinegar mixt over the wound.

CHAP. XLIII.

*Of the falling of the Crest.*

**T**He falling of the horses Crest, is when the upper part of a horses necke which is called the Crest, leaneth either to the one or the other side, and will not stand upright as it ought to doe. It proceedeth most commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and especially when a fat horse falleth away suddainely upon any inward sieknesse. The cure (according to the oldest Farriers) is first to draw his Crest well a full strawes breadth deepe on the contrary side with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would bee halfe a inch broade, and make both your beginning and ending somewhat beyond the fall, so as the first draught may goe all the way hard upon the edge of the maine, close by the roots of the same, bearing your right hand downward into the necke-ward : Then answer that with another draught beneath, and so farre distant from the first, as the fall is broade compassing as it were all the fall : but still on the contrary side, and betwixt those two draughts, right in the middest, draw a third draught: then with an Iron button of almost an inch about, burne at each end a hole, and also in the spaces betwixt the draughts, make divers holes distant three fingers one from another, as this figure doth plainly shew you. That done, to kill the fire, annoynt it every day



once with fresh butter for a weeke or more : Then take of Mallowes and of Sage, of each one handfull, boyle them wel in running water, and wash the burning away till it be raw flesh, and then dry it up with the powder of hony and Lime.

Other Farriers use for this infirmity, first to cast the horse upon some soft dung-hil, or other easie place, and with a knife to cut away the flesh on the hanging or under side of the Crest, even from the fore-end therof to the hinder end, fixe inches broade and two inches thicke, or some what more in the middle therof where it is thickest : then groping the Crest with your hands, to pare the thickest part therof, till it come all to one thinnesse, then holding the horse still fast bound, to cover al the place with great handfulls of Swines dung prepared for the purpose, and hold it to the sore place an-houre together, until the bloud be stanchèd : Then let the Horse arise, and leade him into the Stable, tying him in such sort, that he may neither rubbe his necke nor lye downe : then the next morning take good store of burnt Allome beaten to powder, and strow it all over the sore place, and so let him stand for two dayes after without any stirring, lest the wound should bleed againe : then at the end of these two dayes you shall bathe the sore gently with a fine Linnen cloath, dipt in warme Vrine, and then drying the sore, againe throw more burnt Allome upon it, and after annoynt all about the out-side of the edges of the sore with Vnguentum Album Camphoratum, more then an inch broade : thus you shall dresse him every day once on that side of the Crest which did fall: then for the contrary.

trary side you shal draw his maine thereon, and plat it in many plates: which done, you shall to those plats with thongs of leather, fasten a cudgel of a foote and a halfe long: then to the middest of that cudgell you shall hang a peece of Lead with a hole in it, of such weight as will poize the Crest up even, and hold it in his right place: then shall you draw his Crest on that side the weight hangs with a hot drawing Iron, even from the toppe of the Crest, downe to the point of the shoulder, making divers stroakes one an inch and an halfe from another: Then shall you lay upon the burnt places a plaister of pitch, Tarre, and Rozen, molten together, and so let the weight hang till all the sore places bee healed, and there is no question but the Crest will stand both upright and strongly.

### CHAP. XLIIII.

*A certaine and approved way, how  
to raise up the Crest that  
is falne.*

**T**He most infallible and certaine way to raise up, and to keepe when it is so risen a Crest that is falne: Is first to raise up the falne Crest with your hand, and to place it in such wise as you would have it, and it ought to stand: then having one standing on the same side the Crest falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Crest, and with the other thrust out the bottome or foundation of the Crest, so as it may stand upright: then on that side

to which it falleth, with an hot Iron ( some-what broad on the edge ) draw his necke first at the bottome of the Crest, then in the middest of the Crest, and lastly at the setting on of the haire, and be sure to draw it through the skinne, but bee sure no deeper, for this will inlarge and open the skinne.

Then on the other side ( from whence the Crest falleth ) gather up the skinne with your hand, and with two plaisters of Shoo-makers Waxe laid one against another at the edge of the wound, and with smooth splints to stay the skinne, that it may shrinke neither upward nor downward, then with a paire of sharpe Syzers clippe away all the spare skinne which you had gathered up with your hand, then with a needle and some red silke, stich the skinne together in divers places, and to keepe the skinne from breaking, stich the edges of the plaister together also, then annoynt the sore with Turpentine, Honey and Waxe molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot Iron, with peece-grease made warme. And thus doe twice a day till all be whole, and have great care that your splints shrinke not.



## CHAP. XLV.

*Of the Maingenesse in a horses  
Maine.*

**T**HE Maingenesse which is in the Maine of Horse, and maketh him shed his haire, proceedeth either from the rankenesse of bloud, poverty, or lousinesse, or else of rubbing where a maingy horse hath rubbed, or else of fretting dust lying in the Maine for want of good dressing. The signs are, the apparant rubbing and itching of the horse about the Maine and Necke, and the scabbes fetting both the flesh and skinne, besides the shedding and falling away of the haire. The cure ( according to the opinion of some of our old Farriers. ) is, first let him bloud on the necke veine, and cut away all the haire from the scabbes, then with a hot Iron as bigge as a mans finger, seare all the sore place even from the one end to the other : Then annoynt al the place you so burnt with blacke Sope, and now and then wash it with strong Lye and blacke sope mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this Manginesse onely take of fresh grease one pound, of Quick-silver halfe an ounce, of Brimstone one ounce, of Rape oyle halfe a pint, mingle them together, and stirre them continually in a pot with a slice, until the Quicke silver be so wrought with the rest, as you shall perceiue no Quicke silver therein: that done, take a blunt Knife, or an old horse-combe, and search al the maingy places therewith untill it bee raw and bloody, and then

¶ anoynt it with this oyntment in the Sun-shine, if it may be, to the intent the oyntment may sinke in, or else hold before it either a hot fire pan, or a hot barre of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the flesh, and if you see that within three dayes after thus once annoynting him hee leave not rubbing, then marke in what place he rubbeth, and dresse that place againe, and questionlesse it will serve.

#### CHAP. XLVI.

*Of the shedding of haire in the Maine.*

**H**Aire, for the most part sheddeth or falleth from the Maine of a horse by reason of certaine little Wormes which eat and fret the rootes of the haire asunder. The cure whereof is, first to anoynt the Main and crest with blacke sope, and then to make a strong lye either of running water and Ash-ashes, or else of Urine and Ashe-ashes, and with that to wash the Maine all over, and it will helpe him.

#### CHAP. XLVII.

*Of the paine and grieffe in a horses Withers.*

**B**Oth a horses Withers and also to his back-, doe happen many infirmities and Sorrances, some proceeding from inward causes, as of the corruption of humours, and sometimes of outward causes, as through the galling, pinching and wringing of some naughty Saddle, or some heavy burthen laid on the Horses backe, or such like, And of these griefes some be small, and some bee great: The small are  
onely

onely superficiall Blisters, Swellings, Light-galls, or bruifings, and are easily cured; but the great are those which pierce to the very bone, and bee most dangerous, especially if they be nigh to the backe bone. Then to speake first of the smaller gallings, whensoever you shall see any swellings to arise, either about your horses Withers, or any other part of his backe, the cure is (according to the opinion of some of the old Farriers) first of all if the place bee much swolne and festered, then to pierce it with a sharpe hot Iron in many parts on both sides of the necke, and then put into the same taints of Linnen cloath, dipt in warme Sallet Oyle, and then after to dry and heale it up with the powder of honey and Lime mixt together.

Others use to take Butter and Salt, and to boyle them together untill they be blacke, then to powre it hot on the swelling: and then to take warme horse-dung, and lay it on the fore backe untill it be whole, dressing it once a day.

Others (especially the best of the ancient Farriers) use as soone as they see any swelling to arise, to binde unto it a little hot horse dung, to see if that will assuage it; which if it will not, then to pricke it round about the swelling with a Fleime, Knife, or Lancet, yet not too deepe, but so as it may pierce the skin, and make the bloud issue forth: that done, take of Mallows, or Smallage, two or three hand-fuls, and boyle them in running water untill they bee so soft as pappe: then straine the water softly from it, and bruise the hearbs in a traine dish, putting thereunto a little hogs grease, or else sallet oyle, or sheeps

Sheepes suet, or any other fresh grease : boyle them and stirre them together, not frying them hard, but as they be soft and supple : and then with a clout lay it warme upon the sore, renewing it every day once untill the swelling be gone, for it will either drive it away or bring it to an head, which lightly chanceth not in these small swellings, except some Gristle or bone be perished. Others of the ancient Farriers use, when they see any swelling to arise about a horses backe, first to shave the place with a Razor, and then to lay therunto this plaister: take a little Wheate flower, and the white of an egge beaten together, and spread it on a linnen cloath, which being laid unto the swelling two or three dayes, and not removing will bring it to an head, and when you come to take it off, pull it away so softly as you can possible, and whereas you see the corruption gathered in a head together, then in the lowest place thereof, pierce it upward with a sharpe Iron somewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to annoynt the sore place every day once with fresh Butter and Hogges-grease untill it be whole.

Others of our later Farriers use when they see any swelling, only use to lay wet hay unto it, for that will either drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you shall lay upon it a plaister of wine lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with Wheat flower : or if you like not this medicine, then you may make a plaister of thicke Barme, as great as the sore, and renew it once a day untill the swelling be asswaged :

asswaged : but if you see that any corruption be knit together, then you shall Lance it in the nethermost part, and let out the matter : then wash the sore either with Urine, Ale, or Beere, made scalding hot ; then dry up all the moysture from the sore either with a linnen cloath, or with a sponge ; then cover all the sore over with burnt Allome beaten to powder : And thus dresse the horse once a day untill the flesh be growne up so high as you would have it, then shall you dresse the sore but once in two or three dayes. But if you see it skinneth but slowly, then may you annoynt the edge of the sore all about after it hath beene washed as aforesaid, with Unguentum Album, for that will make the skinne to come fast : but if you do perceive that by dressing it too seldome there doth begin to grow any proud flesh, then shall you take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of Unguentum Album, and annoynt all the sore places therewith once in two dayes : this will correct the proud flesh, and cause it to skinne and heale suddenly.

Others use for the abating of these swellings, to boyle Mallowes in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the swelling : and if the swelling doe breake, wash it with pisse, and powre hot molten butter upon it. Others use to shave away the haire, and then to lay very hot unto it a handfull of Leekes stampt and mixt with Boares grease, or else to take a turfe of earth burned red, & laid to as hot as the horse can suffer it. Others use to take nettles beaten to peeces, and mixt with hot Urine, and so lay it on hot, and then set on the saddle : and then if after two or three dayes dressing.

dressling the swelling breake, then looke if there be any dead flesh within the sore, and either eat or cut it out: then take a pound of fresh grease, and a pound of Sallet oyle, three ounces of white Waxe, one ounce of Turpentine, and three drams of Verdigrease, melt all these together, and taint the sore therewith til it be whole: for this will both eate away the ill flesh, and incarnate good. Others take greene Coleworts and stampe them with swines grease, and then lay it plaister-wise on the sore, and it will asswage it, especially if you ride the horse a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great swelling, but onely the skinne chafed off, then you shall wash the raw place with water and salt, or else with warme wine, and sprinkle upon it the powder of honey and lime: or else the powder of Myrrhe, or the powder of burnt silke, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poast.

Other Farriers, use when onely the skinne is gald off, to take a spoonfull of thicke Creame, and to put as much Chimney soote into it as will make it thicke like an oyntment, and then to lay it upon the sore, and questionlesse it will heale it presently if the wound be not very deepe.

#### CHAP. XLVIII.

*Of any gald backe or Withers, how great soever the swelling or inflammation be.*

**I**F the swelling, pinch, wringing, or gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the backe of a horse bee extraordinary great, and much inflamed, so that there

there is now no apparant hope that it can be got away without much Apostumation, then the cure, according to the opinion of the ancientest Farriers is, to take Barme, and mixe it with so much Soote of a Chimney, and make it so thicke therewith, that it shal seeme like Tarre, and with that make a plaster, and lay it to the sore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very suddainly both draw and heale it perfectly.

Others use to take a handfull of bay salt, & a handfull of great and small Oate-meale, and put a quantity of old stale Vrine therto, and stirre them altogether, and temper it like pap or paste, and then make round balls thereof, then throw them in a fire, and make them red hot, then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then strow of that powder all over the sore, so oft as you shal see any part therof bare, and it wil heale it. Other Farsiers use if they see the swelling to be any thing great, first to draw round about the swelling with a hot Iron, and then crosse him with the same Iron, in manner of this figure: then take a round hot Iron, having a sharpe point, and thrust it up into the swelling on each side upwards towards the poynt, of the withers, or toppe of the backe, to the intent that the matter may issue downwards at both the holes: that done, taint both the holes first with a taint dipt in Hogges grease to kil the fire, and also annoynt all the burnt places therewith, continuing so to doe untill the swelling be asswaged, renewing the taint every day once untill the fry matter bee fallen away:



way : then taint him againe with washed Turpentine, mingled with the yolkes of three or four egges and Saffron, renewing the taint every day once untill it be whole.

¶ But if for all this the swelling do not goe away, then it is a signe of some inward impostumation, and then it shall be good that you lance it, and let out the corruption : then take of Honey halfe a pint, of Uerdigrease two ounces beaten to powder, and mixe it together with Honey, then boyle them in a pot untill they looke red, then being luke warme, make either a taint or a plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same every day once untill it be whole. But the sore may bee so vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the shoulders, even into the body, which is most dangerous and very mortall : therefore whensoever you shall feare any such hollownesse, you shall taint the hole with Salve last mentioned, and thrust after it a good piece of dry sponge, as well to keepe the hole open, as also to sucke out the corruption, and this you shall renew once a day untill the sore be whole.

Other of our late Farriers use to take Butter, Vineger, and bay salt, and melting them together, lay it to the sore warme untill it breake, then strow upon it either Soot or the powder of Clay Wal ; but if it be much festred, then take a pottle of Verjuyce, two peny worth of greene Copperas, and boyle it unto a pint and a halfe : then wash and searsh the hollownesse therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and  
fo



so let it remaine three daies untouched, then wash it with the same water againe, and fill the hole againe with red Lead, and so every other day wash it with that Water, and lay red Lead thereon, and it will heale the forest backe whatsoever. Now all these medicines already rehearsed are sufficient enough for the healing of any gall backe whatsoever; yet forasmuch as divers Farriers hold divers opinions, and thinke what they know to be onely best approved, and in asmuch as you shall not bee ignorant of any mans skil or Knowledge, which beareth any ground of reason in it, I will repeate you a Catalogue of other medicines which assuredly are all good in their kinds, and you may use them as occasion shall be administered.

First then know, that the powder of Bryer leaves will dry and heale up any gall'd backe. Also Rye flower, the white of an Egge, Honey, Barley straw burnt, and Soote, will dry up and heale a sore backe: The powder of Hony and unsleackt Lime will skin any gal: the powder of wild Cowcumpers dryed in an Oven will heale any gall, provided the sore be First washed with vineger. Onions boyled in Water, and layd hot to a swolne horses backe, will asswage the swelling, and the yolke of an Egge, Salt, and Vineger beaten together, will heale it when it is broken, provided that you wash the sore first with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath beene sod. The Soot or grime of a brasse pot, the powder of the bone of a Crabfish, or the powder of Oyster-shells, any of these will dry and skin a gall'd backe.

Lastly, and besides it, a man needeth no more  
medi-

☞ medicines ) for this purpose, take hay and boyle it in strong Urine, and lay it to the swelled place, and it will either asswage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter, then stop the hole with Rozen, Waxe, and fresh grease molten together; but if you find any dead flesh to grow within the sore, then eate it out either with Verdigrease beaten to powder, and strowed thereon, or else with Mercury calcinan, called of some precipitate, being likewise strowed on the proud flesh; and when the proud flesh is gone, you may dry up the sore onely with the powder of Rozen, and nothing else. See further for this disease in the new Addition, for the Fistula marked thus ☞

#### CHAP. XLIX.

##### *Of a Canker in the Withers of a horse.*

**I**F a horse after hee hath beene violently wrung upon the Withers, be suffered to goe unlooked to, and that the sore breaketh upwards through its own violence, yet the great substance of the matter or corruption descending and rotting still downward, it cannot chuse but breed to a Cankerous and vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fistula, which you shall know by these signes: First, the matter that issueth from the sore, will bee sharpe, hot, and watrish, lye fretting the haire away where it runneth downe, and about the hole of the sore will bee a kind of spongi-ous proud, dead flesh, which stoppeth the passage of the grosse matter. Now the cure of this cankerous sore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers,

ers, to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the ulcer, so that you may see into the hollownesse; then cut out all the dead flesh til you come to the Quicke, then take a quart of old stale urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt: then boyle it well on the fire, then haveing cleansed the sore either with a Cloath, or a Whispe of hay, wash it wel with the Liquor: then take the yolkes of foure Egges, and a peny-worth of Uerdigrease, and a spoonful of flower, and make a playster thereof, and lay it to the sore, dressing him in this sort once a day until it be whole.

Others of our antient and latter Farriers use to take of the strongest Beere a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Allome: and halfe a handful of Sage, seeth it to the one halfe, then take out the Sage Leaves, and with the rest dresse the horse once a day, and it will heale any rankerous sore in that part whatsoever.

#### CHAP. L.

*Of the Stickefast, or Sit fast hornes, or hard bonbs growing under the Saddle.*

**T**Hese stickfasts, sitfasts, or hornes that grow in a horses skin under the Saddle, is a certaine dead skin like a hard peece of Leather, growing fast in the flesh: it commeth of some old bruise, which not impostumating, the skinne falleth dead, and sticketh hard and fast to the flesh.

The cure is, take either a sharpe crooked instrument made for the purpose, or else a long nayle with the poynt turned inward, and catching hold on the  
Y
edge

edge of the dead skinne, or horne, which will clappe or rise from the sound skin, and with a sharpe knife cut away all the dead, hard skinne from the sound flesh: and if when it is cut out, the hollownesse be somewhat deepe, then you shall heale it up by pouring hot molten Butter into it evening and morning: then when the flesh is made even, dry and skinne it either with the powder of Hony and Lime, or with Soote and Breame mixt together. Others use first to annoynt the sticke fast or hard skinne with fresh butter or Hogges grease, until it be mollified and made soft, so as you may either cut them or pull them away, and then wash the wound either with meane vrine, or with white Wine, and then drye it up with the powder of Oyster-shells, or of Bolearmonicke.

#### CHAP. LI.

*Of wennes or knobs growing about the  
Saddle skirts.*

**T**He Wennes or knobs which grow about the saddle skirts, do most commonly grow betwixt two Ribs, and do ever proceed of old bruises. And the cure is; first, to mollifie them by annoynting them twice or thrice a day with Hogges grease, for more then a weeke together, and sometimes to bathe them with hot Wine lees: but if in that space it will come to no head, then launce it from the middle downward, and taint it with washed Turpentine, yolkes of egges and Safron mingled as well together as is before shewed, renewing the taint every day once; untill  
the

the sore bee sufficiently and perfectly healed. Looke unto the cure for the splent, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

CHAP. LII.  
Of the Navel-gall.

**T**He Navel gal is when a horse at any time is bruised on the top of the Chine of the backe, behind the Saddle, right against the Navel, whence it taketh the name: it commeth either by splitting of the Saddle behind, or for lacke of stuffing, or by means of the Crupper buckle sitting downe in that place, or through some hard Weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle: of al bruising on the backe, it is the most vile and dangerous, and you shal perceiue it by the puffed up and spungy flesh looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the sore. The cure thereof is, according to some of the ancient Farriers. first to cut away all the dead or proude flesh even to the bone, then burne a hole foure inches lower then the Navel-gall, and put a Rowel of horse haire through it: then take the powder of Oyster-shells, or of any old shooe-sole burnt and strow it on the sore, and ever as it waxeth moyst, put on more powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel-gal to take the white of an egge, wheate flower, honey, mustard and sope, of each like quantity, and mixing them together, make a playster therof, and after the dead flesh is taken out, and the sore washt with Ale, butter, and Vrine then lay on the playster: and if the proud flesh be-

gin to grow againe, then the powder of an old burnt thooe, or Nerve oyle, or Verdigrease, will kill it, and the powder of Oyster-shells will skin it. Other of the auntient Farriers use, after they have cut out all the Rotten and dead flesh, to take the white of an egge and salt beaten together, and lay that playster-wise to the sore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the space of two dayes; then take of honey a quarterne of a pint, and of Verdigrease one ounce beaten into powder, and boyle them together in a pot stirring it still untill it looke Red, and being luke-warme, make a playster with Tow, and clappe it to the wound, washing and cleansing wel the Wound first with a little warme vinegar or white wine, continuing so to do once a day untill it begin to heale and to skinne; then drye it up with sprinkling thereon this powder following : Take of honey a quarterne, and as much of onfleckt-Lime as will thicken the honey, and make it like a paste, and in a fire-pan over the Fire, stirre it still untill it be hard baked, so as it may be beaten into powder : but ever before you throw on the powder wash the Wound first with warme Vinegar, continuing so to doe untill it be perfectly skinned. Others use to heale this gall by laying on the sore, a playster of Chimney foot and Barme mixt together, or else mixe nettle seeds and Sallet oyle together. and annoynt the sore therewith.

There be others which use onely to wash the sore with warme Vrine and Salt, and then to annoynt the place with fresh grease and salt mixt together, or else to take of betony, powder of Brimstone, Elibor, pitch, and old grease, of each like quantity, and stamp them together.

together, and when you have washed the sore with old Urine, then annoynt it with this oyntment untill it be whole. See also for this disease in the new Additions for the Fistula, thus marked.  $\text{L}^{\text{r}}$ .

## CHAP. LIII.


*Of the swaying in the backe.*

**A** Horse is said to be swaid in the backe, when either by too great a burthen, or by some slippe, straine, or over hasty and straight turning, he hath taken an extreame Wrinch in the lower part of his backe below his short Ribbes, and directly betweene his fillets: the signes whereof are a continuall reeling and rouling of the horses hinder parts in his going, and also hee will falter many times, and sway sometimes backwards, and sometimes sidelong, and bee ready to fall even to the ground, besides, the horse being laid, will with a great deale of difficulty rise up againe.

The cure, according to the opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, to take of the fat of the fruite of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozen foure ounces, of Pitch foure ounces, of Bolearmonicke one ounce, and of Sanguis Draconis halfe an ounce: incorporate all these well together, and lay it playsterwise all over the Reines of the horses backe, not taking it by any meanes away untill it fall off.

Others of our owne Farriers use first to cover the horses backe with a sheeps skinne comming hot from the Sheeps backe, laying the fleshly side next to his

backe, and then lay a warme houffing cloath upon the same, to keepe his backe as hot as may be, and so let it continue untill it begin to smell: then take the old skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing so to doe the space of three weekes, and if he amend not with this, then draw his backe with a hot Iron right out on both sides of the ridge of his backe, from the pitch of the buttocke, unto a handfull within the saddle: and then againe over-thwart, according to this figure, and let every



Line bee an inch one from another, neither let the stroke be deepe, and burned no more then that every one may looke yellow: then lay upon the burning this charge or plaister: take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen halfe a pound, of Bole-armonicke halfe a pound made into powder, and half a pint of Tarre, and boyle all these together in a pot, and stirre it till every thing be molten and thoroughly mingled together, then being luke warme, daube all the burning therewith very thicke, and thereupon clap as many flockes of the horses colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it selfe: and if it bee in Summer you may turne the horse to grasse.

## CHAP. LIV.

*Of speciall weaknesse in the backe.*

According to the opinion of our oldest Farriers (though my selfe have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kind of weakenesse belonging



ing to a horses backe, which they call the fretting or biting of the Reines, which doe proceede from abundance of humours resorting to that place, whereby all the hinder parts of the horse doe lose their feeling and strength, and such Horse falleth downe to the ground : yea, and the humours many times resorting to the heart, doe suffocate the same, and in two or three houres doe cause the horse to dyc. The cure, according to the opinion, is first to let the horse bloud abundantly in the necke veine, and to draw his backe with a hot Iron, in such sort, as is declared in the last Chapter, and then to make him swim a pretty while in some River : then Rowell him upon the haunches neere unto the huckle bones, and then to annoint the sore place with Hoggs grease, and three leaved Grasse stamped together untill he be whole.

#### CHAP. LV.

##### *Of the swelling of the Cods or Stones.*

**T**HIS kinde of swelling or inflammation of the cods commeth either by some wound received, or by the stinging, or else biting of some venemous beast, or else by some great straine either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one horse with another. The cure is, according to the opinion of the most ancient Italian Farriers, first to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath beene sodden the rootes of wild Cowcumbers and Salt, and then to annoint it with an oyntment made of oyle, Goats grease, and

the white of an Egge, or else to bathe the Cod in warme water, Nitrum, and Vinegar mingled together, and also to bee annoynted with an oyntment made of Chalke, or of potters earth, Oxedung, Comin, Water and Vinegar mingled together : or else to be annoynted with the juyce of the Hearbe called Night-shade, or with the juyce of Hemlocke, which grows on dunghils : and if need require, to let him blood on the flanke-veines. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Disease commeth ofttest after some sicknesse or surfeit with cold, being a signe of amendment from that sicknesse, doth cure it in this sort : take of Beane flower, Wheat-meale, Comin, and hogges grease, of each like quantity, and making a plaister thereof, spread it all over the Horses cods and stones. Others boyle Groundsell in Wine Vinegar, and so bathe the horses cods therewith : or else take a quart of good Ale wort, and set it on the fire with crummes of browne Bread strongly leavened, and better then a handfull of Comin made into powder : then with beane flower make a plaister of them all, and apply it to the grieve as hot as can be suffered : or if this helpe not, take Cowes dung, and seeth it in milke, and lay it upon the swelling as hot as may bee, and it will asswage it. But if this inflammation proceed from rankenesse of Seede, which you shall see by the much moyst sliminesse of his yard, then you shall first make him cover a Mare, then keepe him without provender, and let him bloud above the great veine, which is betweene his lippes, and lay therto hard Egges, beaten in his owne dung, and make a playster of the same, and lay it  
to

to his Cods, and once a day wash his Cods with cold water.

Other ancient Farriers use to let the Horse blood in his flanke-veines, and then take of oyle of Roses and of Vinegar, of each halfe a pint, of Bolearmonicke halfe a quarterne beaten to powder, mixe them together in a cruze, and being luke-warme annoynt the coddles therewith, with two or three feathers bound together: and the next day ride him into the water, so as his Coddles may be within the water, giving him a turne or two therein; and so returne faire and softly home unto the stable: and when the horse is dry, annoynt him againe as before, and doe this every day untill the Horse bee whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this disease may come by meanes of evill humours and corrupt bloud, which resort unto the Cods, and then the cure is, to cover all the Coddles over with a charge made of bolearmonicke and vinegar wrought together, renewing it every day once untill the swelling goe away, or that it breake of it selfe, and if it breake, then to taint it with Mel Rosatum, and make him a breech of Canvase to keepe it in, renewing the taint every day once untill it be perfectly well.

## CHAP. LVI.

*Of incording, or bursting, or the rupture  
in horses.*

**T**His Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this incording or burstnesse in horses, is when the rim or thin filme which holdeth the guts up in a horses body is broken, so that the guts fall downe either into the Cods of the horse, or into the horses flanke, as I have seen divers : Now this burstnesse commeth either by some stripe or blow of another horse, or else by some straine in leaping over a Hedge or a Ditch, or by teaching a horse to bound when he is too young, or when a Horse goeth himselfe upon some pole or stake, or by forcing a horse when he is full to runne beyond his strength, or by stopping a horse too suddainly upon naughty and hollow ground, whereby the stradling and slipping of his hinder feet, may stretch or teare the rimme.

The signes to know this Sorrance before it be apparant to the eye, are, : the horse will forsake his meate, and stand shoaring or leaning alwayes on that side that hee is hurt, and on that side, if you search with your hand, betwixt the stone and the thigh, upward to the body, and somewhat above the stone, you shall finde the guts it selfe big and hard in the feeling : Whereas on the other side you shall find no such thing:

Now for the cure, although for mine owne part

I both do and shall ever hold it uncurable, as long as a horse is a beast without reason, yet for your satisfaction I will not sticke to repeate what the best Farriers, and my selfe have practised, in as much as it worketh much good, though no absolute cure.

The cure then is, to bring the horse into some house or place which hath over head a strong baulke or beame going over-thwart, and strow that place thicke with straw, then put on foure strong pasterns with foure rings on his feete, and fasten one end of a long rope to one of those rings, then threede all the other rings with the loose end of the rope, and so draw all his foure feete together, and cast him on the straw, that done, cast the rope over the baulke, and hoyst the horse so as he may lye flat on his backe, with his legges upward without strugling; then bathe his stones well with warme water and butter molten together, and the stones being somewhat warme and well mollified, rayse them up from the body with both your hands, being closed by the fingers close together, and holding the stones in your hands in such manner, worke downe the gut into the body of the horse, by striking it downewards continually with your two thumbes, one labouring immediatly after another, untill you perceive that side of the stone to be so small as the other: and so having returned the guts into his right place, take a list of two fingers broade, throughly annointed with fresh Butter, and tye his stones both together with the same, so nigh the body as may be, yet not over hard, but so as you may put your finger betweene: that done, take the horse quietly downe, and leade him gently  
into

into the stable, where he must stand warme, and not be stirred for the space of three Weekes : but forget not the next day, after you have placed his gut in his true place, to unloosen the List and to take it away, and as well at that time, as every day once or twice after, to cast a dish or two of cold water up into his cods, and that will make him to shrink up his stones, and thereby restrain the Gut from falling downe ; and at the three weeks end, to make your cure so much the surer, it were not amisse to geld the stone on that side a way, so shall he hardly be bursten againe on that side : and during the cure, let him not eat much, nor drinke much, and let his drinke be alwaies warme.

CHAP. LVII.

*Of the Botch in the groines of a Horse.*

**I**T is the opinion of the best Horse-leaches, that if a grosse horse which is full of humours, be suddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will resort into the weakest part, and there gather together and breed a botch, and especially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighes, not farre from the Cods. The signes are, the hinder legges will be all swolne, specially from the Cambrels or hooves upward, and if you feele with your hand, you shal finde a great knob or swelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

**X**The cure according to the generall practise is, first to ripen it with this plaister, take of wheate flowr, of Turpentine, and of honey of each like quantity stirring  
ring

ring it together to make a stiffe playster : and with a cloath lay it to the sore, renewing it once every day until it breake or waxe soft : and then launce it, so as the matter may runne downeward, then taint it with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, renewing it every day once, untill it be perfectly whole.

CHAP. LVIII.

*A most certaine and approved cure for  
the Botch in the Groine, or any  
Impostumation.*

**A**S soone as you perceiue the swelling to appeare, lay upon it a playster of Shoo-makers Waxe spread upon Allome Leather, and let it lye untill the sore grow soft : then open it with a Lancet, or let it breake of it selfe : when the filth is come out, wash the sore very well with strong Allome Water, then taint it with the oyntment called *Ægyptiacum* till it be whole.

CHAP. LIX.

*Of the Itch, Scab, or Mainginesse in the Tayle, or  
generall falling of the haire.*

**H**Orses, through the corruption of blood, or the fulnesse of ranke feeding, or through overheating and labouring, or by the infection of others horses, do many times get the generall scab, itch, or mainginesse in the tayle, and sometimes in the spring times horses are often troubled with the Truncheon  
Wormes.

wormes in their fundament, which will make them rub their tayles, and fret the haire, yet are free both from mange and scurfe. Wherefore if then you onely take the horse with your hand annoynted with sope, and pull out the wormes, you shall cause the horse to leave his rubbing: but if you perceive the haire to shed and fall from the Tayle, through some small wormes that grow at the rootes of the haire, or through some little fretting scurfe, then you shall annoint all the tayle with sope even to the ground, and then wash it with very strong lye after, and that will both kil the wormes, and scoure out the scurfe: but if much of the tayle be falne away, then you shall keepe the tayle continually wet with a sponge dipt in faire water, and that will make the haire to grow very fast. Now if in the horses tayle shall grow any Canker, which will consume both the flesh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one, then you shall wash all his tayle with Aquafortis, or strong Water made in this sort. Take of Greene Copperas and of Allome, of each one pound, of white Copperas a quarter, boyle all these together in three quarts of running water, in a very strong earthen pot, untill the one halfe be consumed: and then with a little of this Water being made luke warme, Wash his tayle with a little clout or flax bound to the end of a sticke, continuing so to do every day once, till it be whole. But if as I said before, through the corruption of bloud, food, or labour; this scab, itch, or maingeness, spread universally into many parts of the tayle, you shall then likewise wash it with the same strong water untill it be whole.

CHAP.



## CHAP. LX.

*Of the generall Scab, Mangineffe, or leprosie,  
over the whole body.*

**T**He generall Mangineffe or Leprosie, which runneth all over the horses body, is a cankered filthy scurfe which covereth the same, proceeding from abundance of melancholly corrupt blood, ingendred by infection or unwholesome food, or else by indiscreet Labour. The signes whereof are, the horse will be all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy scurfe, full of scabs, and raw plats about the necke and flanckes, and evill favoured to looke on, and rubbing, scratching, and biting: Of all Diseases there is none more infectious, nor will more certainly kill a horse if it be not prevented.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of skilfull Farriers, is first to let the horse blood in the one side of the necke veine, and within two dayes after on the other side of the necke, and within two dayes after that in the flancke veines, and last of all in the veine under the taylor: then Wash all the sore places with Salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a Whispe of straw hard twisted, so as they may bleed well and bee all raw: that done, annoint the places with this oyntment, take of Quick-silver one ounce, of Hogges grease one pound, of Brimstone beaten into powder a quarterne, of Rape oyle a pint, mingle these things well together, untill the Quicke-silver be thoroughly incorporated with the rest, and having annoynted all the raw places with this oyntment, make it to sinke into the flesh, by holding and Waving up-  
and.

and downe over it, a hot broade bar of Iron, and then touch him no more againe the space of two or three dayes: during which time, if you see that hee rubbeth still in any place, then rub that place againe with an old horse-combe, or a haire cloath, to make it Raw, and annoynt it with fresh oyntment. But if all this will not helpe, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, so big as a mans little finger burne all the mangy places, making round holes, passing on-ly through the skin and no further: for which intent it shall bee needfull to pull the skin first from the flesh with your left hand, holding it still until you have thrust the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a span one from another, and if neede be you may annoynt those holes with a little sope, and let the horse bee very thinne dyeted, during this curing time.

Now for mine owne part, I doe utterly dislike this burning, for it is a foule manner of cure, and breedeth much eye sore in the horse, and therefore other of our latter Farriers use for this disease, after the horse is let bloud in the necke veine, to take a good quantity of fresh grease, and mixe it well with the powder of Chalke, then put therto a good quantity of the powders of Brimstone and Elicampane Rootes, and stirre them all well together, and take a pretty quantity of Quicke silver, and kill it with your fasting spittle, or Sallet oyle, and mixe it with all the rest very wel together; and so annoint all the sore places about the horse with this oyntment. Others use to take of Lampe oyle, the fine powder of Brimstone, of blacke sope, of Tar, of hoggs grease, and the soot of a Chimney

ney, of each like quantity, and then mixe them all well together, by boyling them on the fire, and then annoynt all the sore places therewith, as hot as the Horse can indure or suffer it; alwayes provided that the horse be let blood before you use the oyntment.

Others use after the horse is let blood, to take of oyle de bay a pound, and of Quicke-silver one ounce, and mixing them together, never leave stirring thereof, till the Quicke-silver bee killed and incorporated with the oyle, then annoynt all the sore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers use first to let the horse blood, then to wash all the sore places within two dayes after with water wherein young Broom, or the hearbe of Arsmart hath beene well sod in, and smally chopt and mixt with a little Soote, and rub him well untill the sore places bleed; then take a pound of blacke Sope, a pottle of keene Mustard, foure peny worth of brimstone made into powder, three peny worth of Quicke-silver well killed with fresh grease, two peny worth of Verdigrease, a quarter of a pinte of grease, stirre all these together in a vessel till the grease and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithall annoynt all the sore places, and with once annointing, and twice washing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers use, if the horse be young, to let him blood on both sides the necke, and then to cut the skinne downe the middst of his forehead two fingers in length, then with a cornet open the skin an  
Z. inch

inch wide on both sides the slit, and put therein thin slices of the greene roote of Elicampane, or Angelica, which is better: so let them remaine under the skinne till the matter rot, then crush it forth after two or three dayes, and in twelve dayes the rootes wil fall out as it healeth, and this wil cure the Mange, provided, that you annoynt all the sore p[ar]ts with the powder of Brimstone, verdigrease, and oyleolive, mixt upon a fire very well together. Others use after bloud letting, to rowel the horse under the necke, that the evill humours may issue forth, then to rubbe all his body quite over with an hard haire cloath, or an old curry combe, until the horse bleedeth: after that take of Sulphur, Salt, and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beate them and temper them with very strong vinegar, and as much common oyle, and therewith annoynt al the sore places: or else take very strong Wine vinegar, the urine of a boy under twelve yeares of age, and the juyce of Hemlocke, mixe them together, and wash the Horse therewithall.

Other Farriers use after bloud-letting, to annoynt the horse with one of these Oyntments, the sore having bin before rubbed til it bleed, either with brimstone, Oyle, Vinegar, Salt, Soote, swines-dung, and unsleckt Lime, of each like quantity, wel mixt and boyled together; or else with brine Water sod with nettles, or else with Vinegar, Allome, and Salt-niter, boyled together, or else wash the sore with Beefe-broath, then boyle pepper beaten to powder, Verdigrease, and Chervel in fresh grease, and annoynt the horse all over therewith, holding a Chaffing-disk  
and

and coales, or a hot bar of Iron to his body, to make the oyntment sinke in.

Lastly, and as good as any of the rest, after the horse hath been let blood, take an old curry combe, or a wool-card, and rub every sore place about the horse till it bleed, then take of the oldest pisse you can get, a pottle, and of greene Copperas three quarters of a pound; mixe and stir them well together; then set them on the fire, and boyle them a while, then as hot as the horse can suffer it wash him with the same: after his washing is a little dryed, take of oyle one ounce and a halfe, of Quicke silver two ounces, of white Elleborus one ounce, with a good quantity of Swines grease, mingle all these well together, till no part of the Quicke silver can be seene, and then annoynt the horse all therewith: and if the first time doe not cure him, the second will most assuredly, provided that during the time of cure you keepe the Horse with a very thin dyet.

#### CHAP. LXI.

*Two most excellent and approved medicines (espially the laiter) for the foulest Mange or Leprosie, that can possibly happen to any horse.*

**T**Ake Hogges grease, Bay-salt, Worm wood, and Rew of each a pretty quantity, stampe them together wel in a mortar, and when it is brought to one entire salve, stoppe it hard into the horses Eares, then either bind them up, or stitch them together, that the medicine may not fall out: and doe thus three or foure dayes together, and it will not onely

cure the Mangy, but any foule Farcy whatsoever.

The second medicine, and most assured for the Mangy is, to take fresh grease, and yellow or white Arsnicke, and mixe them very well together till it come to a pale yellow salve, then your horse having bin let blood, and all the scurfe taken away, either with an old curry combe, or such like hard thing, so as the sore places may lye raw, then annoynt them all over with this oyntment, and let the horse stand so tyed, that hee may by no means touch any part of his body with his mouth, and when hee hath stood thus two or three houres, then take old Urine warmed, and wash away all the oyntment, and then give the horse his meate : thus dresse the horse twice or thrice at the most, and it is sufficient for any Mange whatsoever.

#### CHAP. LXII.

*How to know when a horse halteth before, and in what part his grieffe is.*

**T**Here is nothing more necessary for any mans understanding that shall have occasion at any time to use a horse, especially for the skilfull Farrier, then to know the reason why a horse halteth, and where the grieffe remained, as well because those griefes lye most concealed, as also because our Kingdome is so very full of subtill unconscionable horse-courers, that they are carefull most to conceale that which may soonest cozen their Neighbours : you shall know then that no horse halteth before, but his grieffe must be either in his shoulders, in his legges,

or

or in his feete : if it be in his shoulders, it must either be on the toppe of his shoulder blades, which we call the Withers, or at the bottome of the shoulder-blade joyning to the marrow-bone, which is the fore-pitch of the breast, or in the Elbow of the horse, which joynes the neather end of the marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the generall knowledge whether the griefe be in the shoulder or no, looke if the horse doe not lift up his legge, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the shoulder and is a new hurt : if hee cast his legge more out in his going then the other, and that almost with an unbended knee, then it is also in the shoulder, and it is an old hurt : if you take him by the headstall of the bridle ; and turne him as short as you can possible of both hands, if then you see him when he is turned on the lame side, to favour his legge very much ( as he cannot chuse but doe ) then also his griefe is in his shoulder : or if when a horse standeth in the stable, hee stretcheth out his fore-legge, and setteth it more forward then the other, it is partly a signe the griefe is in the shoulder, but not absolutely.

Now when you know generally that the griefe or paine is in the shoulder, then you shall learne to know in what part of the shoulder, as thus : if the horse halteth more when the rider is upon his backe, that when he is off, then the griefe is in the top of the Withers: if when with your hand you gripe and handle him upon the toppe of the shoulder blades, you findeth that he shrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you ( not having any gald backe before, for that  
Z 3 may

may deceive you ) then assuredly the grieve is on the Withers. If the horse goeth bowing unto the ground and tread his steps very thicke, then it is a signe the grieve is in his breast, betweene the nether part of the spade-bone, and the upper part of the marrow bone, and therefore if with your thumbe you presse him hard in that part, you shall see him shrink, and be ready to fall down.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your hand betwixt your finger and your thumbe, and gripe it, the horse presently taketh his foote from the ground and lifts up his legge, offering therewithall to bite or snappe at you, then the grieve is onely in the Elbow.

Now if the grieve whereof a horse halteth bee in his legge, it is either in his Knee, in his Shanke, or else in the pastorn joynt : If it be either in his knee or pastorne joynt, hee will not bow them in his going like the other, but will goe very stifly upon them : If the paine or grieve be in the Shanke, then it is by meanes of some Splent, screw, Windegall, or such apparant grieve, most apparant to bee beheld.

Now if the grieve of his halting be in his foote, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heele, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the sole of the foote ; if it bee in the Cronet, either the grieve will be apparant, the skinne being broken or swolne some manner of way, or else laying your hand upon the Cronet it will burne and glow exceedingly, and then hee hath got some straine of the joynt within the hoofe : if it bee in the Heele, as by over-reach, or otherwise, then



it is to bee seene, and he will tread altogether upon the toe: if upon any of the quarters, which is to be understood from the middle-hoofe to the heele, then going on the edge of a banke or Hilly ground, hee will halt more then on the plaine ground, and by the horses comming towards you, and going from you upon such edge or banke, you shall perceive whether his griefe be in the inward quarter or outward quarter: Also hee may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of a Nayle, and then you shall with a paire of pinsons nippe the head of every Nayle and his Hoofe together, and where he complaineth there draw the Naile, and if the Nayle sink, then there is his paine. If hee halt in the toe, which is seldome or never seene, then he will tread altogether upon his heele: if his griefe be in the Soale of his Foote, as by the treading upon some nayle or stub, or by surbayting or such like, then hee wil halt all after one sort, upon any ground whatsoever, unlesse it be upon the stone, and then he wil halt the most.

Now to be sure in what part of the foote the griefe is, it shall be good, first to make him goe upon the plaine ground, and then upon a hard and stoney way, and after upon a Banky ground, and by taking careful notes, and carefull handling him, you shall easily see of what member he halteth.

## CHAP. LXIII.

*Of halting behind, and where the  
griefe is.*

**I**F a horse halt behinde, his griefe of necessity must either bee in his hippe ( of some called the huckle bone ) or in the stiffe, in the Hough, in the Hamme, in the Legge, in the neather joynt, in the pastorne, or in the foot. If hee halt in the hippe of any new hurt, the Horse will goe side-long, and not follow so well with that Legge as with the other, neither will hee be able to turne upon that side without much favouring of his Legge. : But if it be any old hurt, then the fore lippe will shrink, and be lower then the other, and it is best seene when he goeth up a hill, or upon the edge of some Banke, so as the worst Legge may goe on the higher side, for then hee will halt so much the more, because it is very painfull unto him to goe so unevenly wrinching his Legge ; if the griefe be in the stiffe, then the Horse iu his going will cast the stiffe joynt outward, and the bone on the inside will be somewhat bigger then the other, neither can hee any more then touch the ground with his toe : if his griefe be in his hoofe, then it is by meanes of some Spaven, which is apparant both to bee seene and felt, or else of some straine or blow : and then the swelling will most evidently appeare : And the like is to bee said of the Hamme, wherein may be seene the Sellander, or such like apparant Sorrance, causing the horse to halt) : If the griefe be  
either

either in the Legge, Pastorne, or Foot, you shall finde it by such signes as have bin taught you in the former Chapter.

## CHAP. LXIV.

*How to know if a horse have any hidden grieffe in him that maketh him to halt, when he commeth to travaile, and whence it proceedes.*

**N**OW for as much, as there are some horses which through long rest and running at Grasse, will weare out the worst of their griefes, so that when they come to bee but gently ridden they will cover their halting, and through a naturall awe they bear unto the man, will, whilst he is on their backes, goe as if they were as sound as might bee, yet bee truly of themselves very unperfect: in this case, both to keepe your selfe from couzening, and to discover the most hidden infirmity, you shall first take the horse out of the stable in a long string, and causing one to runne him in his hand, at the length of the halter, marke how he sets downe his Leggs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour: but if at first he goe upright, and favour no Leg, then take his backe and ride him a while roundly up and downe a rode, then light from his backe, and let him stand still an houre, then as before, let him be runne in a mans hand, at the halters length, without any man on his backe: and beleeve it is a most certaine rule, if he have the least grieffe that may be, he will then shew it, and favour

vour that limbe which is most pained or grieved : for by this rule onely are many bad Horse courfers discovered.

Now to know whereof these griefes proceede you shall understand, that if the griefe proceede of a hot cause, then the horse halteth most when he travelleth or is chafed. But if it proceed from cold causes, then he halteth most when he is cold, and least when he is hot and much travailed.

#### CHAP. LXV.

##### *Of the griefe and pinching in the shoulder.*

**T**HE griefe or pinching of the horses shoulder, commeth either by labouring and straining the horse too young, or by the carriage of too great burthens. It is to be known by the narrownesse of the breast, and by the Consumption of the flesh of the shoulders, in so much that the sore part of the shoulder-bone will sticke out and bee much higher then the flesh, and if it bee of any longer continuance, he will be very hollow upon the Brisket towards the fore-boothes, and he will goe wider beneath at the feete then at the knees. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to make a slit of an inch long, with a sharpe knife, upon both sides, an inch under the shoulder-bone, and blowing the skinne well from the flesh, with a Swannes quill, both of the one and the other shoulder, even up to the top of the Withers, and stroaking the Winde up equally with your hand, into both the shoulders, and then when they are full, sticke the Windy places

places with a Hazell sticke over all the shoulder ; then loosening the skinne from the flesh againe, Rowell both the slits, either with tampins of horse haire, or with round peeces of the upper Leather of an olde shoe, with a hole in the middest, which is called a French Rowell, for the matter to issue forth at, and let the tampins bee at least two handfuls long in the skinne, and the round Rowell at least three inches broad, and being so put as they may lye plaine and flat within the cut, then once a day you shall turn the Rowels into the skin, and thrust out the matter: but if the hole grow so straight that the matter cannot easily come out, with a sharpe knife you shall enlarge it then put a paire of Pastorns on his fore-legges, and so let him stand fifteene dayes, at the end whereof walke him abroad, and trye how he goeth, and if he do not goe to your liking, then continue him in the same manner other fifteene dayes, and he will goe sound.

But our best Farriers use, after they have Rowelled the horse, as is is aforesaid, then to lay this charge or plaister all over his withers, shoulders, and breast: take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tar halfe a pint, boyle all these together in a pot, and when it is somewhat cooled, take a sticke with a woollen cloath bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover or daube all the shoulder therewith: that done, clap floxe of the colour of the horse ( or as neare as you can get it ) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels cleane, and put them in againe, continuing thus to doe the space of fifteene dayes ; then take out the Rowels, and heale up the wounds  
with

with two taints of flaxe dipt in Turpentine and hoggs greafe molten together, renewing the same every day once, untill the Wounds be whole, but let the charge lye still until it fal away of it selfe ; and if you let the horse runne at grasse till he have had a Frost or two, there is no question but hee will be a great deale the sounder.

There be other Farriers which use to Rowell the Horse, as is afore-said, yet crosse-wise, that is, one over-thwart the other, then draw all the shoulder over, with a hot drawing Iron in the comliest wise you can, making many scratches downe his shoulders, then annoynt both them and the Rowels once a day with sweet Butter, and walke the Horse up and downe evening and morning, that the humours may flow to the sore places, and issue forth, and with your hands once a day, at the least, thrust out the matter : this cure is likewise to be continued the space of fifteene dayes, and then the horse will be whole : yet for mine owne part, in so much as the cure is foule, I doe not much affect it.

#### CHAP. LXVI.

##### *Of the wrench in the shoulder.*

**T**He Wrench or straine in the shoulder, commeth of some dangerous slipping or sliding, either in the Stable or abroad, or of too suddaine stopping, when a horse gallops, or by fals, either on the planks, or on slippery ground, or by too suddaine turning on unsure ground, or by going too rashly out of some doore, or by the stroake of another Horse, you shall perceive

perceive it by his trailing his legge upon the ground close after him.

The cure is, to let him blood upon the plat-veine, and take away the quantity of three pintes of blood, which blood you must save in a pot, and put therunto, first of strong vineger a quart, and halfe a dozen broken egges, shels and all, and so much wheate flower as will thicken all the liquor; that done, put thereunto of Bolearmonicke beaten into fine powder a pound, of Sanguis Draconis, two ounces, and mingle them together so as the flower may not be perceived, and if it be too stiffe, you may adde a little more vinegar; then with your hand daube all the shoulder from the maine downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels all against the haire, and let not the horse depart out of that place, untill the charge be surely fastned unto the skinne; that done, carry him into the stable, and tye him up to the racke, and suffer him not to lye downe all the day, and give him a little meate, dyeting him very moderately the space of fifteene dayes, during which time he may not stir out of his place, but onely to lye downe; and every day once refresh the shoulderpoint with this charge, laying still new upon the old; and at the fifteene dayes end leade him abroad to see how he goeth, and if he be somewhat amended, then let him rest without travelling the space of one month, and that will bring his shoulder to perfection: But if hee mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you shall rowell him, as is before shewed in the former Chapter, just upon the shoulder poynt, and so keepe him rowelled the space of fifteene dayes,  
not

not forgetting to stirre the rowell, and cleanse the Wound each other day, and then walke him up and downe faire and softly, and turne him alwaies on the contrary side to the sore : And when hee goeth upright pull out the rowell, and heale up the wound with Turpentine and hoggs grease molten together, as is before said.

But if all this will not serue, then it shal be very requisite and needful to draw him Chequer wise with a hot Iron, over all the shoulder poynt, and also to make him to draw in a Plough every day, two or three houres at the least, to settle his joynts, for the space of three weekes or a month : & if any thing will helpe, these two last remedies will set him sound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this grieffe first let the horse blood in the breast veine, and then rowel him from the nether part of the spade bone downe to the poynt of the shoulder, which done, you shall set a patten shooe upon the sound foote, and so turne the horse to grasse for the space of a month, not forgetting every other day to stirre and remove the rowels, and so thrust out the matter : Then assoone as you see him goe sound, you shall take off his patten shooe, and pul out the rowels and theu let him run stil at grasse, til he have taken a frost or two, and no doubt but he will continue sound.



## CHAP. LXVII.

*Of the Wrench in the nether joynt.*

**T**His wrinch commeth by treading his foote in some hole, or in some rough or stony way. The signs whereof are chiefly these; the horse will halt, and the toppe of his backe upon the poynts of his shoulder will bee swolne, and somewhat hard to handle.

The cure is, take of blacke Sope halfe a pound and having made it hot in a pan, take a handfull or two of Tow, and dip it into the Sope, then lay it very hot over all the horse Withers, then clape a plaister of Waxe, Turpentine, and hogges grease molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warme cloaths, and keepe the joynts as warme as may be. thus let him stand twenty foure houres ere you dresse him againe, and continue this manner of dressing for fifteene dayes, and the horse will goe soundly.

Now there bee other ancient Farriers, that instead of this blacke Sope will take Wine Lees, and Wheate flower mingled together, and making a plaister thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and so renew it once a day untill the horse goe sound.

## CHAP. LXVIII.

*Of splaiting the shoulder, or of shoulder torne.*

**T**He splaiting of the shoulder, is when by some dangerous slippe or slide, either upon the side of some banke, or upon the plaunchers, the horse hath his shoulder parted from his breast, and so leaves an open clift, not in the skinne, but in the flesh and film next the skin, whereby the horse halteth and is not able to goe ; it is to be seene by the trailing of his leg after him in going.

The cure whereof is thus ; first put a paire of strait pastornes on his fore feete, keeping him still in the stable without disquieting of him ; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Sallet oyle one pint, of oyle de-Bay halfe a pound, of fresh butter halfe a pound ; melt all these things together in an earthen pot, and annoynt the grieved place therewith, and also round about the inside of the shoulder ; and within two or three dayes after, both that place and all the shoulder will swell, then either pricke him with a Launcet or Fleame in all the swelling places, or else with a sharpe hot Iron, and then annoynt it still with the oyntment before said ; but if you see that it will not goe away, but swell still, and gather to a head : then launce it where the swelling doth gather most, and is softest under the finger, and then taint it with flaxe dipt in Turpentine, and Hoggs grease molten together as is before shewed, renewing the taint twice a day till the sorrhance be whole.

## CHAP. LXIX.

*Of the Shoulder pight.*

**T**He shoulder pight is, when a horse by reason of some great fall, rush or straine, hath the poynt of his shoulder thrust out of joynt, which is easie to be seene, in that the poynt of the fore shoulder will sticke out much further then the other, and the horse will halt downe right. The cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is first to make him swimme in a deepe water, up and downe a dozen turnes, for that will make the joynt returne into his true place, then make two tough pins of Ashen wood as much as your little finger, being sharpe at the poynts, each one five inches long; that done, slit the skin an inch above the poynt, and an inch beneath the poynt of the shoulder, and thrust in one of these pinnes from above downe-ward, so as both the ends may equally sticke with the skin, and if the pinne of wood will not easily passe through, you may make it way first with an Iron pinne; that done, make other two holes crosse to the first holes, so as the other pinne may crosse the first pinne right in the midst, with a right crosse, and the first pinne would be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent that the other being round may passe the better without stop, and close the juster together; then take a peece of a little line somewhat bigger then a whippe-cord, and at one end make a loope, which being put over one of the pins ends, winde the rest of the line good and straight about the pins ends, so as it may lye betwixt the pins ends

and the skinne, and fasten the last end with a packe-needle and a packe-threed unto the rest of the cord, so as it may not slippe ; and to doe well, both the pinnes and the cord would be first annoynted with a little hogges grease, then bring him into the stable, and let him rest the space of nine dayes ; and let him lye downe as little as may be, and put a pastorn on the fore legge, so as it may be bound with a coard unto the foote of the manger, to keepe that legge alwaies whilest he standeth in the stable, more forward then the other, and at the nine dayes end take out the pinnes and anoynt the fore place with a little Dialthea, or with hogges grease, and then turne him to grasse. Other of our late Farriers, use first to lay good store of straw under the horse, and then put a paire of strong pastornes on his fore legges, and another on his hinder, then having throwne him upon his backe, to hang him up by the legs from the ground, with two ropes drawne over some beame or bulke, which will put the bone into his true place againe ; then having let him downe againe faire and softly, loose the fore pastorn of the sound legge, and with a cord before you let him rise, tye the same legge to the foote of the manger, so short as in his rising he shall be forced to hold his legge before him, for feare of putting his shoulder out of joynt, and let him stand so tyed for the space of three daies ; & presently when he is up, burne all the poynt of his shoulder with a hot drawing Iron chequer-wise a full foot square at the least, and let every stroke be no more then an inch distant one from another : and having burned him well, charge al these burned places,

places, and al the rest of his shoulder with pitch, rozen, and tarre molten together, and laid on something hot with a cloath tyed to a stickes end ; then clape floxe of the colour of the horse upon it, then charge him againe over the floxe, and at the three dayes end loose his foot, and put a paire of pastornes upon his feet, and let him neither lye down nor stirr out of the stable for the space of fifteene or twenty dayes : then may you lead him abroad, and see whether he go wel or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then give him as much more rest, and that wil recover him.

CHAP. LXX.

*A generall and certaine cure for any desperate and incurable, straine in the shoulder or any other hidden parts.*

**T**Ake a large earthen vessel, and fil it ful of the hearb Arsemarte and Brooke Lime, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the oldest and strongest urine that can be got, as will cover the hearbs al over, then cover the pot close, and keepe it in some safe coole place.

Now when you have occasion to use it, take an earthen pipkin, and put therinto both of the urine and the hearbs, so much as shall be convenient for the grieffe, and boyl it wel, then if it be for a shoulder straine, you shal take an old boot and cut off the foot, that you may draw it over the horses foote

and above his knee almost to the Elbow of his shoulder, keeping the neather part of the boote as close about his legge as may be, but the upper part wide and spacious; into this boote thrust all your mixture as hot as the horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about his shoulder, especially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the boote, so fasten it to the mane of the horse, that it may not slippe downe : and thus doe once a day till the grieffe depart, for this medicine is so violent, that if there be any foule matter that must come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, breake and heale it, if there be no such thing, then in as short time it wil draw away the offending humours, and give present ease.

### CHAP. LXXI.

*Of the swelling of the sore legger after great labour.*

**H**orses not much used to travaile, will after great labour swel upon their fore legges, because heate and violent excesse wil cause humours to resort downe in the legges, especially if such horses shal be inwardly fat ; for the indiscreet labour will melt that inward greafe, and make it descend downe into the leggs.

The Cure, according to the practise of some Farriers, is ; to take a pound of Nerve oyle, a pound of blacke Sope, and halfe a pound of Boares greafe molten, and boyle them all wel together, and then

then straine it and let it coole, then annoynt your horses legges therewith being made luke warme againe, and then keepe his leggs cleane from dust. Other Farriers use to bathē his legges in butter and beere, or in vineger and butter, some with sheeps-foot oyle, some with neates foote oyle, some with traine oyle, and some with pisse and salt-peter boyld together, of all which pisse and salt-peter is the best; and after any such bathing, you must ioule up the horses legges with hay ropes wet but in water, even from the pastorn to the knee, but in any wise not too strait for fear of doing hurt, so let him stand continually when hee resteth.

Now of her Farriers some what more curious, use for the swelling of the legges this bath; take of Mallowes three handfuls, a Rose cake, of Sage one handfull, boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of sallet oyle, and then being some what warme, wash the swelling therewith every day once the space of three or foure daies; and if the swelling wil not goe away with this, then take wine lees and Cummin, and boyle them together, and put thereunto a little wheate-flower, and charge al the swelling therewith, and walk him often; and if all will not serue, then take up the great veine above the knee on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath: and it will take away the swelling.

## CHAP. LXXII.

*Of a horse that is foundred in his feete.*

A Horse is said to be foundred of his feete, when hee hath such a numbnesse, and pricking or tingling within his hoofes, that he hath neither sence nor feeling of his feete, but is in all respects like a man that by hard or crooked sitting hath both his feete asleepe (as wee call it) during which passion we know wee can neither well goe nor stand, and even so it fa-  
reth with a horse in this case, for the course of the bloud being stopped, those Obstructions causeth this torment. It commeth most commonly when a horse is very fat, and hath his grease molten within him, and then suddainely cooled by taking his saddle off too soone, or by standing still in the cold unstirred, or else by letting him stand in some shallow water little higher then his feet-locke.

A horse also may be foundred by wearing straight and uneasie shooes, especially in the Summer, season, when a horse travelleth upou the hard ground.

The signes to know it is, the horse goeth crouching, and drawing all his foure feete wltin the compasse almost of a pecke, and will stand so fearefully as though he stood upon needles.

Now you shall understand, that a horse will sometimes bee onely foundred of his fore-feete, and not of his hinder, which you shall know in that the horse will tread onely upon his hinder feete, and  
not



not on his fore feete, and goe as though his buttockes would touch the ground ; and sometimes hee will be foundred upon his hinder feete, and not upon his fore-feete, and that you shall perceive by his fearefulnesse to let his feete to the ground, being also so weake behinde, that hee will stand quivering and quaking, and covet alwayes to lye downe, and sometimes hee will bee foundred of all his fore-feete; the signes whereof were first declared.

Now for as much as the cures bee all of one and the selfe same nature, and what cureth the first cureth also the rest; I will joyne them altogether, with this advise, that if you finde the horse to bee foundred on the fore-feete onely, then to apply your medicine to the fore-parts onely, if on the hinder feete, then to the hinder parts ; but if of all foure feete, then to lay your medicine to all the severall parts of the body, as shall be presently declared.

To come then to the cures ( according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this disease ) if your horse be foundred of all his foure feete, you shall cause him to bee let blood on his two breast veines of his two fore-legges, somewhat above his knees, also you shall let him blood on his two spur-veines, and on the veines of his two hinder feete a little above the hoofe, betweene the hoofe and the pastorne : you shall let these veines bleede well to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which bloud you must save in some Vessell, and stirre it with a sticke to keepe it from clearing : and when it

hath bled as above-said, put it all into one vessell, then stoppe the wounds with some horse dung, or some earth, and make a charge with the blood in this sort : take as much wheate meale branne and all as will make the blood somewhat thicke, and put it into the blood ; take eight or tenne eggs, and breake them also into the blood, shells and all ; take a pint of strong vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-armonicke brayde, and put them into the blood also, which done, you shall stirre them altogether ; then shall you with your hand lay the said charge all along upon the reines of the horses backe, upon his buttocks and downe his shoulders : when you have laid on this charge thus, you shall take two long linnen ragges dipped in the same charge, with which so dipped, you shall garter the horse above the knees of his fore-leggs some what hard, and likewise with two other like raggs so dipped, you shall garter him hard above both his hinder hooves also : that done, cause him to be walked upon the hardest ground you can finde for the space of two or three houres : if he be loath to goe as commonly he will be, let one follow him and beat him with a sticke or a wand to force him to goe ; then after his walking let him be set up and tyed to the racke, that he lye not downe, and there let him rest two or three houres ; which done, let him be walked againe two or three houres more as aforesaid, then set him up, and let him feed, and when you give him drinke, which you may doe within two or three houres after his feeding, let it be a warme mash of malt and water, then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little,  
and

and if you let him stand an houre or two in a poole or standing water up to the belly, and one upon his backe it is good also, and after that ride him againe a little: then let him be set up well dressed and covered, and so by little and little ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him, for it is riding that bringeth the horse to the perfectnesse of his feete, and you shall finde your horse as sound as ever hee was.

Now during this cure, you are to take these observations in your memory.

First, you shall not neede to remove or stir the horses shooes; then you must after twenty foure houres rub off the charge from the horses backe.

Item, You shall take away his garters after twelve houres, and rubbe his knees and houghes with your hand, and with wispes, to take away the numbnesse.

Item, If you cannot get wheat meale, you may take oaten-meale.

Item, If he will not bleed in the veines before named, then you may take your blood from the necke-veine.

Lastly, If you take the horse in hand to cure within twenty foure houres after he is foundred, he will be found againe within twenty foure houres after; if he goe longer, the cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this Kingdome, and amongst the Italians, differ not much in their practise from this already rehearsed, onely into the charge they adde of Sangais Draconis halfe a quarterne, and as much beane flower as wheat flower, and of Turpentine halfe a pound; then if they did see that with-

in

in foure daies the horse did not recover, then they did know that the hurfull humours did onely lye in the horses feete, and there you shall search his feete with your butterysse, parting all the soles of his feete so thinne, that you may see the water issue through the sole : that done, let him blood at the toes, and let him bleed well ; then stop the veine with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, and laid upon a little flaxe, and then tacked on his shooes and cram the place where you did let him blood hard with tow, to the intent it may be surely stop ; then fill all the soles of his feete with hogges grease and branne boyled or fryed together so hot as is possible, and upon that stopping clap a peece of leather, and two crosse splints, to keepe in the stopping ; and immediately after this take two egges, and beate them in a dish, and put therunto as much Bolearmonicke and beane flower as will thicken the same, and mixe them well together, and make thereof two playsters such as may close each foote round about somewhat above the coronet, and bind it fast with a list or a rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the space of two dayes, but let the soles of his feet be cleansed and new stopped every day once, and the coronets to be removed every two dayes untill the horse be found ; during which time let him rest unwalked for feare of losing hooves : but if you see that he beginne to amend, you may walke him faire and softly once a day upon some soft ground to exercise his legges and feete, and let him not eat much, nor drinke cold water ; but if his foundring breake out about the horse, which  
you

you shal perceive by the loosenesse of the Coffin above by the Cronet, then when you pare the sole you must take all the fore part of the sole cleane away, leaving the heeles whole, to the intent the humours may have the freer passage downe-ward, and then stoppe him, and dresse him about the cornet, as is before said. Now if the horse during this Cure chance to fall sicke, or grow so dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you shall first rake him, and after give him a glister of Mallowes, three handfuls boyld in water from a pottle to a quart: then after it is strained, put to it halfe a pound of butter, and a quarter of a pint of sallet oyle, and so administer it, then when the horse hath emptied his belly give him this comfortable drinke. Take of Malmsey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace and Pepper beaten into fine powder, and of oyle a quarter of a pint, and give the horse to drinke of that lukewarm; that done, let him walk him up and down a good while together if he be able to go, if not, then tye him up to the racke, and let him be hanged with canvas and ropes, so as he may stand upon the ground with his feete, for the lesse he lyeth downe the better; but these extremities doe seldome happen Now there be other Farriers which for the foundring of a horse, onely take Verdigrease, Turpentine, sallet oyle, and hogges grease, of each like quantity, of Waxe one ounce; boyle all together, and so dippe flaxe or tow in it: then having pared his feete thinne, and let him blood on the toes, stoppe all his feete with that oyntment very hot: or else they take the rootes of nettles, and hemlocke, with elder pills of each a handfull,

handfull, and boyle them tender in Boares greafe, or Hoggs greafe, so let him blood in the midst of the foote on the toe veine, then bathe and chafe his joynt and leg therewithall about from his knee unto the fetlock, and then clap it to, and bind a cloath fast to it as hot as you can. So use this once a day till ti be well.

Now for mine own part, although there is not  
any of these former recited practises but are found perfectly good in their kindes, yet I have not found any so absolute either for old or new founders, as this which I shall rehearse. First, you shall with a very sharpe drawing-knife, draw every part of the soles of the horses feete so thinne as is possible, even till you see the very water and bloud issuing forth, and being sure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a butterys: then at the very sharpe end of the trush of the horses foote you shall see the veine lye, then with your knives end lift up the hoofe and let the veine bleede ( which as long as you hold open the hoofe will spin a great way forth ) when it hath bled better then a pint, you shall close the hoofe and so stoppe the veine: then tacke on his foote a hollow shooe made for that purpose: that done, clap a little tow dipt in Hogges greafe and Turpentine upon the veine very hard: then take two or three hard egges roasted, and comming burning hot out of the fire, and burst them in the sole of the horses foote: then poure upon them Hogges greafe, Turpentine, and tarre boyling hot, and as much flaxe dipt therein as will fill up a hollow shooe, then lay on a peece  
of

of leather to keepe all the rest in, and splent it sure : and in this manner dresse his foure feete, if all be foundred, otherwise no more then are foundred; and thus you shal dresse the horse threetimes in one fortnight, and without any further trouble, you shall be sure to have the horse as sound as ever he was.

Now if the horse be foundred through the straiting of a shooe, which in truth is not a founder, but a frettizing, which is a degree lesse then foundring, then you shal for that sorraine, first take off his shooe, and let him bloud on the toes, then stopping the place with bruised Sage, tack on his shoe again, and stoppe it with Hogges grease and bran boyled together, as hot as is possible; and doe this twice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

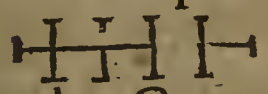
#### CHAP. LXXIII.

*Of the splent as well on the inside of the knee, as of any other part of the legge.*

**A** Splent is to the outward feeling a very gristle, or rather a hard bone, sometimes as big as a hazle nut, sometimes as big as a wall-nut, according to the age thereof, growing upon the inside of the fore-legge, betweene the knee and the upper pastorne loynt, and sometimes just underneath, and close unto the knee, which is of all other the most dangerous splent, and doth the soonest make a horse lame : it commeth by travelling a horse too young, or by over pressing him with heavy burthens, whereby the tender sinews of his leggs are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof, it is easie, because it is apparant unto

unto the eye, and most palpable to bee felt. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take an onion, and picking out the coare, put into it halfe a spoonefull of honey, and a quarter of a spoonefull of unslackt Lime, and toure peny-waight of Uerdigrease ; then closing up the onion roast it in hot embers untill it be soft : then bruise it in a morter, and as hot as the horse can suffer it, lay it to the splent, and it will take it away : but in any case cut no skin. Other of the ancient Farriers use first to wash the splent with warme water, and then to shave off the haire, and lightly to scarifie or prick the skin with the poynt of a razor, so as the blood may issue forth : then take of Cantharides halfe a spoonefull, and of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a spoonefull of oyle de bay, and then melt them in a little pan, stirring them well together, so as they may not boyle over, and being so boyling hot, take two or three feathers, and annoynt all the sore places therewith : that done, let not the horse stirre from the place where you so dresse him for an houre after, to the intent hee shake not off the oyntment : then carry him faire and softly into the stable, and tye him so as he may not reach with his head beneath the manger : for otherwise he will covet to bite away the smarting and pricking medicine, which if it should touch his lipps would quickly fetch off the skinne : and also let him stand without litter al that day and night : the next day annoynt the sore place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe every day once for the space of nine dayes : for this will allay the heate of  
the



the medicine, and cause both that and the crust of the splent to fall away of it selfe. There bee other Farriers which use with a fine hot drawing Iron to burne the sorrhance downe in the midst the full length of the splent, and then over-thwart like this figure;  

 then foure houres after such burning, take Cowes dung new made, and sallet oyle mixt and well beaten together, and therewith annoynt al the sore places; and this must be done when the splent is very young.

Others use to slit the Sorrhance with a knife the whole length of the splent, and then with a cornet to open the slit, and lay the splent bare; then to make about the wound a Coffin of clayal open to the top; then take Boares grease made scalding hot, and poure it into the wouud untill the clay coffin be ful, then let it rest until the grease be cold: after that let the horse rise, and this with once dressing will take the splent cleane away without any blemish or eye-fore. Others use to beate the splents with a sticke, and to bruise it wel, then pricke it with an awle, and thrust out the blood, then lay on a peece of white leather, and with a hot Iron make the grease scald it, or else melt into it pitch and verdigrease, and then lay a plaister of pitch over it, not removing it until it fall off by it selfe, or else after you have beaten and prickt the splent take out the coare of an onyon, and fill it with bay salt, then roast it soft, and lay it hot to the splent, and in stead of the onyon, you may if you will bind to a hard roasted egge, being fire-hot. Other Farriers use to slit the skinne the length of the splent: then to dippe a little peece of linnen

in

in warme Wine, and sprinkle Verdigrease thereon, and so lay it to the flit, renewing it once a day untill the splent bee gone. Others use to shave off the haire, and to rubbe the splent twice a day with Tarre very hard, until the splent be gone; but this splent must be very young and tender: for fasting spettle is as good as Tarre. Other Farriers use to take a blacke Snaile and siit her, and put in bay-salt, and lay it to the splent being opened, renewing it once a day until the splent be gone: then let the veine above the knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, lest it feed the splent againe. Others use if the splent be upon the knee to burne it, as is before said; then take Worme-wood, Smallage, pilletory of the wal, and branke Vinsine stampd with Swines grease, and lay it to the burnings, provided that first the haire be shaved off, and if the splent bee below the knee, this cure is good also and much the safer.

Now after all these former recited practises, you shall understand that the most clenliest way to take away a splent is, first after you have cast your horse, with a hazell sticke of a pretty poyse and bignesse gently to beate the splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the splent grow soft in every part, then with the poynt of your Launcet let out all the blood and water; then take a brick-bat, and having laid it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a red cloath, and therewith rubbe the splent, and smooth it upon the toppe till you have dryed away the blood, and that no more moysture comineth out; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and masticke, of each a like quantity, melt

melt them well together, and being very hot lay it over and al about the splent ; then clap floxe of the colour of the horses legge upon it, and so let it rest upon the splent untill it fal away of it selfe : and if when it is fallen away, you perceive that any part of the splent remaine behind, which hardly will bee if it be orderly beaten ; then you shal dresse that remainder as you did the other before, and the splent wil be perfectly cured. Now for the surest and most certainest way to take off a splent, it is thus : with the point of a sharpe knife, make a slit of more then a barley corne leugth just upon the top in the midst of the splent, and let it be so deepe that you may be sure that the bone of the splent is bare, then put into that slit with the point of your knife, as much Mercury Sublimat as the quarter of an hazel nut kirkel ; and within three or foure dayes, it wil so have eaten the splent, that it wil fal out of it selfe ; then you shall heale up the sore either with fresh butter molten, or with a playster of Hoggs grease, and Turpentin mingled and melted together ; only in this cure you must beware, that you tye the horse so, as for foure and twenty hours he may not touch the sore place with his mouth. Now in conclusion, I am to give you this smal precept, to beare ever in your mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for al other humours whatsoever. You must first stay the falling down of the new humours to the place troubled as by binding playsters, as pitch, rozen, masticke, red lead, oyle, Bole armonicke, and such like ; then to draw out matter which is there gathered with drawing simples, as Waxe, Turpentine, and such

like : and lastly, to dry up the relicks with drying powders, as hony and lime, Oyster-shells, soot & such like, and also you must know, that all splints, spavens, or knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning or after the full of the moone.

CHAP. LXXIV.

*An approved and certaine way to take away any Splint without breaking any haire.*

**T**ake the roote of Elicampaine wel washed and clenfed, and lappe it in a browne pager, wet it and roast it in the hot embers, as you would roast a Warden ; Then as hot as the horse can suffer it (for I would not have you scald) after you have rubbed & chaft the excretion, clap this unto it, and bind it fast on, and in two or three dressings it wil consume away the splint.

Also if morning and evening you rub the splent with the oyle of Origanum it wil take it away.

CHAP. LXXV.

*Of the Screw, or the row Splent.*

**A**Lthough divers of our Farriers doe distinguish and make a difference betwixt a Screw and a Splent, saying, that the screw is ever of the out-side of the legge, as the splent is of the inside ; yet it is most certaine, that the disease and infirmity is all one and may as wel be call'd a splint on the out-side of the legge, as a splint on the inside of the legge, and this splint on the out-side is ever least dangerous.

Now

Now a horse many times will have both these splints at one time, & upon one legge, nay, I have seen them so just opposite one to the other, that one would have thought they had gone through the horses legge; whence it hath come to passe, that many foolish Farriers being of that mind, have intitled them a thorow splint, & I have seen my selfe some wel reputed Farriers, that having the cure brought unto them, have refused the same, saying it was a thorow splent, and therefore most incurable; but the opinion is most absurd and ridiculous: for the shin bone being hollow, and ful of pitch and marrow, there can nothing grow throw it, but it must confound the marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but must presently breake in sunder, especially when such a weake spungy substance as a splent is, shall possesse the whole strength of the leg. Now for the cure, as the splent and it are all one, so they have all one cure and what helpeth the first, with more ease helpeth the latter, in as much as it is not full so dangerous, nor so neare the maine sinews.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Mallander.*

**A** Mallander is a kind of a dry scab, growing in the forme of lines or streakes overtwart the very bought or inward bent of the knee, and hath hard haire with stubborne roots, like swines bristles, which corrupteth and cankereth the flesh like the roots of a childs scabbed head; and if the sore bee great and deepe, it will make the horse go stiffe at his

first setting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the corruption of bloud, or from negligent keeping, when the horse wanteth cleane dressing: for you shall know that some horses naturally are given to have long haire from the toppe to the bought of the knee downe to the fetlocke, and that haire in the bought of the knee is oft apt to curle; whereby those horses, if they be not very carefully and cleane kept, are much subject to this disease.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barreld herring out of the pickle with a soft row, and two spoonfull of blacke sope, and so much Allome; beat all these in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for three dayes, and it will kil the Mallender, provided alwayes that before you lay any thing unto a Mallender, you ever pull off the dry scabs first, and leave no haire growing within the sore. Other Farriers use to take a pairing of a Cheese, and roasting it very hot, annoint it with honey, and so hot lay it to the Mallender, and renewing it once a day til the Mallender be whole: or else beat hennes dung and Gilli-flowrs wel together, and lay it to the sore til it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have washed the sore cleane with warme water, and shaved off the haire and the scabbs, to take a spoonfull of sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paste, then spread as much on a clout as will cover the sore, and bind it fast on with a list, renewing it every day once the space of two or three dayes; and at the three dayes end take away the playster, and  
annoynt

annoynt the sore with oyle of Roses made lukewarme, and that will fetch away scurfe or crusty asker, bred by means of the burning plaister : which scurfe being taken away, wash the sore place wel every day once with his own stale, or else with mans urine, and then immediatly strow upon it the powder of burnt oyster shels, continuing so to doe every day once untill it be whole.

Others of our later Farriers use to take a quart of water, halfe a pint of oyle, and as much flower as will thicken it with seething; then lay that hot to the sore twice a day for foure dayes together ; then take masticke, Frankisence beaten to fine powder, quick silver, killed either in the juyce of Lemons, or in strong vinegar, of each an ounce ; then of Liturgie halfe an ounce, of Ceruse ten ounces, and as much of swines greafe clarified ; incorporate and mingle al these together with vineger and oyle, and lay it to the sore untill the Mallander be killed ; then heale it up as is fore shewed. Others use after they have washed it and shaved it, to rub it with pisse and sope, until it be raw : then to lay to it nerve oyle, honey, and strong mustard, until it be whole. Others use to take Sulphure, Vitrol, Sal-nitre, Sal-gemme mixt with oyle de bay, and to rub the mallender wel therewith. Now to conclude, you shal understand, that some horses wil have two Mallenders upon one legge, one above an other, and sometimes one a little above the inward bending of the knee, and another a little below the inward bending of the knee, but the cure is all alike, and as you dresse one, so you may dresse two or three.

Now for mine owne part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallender, then after the sore is cleansed, to take the ordure or dung of a man, and annoynt the sore therewith, and it will kill it and heale it.

CHAP. LXXVII.

*Of an upper attaint, or over reach upon the back sinew of the fore legge, somewhat above the pastorne joynt.*

**T**His which we call an upper attaint, is nothing else but a painfull swelling of the master sinew, or backe sinew of the shanke bone, by reason that the horse doth sometimes over-reach and strike that sinew with the toe of his hinderfoot, and thereby causeth the horse to halt much. Now the signs are both the swelling & the halting : and the cure, according to some of the old Farriers; is to dresse the sore place with a plaister made of wine lees and wheat flower laid hot to, or else to take of blacke Sope and Boares grease, of each like quantity scalding hot; make a plaister of seare cloath thereof, and clap it all about the sore place: or else if the swelling by no salve will dissolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his legge all downward with the haire in many small strikes from the one end of the swelling to the other, and make the strikes very thicke together; & somewhat deepe: then annoynt his burning for two or three dayes with blacke sope, and so turne the horse to grasse; but if he will not run at grasse, then every day give him some moderate exercise; but this burning



ning I fancy not much, for it is foul'd; & albeit it take away the swelling, yet the seames of the burning, when they are cured well, keepe the member bigge, as if it were still sweld. Now other of the ancient Farriers, use first to wash the legge with warme water; then to shave off the haire as far as the swelling goeth; then to scarifie the sore place with the poynt of a razor, that the bloud may issue forth: then take of Cantharides and Euforbium of each halfe an ounce mingle them together with halfe a quartern of sope, and with a slice spread some of this oyntment over all the sore, suffering him to rest there where you dresse him for one halfe houre after; and then you may carry him into the stable, and there let him stand without litter, and so tyed as he may not touch the sore with his mouth: and then the next day use him in the same manner againe: then the third day annoynt the place with fresh butter, continuing so to doe the space of nine dayes, and at the nine dayes end make him this bath: Take of Mallows three handfuls, a Rose cake, of sage an handfull, boyle them together in a sufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be soft, put in halfe a pound of butter, and halfe a pint of Sallet-oyle; and then being somewhat warme, wash the sore place therewith every day once til it be whole. Others use to cleave a chicken or a pigeon, and to clap it hot to the swelling and it will abate it: or else take Dialthea, Agripa and oyle, and mixing it together, lay it to the swelling. Others use to take of frankinsence, of rozen, of tarre, of Euforbium, of Turpentine and fenugreek, of each a quarter of an ounce, of suet one ounce, of oyle

an ounce, of waxe three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrhes mixe and melt them all together, and plaister-wise lay it to the fore place til it be whole: or else take for this sorrhance, three quarters of an ounce of Sanguis Draconis, an ounce of Bole-armony, as much oyle, three ounces of Masticke, and as much suet, and as much swines greafe, the whites of halfe a dozen of Egges; melt and mixe them together, and lay them together, and lay it to the swelling; and it will take away: then make the shooes of his hinder feete shorter then the hornes of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horn hang over uncut away, and make the fore-shoe no longer then his heele, but rather shorter.

#### CHAP. LXXVIII.

*An excellent approved medicine for any sinew-straine wha soever.*

Take of Vineger a pint, the whites of three or foure egges, and as much Bolearmonicke and beane flower as will bring it to a thick salve over the fire: then when it is very hot, lay it playster-wise upon the straine, and round about the legge: and doe this not onely till the grieffe be gone, but also till the swelling be taken away.

#### CHAP. LXXIX.

*Of a neather Attant, or over reach on the pastorne joynts.*

The neather Attant, or over-reach on the midst and in the hollow of the pastern joynt, is a little bladder:

bladder full of jelly, like unto a wind gal, & though it be not apparant to the eye, yet it is easie to be felt, and may come as well by some wrinch or straine, as by an over reach, and it will make a horse halt much, the signes are, the neather joynt towards the feetlocke will be very hot, and somewhat sweld, and the little soft bleb will easily be felt.

The cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, take a small cord, and rowle him somewhat strait from the knee to the neather joynt, and then in the pastorne, betweene the hoofe and the joynt with a fleame strike him in the midst of his swelling, and let out the matter: then take the white of an egge, and beat it with a little salt, and then dipping flaxe therein, lay it unto all the swelling, and then unrowle his leg, and renew the salve twice a day untill the griefe be gone. But in any case let him not be laboured or ridden whilst he is in curing.

CAHP. LXXX.

*Of an Attaint or over reach on the heele,*

**A**N Attaint or over reach upon the heele, is when a horse striketh the toe of his hinder shooe into the heele, just upon the setting on of the hoofe, and this over reach, if it be not looked unto, will fret and rankle so much inward, that it will indanger the horses hoofe, and you shall commonly see by the cut the skin hang over the horses heele, and it wil make a horse halt. Now the cure is, first to cut away the skin, and also the hoofe and the flesh, til you have made the sore even and plaine without any hollownesse;

nesse; then wash it very well with beere and salt, then bind unto it a little flaxe dipt in the white of an egge, mingled with a little Bole-armony, renewing it every day once, the space of three or foure dayes, and that will heale it.

CHAP. LXXXI.

*Of the Mellet on the heele.*

**A** Mellet is a dry scab that groweth upon the heel, sometimes through the corruption of bloud, and sometimes for want of cleane rubbing and dressing, when he is wet set up; it appeareth like a dry chap without any moysture, and it will be sometimes as well on both heels as on one. The cure, according to the practise of the old Farriers, is to take half a pint of honey, and a quarter of a pound of blacke sope, & mixe them together: then put thereto foure or five spoonefull of vineger, and as much Allome unburnt as a Hens egge, and two spoonfull of Rye flowre; mix them all well together, and then take it away; and wash all his leg and foot with salt-beefe-broath, and then rope his legge all a day with wet hay-ropes, and he will be sound-provided alwayes, that before you dresse him, you ever take off the dry scab or scurfe, and making the sore as clean and as plain as is possible.

## CHAP. LXXXII.

*Of false quarters.*

**A** False quarter is a rift or open back-seame, sometimes in the out-side, but most ofttest in the inside of the hoofe; because the inside is ever the weaker part, which sides are ever called quarters, whence this sorrhance taketh his name, and is called a false quarter, as much as to say, a sicke and unsound quarter: for it is as if it were a peece set unto the hoofe, and the hoofe not all of one intire peece as it ought to be. It commeth many times by evill shooing, and evill paring, and sometimes by pricking the horse, and such like hurts. The signs to know it are, the horse will halt much, and the rift will bleed, and when the shooe is off, the whole sorrhance is apparant to be seene. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take off the shooe, and cut away so much of the shooe on that side where the sorrhance is, as the shooe being immediately put on againe, all the whole rift may be uncovered: then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a rowell of tow dipt in Turpentine, wax and sheepes suet, molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole: and the rift being closed in the top, draw him betwixt the haire and the hoofe with a hot Iron overthwaat that place, to the intent that the hoofe may shoote all whole downward; and when the horse goeth upright, ride him either with no other shooe then this, or else with such a shooe as may beare in every part but  
only

onely upon the false quarter, untill the hoofe bee hardned. Others use to annoynt it once a day with sheepes suet and oyle mixt together, and that will close the rift.


Others use to cut away the old corrupt hoofe, and then take seven whites of egges, the powder of Incense, of unslackt lime, of Masticke, of Verdigrease, and of salt, of each three ounces; mixe them well together, then dippe in as much hurds as will cover the fore hoofe; lay it on, and then about it lay swines grease an inch thicke, & likewise below it also: bind this on in such sort that it may remaine unstirred a fortnight, then renew it so againe, and it will make perfect his hoofe. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the false quarter, and thereby causeth the horse to halt, then you shall lay your finger upon it, and if the horse shrinke thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter, then lay on horse dung, Oyle, Salt, and vineger mixt together playster-wise, and that will heale it, and make the hoofe good; yet however, you must have care in shooing him till his hoofes be hardned, as is before shewed you.

### CHAP. LXXXIII.

*Of a horse that is hipped, or hurt in the hipps.*

**A** Horse is said to be hipped, when either by straine, blow, or other accident, the hippe bone is removed out of his right place. It is a sorrhance as hard to be cured as any whatsoever: for if it bee not taken even at the first instant; there will grow with-

within the pot of the huckle bone, such a thick hard substance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly uncurable. The signs to know the sorrhance are, the horse will halt much, and goe sidelong, and will traile his leggs a little after him; the fore hippe also will be lower then the other, and the flesh will cast away on the side of his Buttocke. The cure is, according to the best Farriers, if you take him in good time, first to cast him on his back, and then having a strong pastorne on his grieved legge, with a rope draw that legge upright, and with your hands on each side his thigh bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let him down gently, and so suffer him to rise with all meeknesse; then goe with him into the stable, and there charge all his hippe and back with pitch and rozen molten together, and laid on warme, and then some floxe of his owne colours to be clapped upon the same, and so turne the horse to grasse untill he goe upright.

But if the horse be not hipped, but only hurt  in the hippe, and that newly, then first take of oyle de bay, of Dialthea, of nerve oyle, and of swines grease, of each halfe a pound; melt them all together; stirring them continually untill they bee thoroughly mingled together; then annoynt the sore place therewith against the haire, every day once the space of a fortnight, and make the oymnt sinke well into the flesh, by holding a hot barre of Iron over the place annoynted, weying your hand to and fro untill the oymnt bee entred into the skinne: and if at the fortnights end you see the horse  
not

not any thing amended, then slit a hole downeward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole so wide, as you may easily thrust in a rowell with your finger; and then with a cornet and a quill blow the skine from the flesh above the bone, and round about the same, so broad as the rowell may lie flat and plaine within the skin and the flesh: and this rowell will be made of soft calves leather, with a hole in the midst, and a threed tyed unto it, to pul it out when you would clense it, or the hole; and if the rowel be roled about with flaxe fast tyed on, and a-nointed with the oyntment under written, it will draw so much the more.

Now you must thrust in your rowell first double, and then spread it abroad with your finger: that done, taint it with a good large taint of flaxe dipt in a little Turpentine and Hoggs grease molten together and made warme, and clense the hole and the rowel every day once; and also renew the taint for the space of a fortnight, and before you dresse him, cause him every day to be led up and downe a foote pace a quarter of an houre, to make the humours come downe; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowell, and heale up the wound with the same salve, making the taint every day lesser and lesser, untill it be whole: and so soone as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw crosse lines of eight or nine inches long right over the hip bone, so as the rowelled place may be in the very midst thereof, and burne him no deeper but as the skinne may looke yellow; and then charge all that place, and over all his buttocke with this charge. Take of pitch one  
pound



pound, of rozen half a pound, and of tar halfe a pint, boyl them together, and then being good and warm, spread it on with a clout tyed in a riven sticke, and then clap on a few flox of the horses colour, and if it be in Summer, let the horse run to grasse a while, for the more he travelleth at his own will, the better it is for him.

## CHAP. XCIV.

*Of Stifling, and hurts in the stifle.*

**T**Hat horse is said to be stifled, when the stifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying betweene the nether end of the thigh bone, and the upper end of the great hough-bone of the hinder legg, is by any straine, stroake, slippe, or such like, thrust out of his right place; but if the stifling bone bee not removed nor loosened, and yet the horse halteth by means of some grieffe in that place, then we say the horse is hurt in the stifle, and not stifled. The signs are these. If the horse be stifled, the stifle bone wil sticke out more of the one side then of the other, and it is apparant to the eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his toe.

The cure according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to thrust two round pins crosse the stifling bone, through the skinne, in such sort as you were taught for the shoulder pight, but the pins would not be any thing neer so big, nor so long, because the stifling bone is not so broad as the shoulder: and standing in the stable let him have a pastorne and a ring upon

upon his fore legge, and thereunto fasten a cord, which cord must goe about his necke, and let it be so much strained, as it may bring his fore legge more forward then the other. to keepe the bone from starting out: but this cure is foul and troublesome, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, use onely to set a patten shooe upon his sound foot, and so turne him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his lame foot: and that straining of it will in a day or two make him as sound as ever he was, and put the stifling bone into his true place again. But if you cannot readily get a patten shooe, then you shall take either a plain fursingle, or any other broad binding web that will goe three or foure times about the horses leg, and with it you shall garter up the horses sound leg three fingers above his hamme, even upon his maine great sinew, so strait as your selfe and another man can draw it: and then turne the horse abroad where he may goe up and downe, and in eight and forty houres the horse will be sound as ever he was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered up with fresh butter, for it wil be much swelled.

Now if this mischance of stifling happen unto your horse in your travaile, and that your occasions will not suffer you to stay for any of these cures, then you shall take your horse either to some deepe pond or deep river that hath easie going in and out, and there swimme him up and downe a dozen turnes: which done, you may after traavaile him at your pleasure: for the more he is laboured, the sounder he wil goe. Now if your horse be not stifled, but  
only

onely hurt in the stifle, either with some stripe or some straine, then the bone wil not stand out, yet perhaps the place will be much sweld. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is to make a little slit in his skinne, a handfull below the fore place, and then with a quil blow all the skinne from the flesh upwards, and then with your hand presse out the wind againe, and then thrust in a rowel of horse haire from the first slit to the upper part of the stifle bone: this done, take a pottle of old pisse and boyle it to a quart, and cleanse it well; then take a handfull of Mallows, and halfe a pint of sallet oyl, and adde them to the pisse, and then boyle them wel together: then bathe all the fore place therewith every day once the space of seven or eight dayes, & let him not stir out of the stable during the cure, and in twenty one dayes he will be sound.

Other Farriers use only to take a pound of Bole-armony, a quart of red Wine vinegar, six egges beaten, shels and al, two penny worth of English honey, and as much Yenice Vurpentine, one quart of flower and one good handfull of bay salt; put al these in a pot, and incorporate them well together, then keepe them close one night, and the next day annoynt the fore place with some of it; and thus dressing it once a day the space of nine dayes, it will make the horse sound

CHAP. LXXXV.

*Of the bone Spaven, or dry Spaven.*

**T**He Bone spaven, or dry Spaven, is a great hard knob as bigge as a Walnut, growing in the in-

C c

side

side of the hoofe, hard under the joynt, neare unto the master veine, it groweth at the first like a tender gristle, and by proceffe of time, it commeth to be a hard bone, and causeth the horse to halt much. This sorrhance will come sometimes by nature or descent, as when either the Sire or Damme of the Horse have had the same disease ; and sometimes (which is most generally) it commeth when a horse is laboured too young ; for a horse in that part of his hinder legge hath small bones knit altogether upon one cluster, which being pressed before they be naturally hardned, cannot chuse but thrust forth these unnaturall excretions. Other whiles it proceedeth from extreame labour and heate; dissolving humours which do descend through the master-veine, continually feeding that place with evill nutriment, and causes the place to swell, which swelling in continuance of time becommeth so hard as a bone, and therefore is called the bone spaven. The signes are the aparant sight of the sorrhance ; and truely for mine owne part, I am of the mind of other Farriers, that it is very hard absolutely to cure it, yet that the eye sore may be taken away, and halting much eased, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Then to proceed to the cure thereof; according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is thus: First slit the skinne just over the head of the spaven or excretion, and open it with a cornet, and in any case have a care that you touch not the master veine, but put it by : then with your lancet lay the spaven all bare, then with a fine chizell about a quarter of an inch broad, or a little more, strike off the dead of the spaven,

ven, to the quantity of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the bignesse of the spaven : then take two penny waight of verdigrease beaten to fine powder, and two penny waight of nerve-Oyle, and beat them all well together : then laying some of it upon fine lint, lay it upon the spaven ; then lay dry lint betwixt the medicine and the veine : that the medicine may not touch the veine ; then lay a playster of pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and hoggs grease molten together, all over the hough, both to comfort the joynt, and to keepe in the medicine. And thus dresse him the space of three dayes, and it will cleanse away the spaven even to the bottome ; at the end of three dayes you shall wash away the corrosive and the matter, either with Tanners water or with vinegar, and lay no more of that salve thereto for hurting the bone ; then make a playster of Diaculum, and lay it upon a linnen cloath, and lay that playster unto the spaven, renewing it every day once for the space of seven dayes, and it will heale him up.

Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the spaven with warme water, and shave off the hair so farre as the spaven extendeth, and then scarifie the place and make it bleed : then take of Cantharides one dozen, and of Euforbium halfe a spoonfull ; beate them into powder, and boyle them together with a little Oyle de bay, lay this boyling hot upon the sore, and let all his tayle be tyed for wiping away the medicine ; and then within halfe an houre after set him up in the stable, and tye him so as hee may not lye downe al that night, for feare of rubbing of

the medicine ; and the next day annoynt it with fresh butter, continuing thus to doe every day once the space of five or sixe dayes ; and when the haire is growne againe, draw the sore place with an hot Iron in this sort, just upon the Spaven : then take another hot Iron like a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the poynt, and thrust it in at the neather end of the middle line, and so upward betwixt the skinne and the flesh, an inch and an halfe, and then taint it with a little hogges grease and turpentine molten together, and made warme, renewing it every day once the space of nine dayes ; provided that first immediately after his burning, you take up the master-veine, suffering him to bleed a little from above, then with a redde silke tye the upper end of the veine, and leave the neather end open, to the intent that hee may bleed from beneath untill it cease of it selfe ; and this will diminish the Spaven, but not take it cleane away.

Now there be other Farriers which use after they have burnt it in manner aforesaid, and taken up the master-veine, to annoynt it with fresh butter, till the burning beginne to scale, and then take of Sage and Nettles, of each a handfull, and boyle them with foure handfulls of Mallowe in faire water ; and then put thereto a little butter, and with that bathe him every day once for three or foure dayes till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his feet during the cure.

Others use to pricke the Spaven with a sharpe poynted knife, then take a peece of a candle, and lay  
a peece

a peece of broune paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the tallow, and after annoint it with butter. Others use first to pricke the spaven well, then to lay upon it for three or foure dayes together, every day, mans-dung: after that lay to it Galbanum till the fore matter and rhume, and the humour come forth: then wash it vvith urine, and lastly heale it up with oyle and honey boyled together, for that will bring on the haire.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the surest and the cleanest way to take the bone spaven quite away, if it be used with discretion and care, is to take of Vnguentum Apostolorum, and of white Mercury, of each a like quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mixe them well together: then after you have cast your horse, make a slit just the length of the Spaven, so that you touch not the master veine: then opening it, and laying all the Spaven bare, & with a sharpe instrument seale the spaven a little; then make a plegant of lint just so big as the excretion or bone spaven is: then spreading some of the salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry lint defend all other parts of the member, especially the master veine, from the corrosive: then lay the plaister of pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogges grease before spoken round about his hough, and so let him rest foure and twenty houres: then take away all that medicine, and scaling the bone a little, if you finde the corrosive have not gone deepe enough, then dresse it in the same manner the second time, and that will be altogether sufficient: then take of Turpentine, of

Deeres ſuet, and of Waxe, of each a like quantity, and mixe and melt them well together, then dresse the fore place therewith being warmed, and lint or tow dipt therein; and within a day or two you shall see the whole crust of the spaven come cleane away, then may you with the same salve, heale up the wound; & this hath never failed me in any practise. Also understand that whatsoever taketh away the Splint, taketh away the spaven also.

#### CHAP. LXXXVI.

*Of the bloud Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.*

**T**He bloud Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, ( for all is one disease ) is a soft swelling growing on both sides the hough, and seemes as though it went through the hough, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but, for the most part the swelling on the inside ( because it is fed continually of the Master-veine ) is greater then the swelling on the out side. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and fleamy humour, and not so viscous and slimy as the other spaven doth, and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a bone, and therefore it is a much easier cure then the other. The signes thereof are like the other, the apparant sight thereof; and for the cure, it is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, in this manner: First, wash the spaven with warme water, and then dresse it with Cantharides and Enforbium, in such sort as was at large shewed in the former Chapter; onely you shall not boyle them, but onely mixe them together, and dresse the  
fore



fore therewith two dayes together : then annoynt it with butter, and after burne it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is shewed also in the former Chapter: but you shall by no means taint it : then immediately you shall take up the master-vcine, and let it bleede, as was shewed before ; and then for the space of nine dayes, annoynt him every day once with butter until the burning begin to scale and then wash it with this bath : Take of Mallowes three handfulls, of Sage one handfull, and as much of red Nettles ; boyle them in water untill they bee soft, then put thereto a little fresh butter, and bathe the place every day once for the space of three or four dayes, and untill the burning be whole, let the horse come in no wet.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved off the haire, & taken up the veine, to take of mustard seed, of the great Mallows rootes, and of Oxe dung of each a like quantity, and as much strong vinegar as will mixe them together; like a salve, then beat them all well together and make thereof a soft playster, or else an oyntment, and lay it upon the Spaven ; change it evening and morning, and bind it in such sort to the ferrance with some piece of cloath, that it may not fall off or be removed; & when the spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a plaister of pitch very hot, and take it not off, untill it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers use unto this former medicine to adde oyle de bay, Turpentine, and Bolearmony.

And other Farriers use but onely to take up the veine, both above and below the spaven, and suffering it to bleed well ; then to knit up the veine, and

annoynt it with butter till it be whole, and it will consume the spaven,

CHAP. LXXXVII.

*A most rare and well approved medicine, which will take away any bloud-spaven whatsoever.*

**A**fter you have taken up the veine, knit it fast above, and then cut it in sunder, you shall take of Lynseen two or three handfuls, and bruise it well in a mortar, then mixe it with new Cow dung, and putting it in a frying pan, heate it well upon the fire, & very hot apply it to the spaven, renewing it morning and evening till it bring the spaven like a byle to impostumation, and to breake it, then after it hath runn a day or two, you shall onely apply to the sore a plaister of pitch, till it be whole.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

*Of the Sellender.*

**T**He Sellender is a certain kind of dry scab, growing in the very bent of the ham of the hinder leg; and it extendeth out into ill-favoured chaps or chincks, which if it be not prevented by medicine, it will fret in sunder the sinews of the hough: It is in all poynts like unto a Mallander, and proceedeth from the selfe like causes, and requireth the selfsame cures; therefore looke into the Chapter of the Mallander, & whatsoever you finde there, that will cure the Mallander, the same will also cure the Sellender.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LXXXIX.

*Of the Hough Bonny.*

**T**He Hough Bonny is a round swelling like a Paris ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the hough, and commeth ever of some stripe or bruise; but especially when he beateth his hough either against the post which standeth behind him; at the neather end of his stal, or against the bar which doth divide him from another horse, which many Ramish Jades will doe, when they seeke to strike at the horse which standeth next them.

Now the cure thereof is thus, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, take a round Iron somewhat sharpe at the end, like a good bigge bodkin, & let it be somewhat bending at the poynt; then holding the fore with your left hand, pulling it somewhat from the sinews, pierce it with the Iron, being first made red hot, thrusting it beneath in the bottome and so upward into the jelly, to the intent that the same jelly may issue downward out of the hole: & having thrust out all the jelly, taint the hole with a taint of flaxe dipt in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; and also annoynt the out-side with Hogges grease made warme, renewing it every day once untill the hole be ready to close up, making the taint every day lesser and lesser until it be whole. Now for my owne part, both for this for-  
rance, or any other bruise in this part, I have found this cure ever the best: First, either with rotten litter or hay boyled in old urine, or else with a  
plaister

plaister of Wine-lees and wheate flower boyled together, to ripen the swelling, and bring it to putrifaction, or else to drive the swelling away; but if it come to a head, then to launce it in the lowest part of the softnesse, with a thinne hot Iron, and so to let out the matter: then to taint it with Turpentine, Deeres suet, and Waxe, of each alike quantity molten together, laying a playster of the same salve over it, to hold in the taint untill it bee perfectly wel.

## CHAP. XC.

*Of the Curb.*

**A** Curb is a long swelling a little beneath the elbow of the hough of the great sinew behinde, hard above the toppe of the horne, which causeth the horse to halt after a little labour: for the more his sinew is strained, the greater is his paine, and the more he hath rest, the lesser is his griefe; it commeth as the Spavens come, either from discent, or from great burthens when the horse is young, or else from some straine or wrench. The signes are the apparant view thereof; and the cure according to the old Farriers, is first to shave off the haire, then pricke it with a fleame in three or foure places, and for three or foure dayes together, lay uuto it twice a day mans dung; then lay Galbanum to it likewise twice a day until it rot, and that the matter doth issue forth; then wash it with urine: and lastly heale it up with hony and oyle boyled together, renewing the same twice a day til the Curbe be gone; and in  
any

any case let all your salves be applyed warme and new made, and if you make an issue with a hot Iron in the bottome of the Curbe, it will not doe amisse.

Others use to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the fore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warme, vent it in six or seaven places: then take a spoonefull of salt, halfe a spoonefull of nerve-oye, and a penny weight of verdigrease, and the white of an egge; mixe these well together, and dipping flaxe in the same lay it to the Curbe, and this in few dressings will take it away. Other Farriers use to chafe and rubbe the Curbe well with their hands: then take red wal-wort leaves, and borrag, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curbe, renewing it once a day for a seven night together. Others use to slit the Curbe all the length, then take a peece of linnen cloath, and wet it in wine made warme: then strow verdigrease thereupon, and bind it to the fore, renewing it once a day untill the Curbe be gone. Others of the ancient Farriers take of wine lees a pint, of cummin halfe an ounce, and as much wheate flowre as will thicken it, and stirre them well together; and being made warme, charge the fore place therewith, renewing it every day once the space of three or foure dayes, and when the swelling is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin in this sort, and cover the burning with pitch and rozen molten together, and layed on good and warme, and clap thereon some floxe of the horses colour, or so nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not untill

till they fall away of themselves; and for the space of nine dayes let the horse rest, and come in no wet. Now there be other Ferriers which to this last recited salve, will adde tarre, and it is not amisse, onely it will not sticke so well.

¶ Now for mine owne part I have ever found this practise the best.

First, with a broad inkle to binde the hough starite a little about the cod: then with a smooth hazell sticke to beat, rub, and chafe the Curbe: then with a fleame strike it as deepe as you can in two or three places of the Curbe: then thrust out the corrupt blood; and after upon the poynt of your knife, put it into every hole as deepe as you can thrust it the quantity of two barley cornes of white Mercury and so let the horse rest foure and twenty houres after; then after, onely annoynt the fore place with hot molten butter till it be whole, once a day at the least. And likewise here understand that whatsoever cureth the Splint or Spaven, that cureth the Curbe also.

CHAP. XCI.

*Of the paines.*

**T**HE paines is certaine ulcerous scabs growing in the pastornes of a horse, betwixt the fetlocke and the heele, full of fretting matterish water, and commeth onely for want of good rubbing and cleane dressing, after the horse hath beene journeyed in the winter wayes, by means whereof the sand and durt remaining in the haire, fretteth the skinne  
and

and flesh, and so breedeth to a scabbe ; and therefore your Frisonds and Flanders Horses and Mares, which now are so much in use with us for the Coach, are the soonest troubled with this disease, if the Keeper be not much the more carefull. The signes hereof are, his legges will be swolne and hot, the scabbe will be palpable to be felt, and the water will issue out of the scabbe ; which water is so hot and fretting, that it will scald off the haire, and breed scabbes where it goeth. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is : Take of Turpentine, hogges grease, honey and blacke sope, of each alike quantity and having molten them upon a soft fire, take it off and put in a little Bolearmony, finely beaten into powder ; then worke all these things well together with a sticke in your right hand, and a dish of wheate flower by you, that with your left hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thicke like an oyntment or soft salve : then spread it upon a linnen cloath, as big as the sore having first cut away the haire, and made the sore raw, apply to the salve, and dresse him thus once a day untill it be whole.

This medicine is well approved to cure all sorts of paine, Scratches, Moully heeles, or any other skirvy scalls whatsoever, that may breed in a horses legges or heeles, whether they come by meanes of evill humours, or for lacke of good dressing or cleane keeping, whether they be mattery and filthy running sores, or else dry scabbes. Others of the old Farriers use for this sorrhance to take a pint of redde wine lees, and a handfull of wheat branne, a saucer full

of :

of honey, and halfe a pound of the powder of powdered Beefe burnt, and as much of barkedust, and halfe a pound of Allome, and a quarter [of a pound of swines grease, and halfe a handful of Verum : beate all these together in a Morter, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore as hot as the horse can suffer it, letting it abide there the space of three dayes, and in once or twice thus dressing him, it will make him sound ; yet some hold, if you do with a hot drawing Iron seare the great veine overthwart, a handful above the fetlocke, and then take a spoonfull of tarre, a spoonful of butter, and a spooneful of honey : and warming them wel together, and annoynt the veine therewith every day til the cure be perfected, and it is much availeable.

Other Farriers use, first to wash al the horses pastorns with butter and beer wel warmed together, and then his legge being somewhat dried, clip away al the hair that doth annoy the sore : then take of Turpentine, of Hoggs grease, and of hony, of each like quantity ; mingle them wel together in a pot, & put thereunto a little Bole-armony, the yolkes of two eggs, and as much wheat-flower as wil thicken the things afore-said, and so by long working it, make it like a playster ; then spread it upon the linnen cloth, and lay it round about the horses pastorne, and bind it fast on with a rowler, renewing it once a day til the horse be whole ; and in no wise let the horse come in any wet during the cure. Others use, first to chafe the sore place with a hay rope, or with a hayre cloath, til it either bleede or be rawe ; then  
take



take a little strong Mustard, beane flower and fresh grease, with a little Fenugreeke ; then mixe al together in a dish, and make thereof a salve, and therewith annoynt the sore, until it leave mattering: then take honey, the white of an egge, and fresh butter ; mixe them together, and annoynt the sore place therewith untill it be whole. Others use onely to bathe the sore with beefe broath, and then for foure or five dayes after, to annoynt it with sope, or else first to plung his feete in scalding water thrice: and then bath the sore in scalding water twice: or have ready a hard roasted egge, cleave it in the midst, and lappe it to as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night ; use this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

Others use to take pepper, Garlicke stamp, cole-worts, and old Hogges grease, of each like quantity, then beat them in a mortar til they be come to a salve and so lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day til it be whole.

Others use first to take up the shackle veines on both sides, then take the soft row of a red herring, and mustard, and black sope, and when they are wel beaten together, boyle them in vinegar til they come to a salve, and apply it to the sore ; this will cure the paines, albeit you do not take up the shackle veines. If you cannot readily get this salve, you may take butter and hony molten together, and it wil helpe them, or else take a pound of Hoggs grease, a penny worth of Verdigrease, two ounces of mustard, halfe a pound of Oyle de bay, a quarter of a pound of Nerve oyle, halfe a pound of honey, halfe a pound of English

waxe

waxe, one ounce of arsnick, two ounces of red lead, and halfe a pint of vinegar ; boyle al these together and make an oyntment of it : then having clipt and made the sore all bare, apply the medicine therunto very hot, and renew it once a day until it bee whole. Others use to take five ounces of orpiment, five of Tartar, one of Verdigrease, halfe an ounce of Sulphur, as much of vitrioll made into powder, the juyce of foure Citrions, the whites of two egges, with three ounces of Sallet oyle ; let al these bee very well beaten together, and applyed once a day to the sore, and it will not onely heale this disease, but any salt humour whatsoever, Mingle with soft grease, vinegar, honey, Orpiment, and Arsnicke: but let Arsenicke bee the least, and it wil cure this disease, so wil also white waxe, Turpentine and *Camphora* mixt together. Others use to take an hundred black snailles in the moneth of May, slit them, and put them in a bagge with a pint of bay salt, then hang them over the fire, with a vessel set under to receive what droppes from them, and keepe it in a close glasse: then annoynt the sore every day therewith, and it wil heale this sorrhance. Others take honey & vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suet of a Heegoat, of each alike, also boyle them with a soft fire and stirre it wel: when it waxeth red, adde of verdigrease and vitrioll, of each like quantity made into powder, stirring it til it be red and thicke: then being warme, annoynt the sore place therewith once a day after it hath beene washed with warme water: and this not onely helpes the paines, but also any sorrhance whatsoever,

ver of like nature about the legges.

Also greene Copporas and roch allome, of each halfe a pound, and a handfull of Bay salt boyled in a gallon of running water, will heale it: or else unto it adde a pint of honey, and boyle it over again, and it wil be the better: then when you have annoynted the sore therewith, rub it after with the powder of glasse Mustard and Vineger mixt together, and afterward skinne it with Creame, and the inner rinde of Elder beaten to a salve, which must be applyed to the sore twice a day at the least.

CAHP. XCII.

*of the Mules, or Kibe Heeles.*

**T**Hese Mules, or Kybed heeles, are certaine dry scabbes or chappes breeding behind upon the heeles of a horse, and so a little inward even to the fetlocke, in long chaps & Chinkes: it proceedeth either from corruption of bloud, or from being bred in wet marrish grounds, or else from uncleane and negligent keeping, in such manner as the Paines are bred: this sorrhance will make the horses legge to swell much, especially in the Winter, and about the Spring time, and he will goe stiffely, and halt much.

Now for the cure, you shall understand, that whatsoever healeth the Paines, the same will in like sort heale thote Kybed heeles: yet for more particularity, you shall know, that the old Farriers did use for this sorrhance, if they tooke it at the beginning, but onely to annoynt it for two or three dayes with


sope, and then after to wash it with strong urine, or beefe broth till it were whole : but if it were of any long continuance, then first to cut away the haire, and lay the sore open and plaine ; then take two ounces of unslackt Lime, one ounce of Sope and the white of an egge, or else an ounce of unslackt Lime, and as much salt, and three ounces of Soote, and mingling them with strong vinegar, annoynt the sore therewith, and it will heale and kill them.


Other Farriers use to calcinate Tarter, and dissolve it to water : then congeale it like salt, and mingle it with sope like an oyntment, and then dresse the sore therewith, and this will in eight and forty hours heal any Mules, Paines, or Scratches, whatsoever. If you take the juyce of the leaves and rootes of Elder, it is very good to dry up any of these evill humours.

#### CHAP. XCIII.

##### *Of winde-galles.*

**T**He Wind-gall is a little blebbe or bladder ful of corrupt jelly, & like the white of an egg, growing on each side of the Master sinew of the leg, hard above the pastorne. Now of them some will be big, and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more then one or two of a cluster, and they are so painefull, especially in the Summer season, when the weather is hot, and the waies hard, that the horse is not able to travell, but halteth downe right : they proceed commonly from extreame labour in the Summer time upon hard wayes, whereby the humours

mours being dissolved, doe flow and resort in to the hollow places about the neather joynts, which are most beaten and feebled with travell, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skinne like a bladder: they are most apparant to be seene and felt 

The cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is to take a knife, & open it in the length of a bean, piercing no further into it then through the skin of the bladder, and then thrust out the jelly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an egge; then take the yolke of an egge, and as much oyle De bay as a good nut, and mixing them together, make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and two or three dayes it will heale it. Others of the old Farriers dresse it with Euforbium and Cantharides, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the splent; but if that will not serve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the Windgall in this sort:  then to open the middle line with a Launcet, the length of a beane, and thrust out the jelly: then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few flox, and that will take it cleane away. Other Farriers use to take up the master-veine, on the inside of his legges, and suffer him onely to bleede all his legge over with a plaister of Wine-lees and from below: then having put up the veine, cover wheat flower mingled together, and rowle it with a long rowler: dresse him in this sort once a day till it be whole.

Others use to open the skinne and put out the jelly; then take a spoonfull of oyle De bay, a spoonefull of Turpentine, a penny worth of Verdigrease, the

white of an egge, and a quarter of an ounce of red lead, boyle them together till it come to a salve; then lay it to the Wind-gall and it will cure it; or else after you have let out the jelly, take Rozen, sheepes suet, and Brimstone, of each a like; and melt them together, and lay that upon the Wind-gall, so it be not too hot, and it will cure it. Others take the rootes of Cummin and beate them well with a little salt, and lay that to the Wind-gall; or else annoynt them with the juyce of Onions or Leeke blades, and that will allay them: or else ground Ivy and Wormewood with the rootes sodde in wine and laid to the Wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, take an ounce of white waxe, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw honey, three ounces of Swines grease, two ounces of oyle of the yolkes of egges, five ounces of oyle de bay; mixe all these well together and straine them: then rubbe them into the Wind-gall, by holding a hot barre of Iron against the oyntment, & it will take the Wind-gall away. Now for the making of the oyle of the yolkes of egges, it is thus: first, seeth the egges hard, then stampe them, and seeth them in an earthen pot with a soft fire, and so straine them. Now this Medicine will not only heale the Wind-gall, but the Ring-bone also, it is very good for the abating of the Wind-gall, and for making the medicine to worke the better, to let the horse stand in a cold running streame an houre morning and evening. The scum of the foure salts sod in mans urine, and laid to the Wind-gal, will take it away.

There bee other which take a pottle of vinegar.

gar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of galles, and as much of the hearbe Molleyne stamp small, mingle these well together, and put them into a pot, then every day therewith bathe the wind-gall, and in three weeks it will dry them clean up; it will also take away a curbe, or a spaven, or a ring bone, if you take them at the breeding. Other Farriers take of Sevill oyle and brimstone, of each like quantity, and seeth them in mans urine, and stirre them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of sope, to keepe the haire from scalding off: then bathe the wind gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in: then anoynt it above with nerve oyle, and oyle de bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot barre of Iron, or a hot fire panne to sinke into the flesh, and in three dayes it will dry up any winde-gall,

Now for mine owne part, the best medicine I have found in my practise for this Sorrhance, and the easiest, is with a fine lancet to open the wind gall, making the hole no bigger then that the jelly may come forth: then having thrust it cleane forth, lap a woollen wet cloath upon it, and with a Taylers hot pressing Iron, rub upon the cloath till you have made the cloath sucke in all the moysture from the wind-gall, and that the wind-gall is dry: then take of pitch, of rozen, and of masticke, of each like quantity, and being very hot, daub it all over the wind-gall; then clap good store of floxe of the colour of the horse upon it, and so let the horse rest or run at grasse till the playster fall off by its owne accord, and be sure the wind-gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a rule, that by no meanes you use to a wind-gall, either Ar-nick or Re-salgar : for commonly then the wind gall will come againe; neither must you burne much, nor make any great incision : For any of these will turne the soft substance of the wind-gall to hardnesse, and then the horse will be lame without cure.

### CHAP. XCIII.

*Of a straine in the pastorne joynt, or  
Fet-lock.*

**A** Horse may be strained in the Fet-lock, or Pastorne joynt, either by some wrench in the stable, when the planchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon some stone, or upon some Cart-rout, as he travelleth by the way. The signes whereof bee these : the joynt will be swolne and sore and the horse will halt ; and the cure, according to the old Farriers, is, take a quart of stale urine, and seeth it till the foame arise ; then straine it, and put thereto a handfull of Tansie, and a handfull of Mallows, and a saucerfull of honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps suet : then set it on the fire, and seeth them altogether till the hearbes be sodden soft ; and then being very hot, lay this Pultus to the joynt, and cover it over with a blew cloath ; and in three times dressing it will helpe the straine.

**¶** Other Farriers take of Dialthea halfe a pound, and as much Nerve-oyle; mingle them well together, and annoynt the sore place therewith, chafing it well with both your hands, that the oyntment may enter in,

continu-



continuing so to doe every day once untill the oyntment be all spent, and let the horse rest; but if this will not prevaile, then they will use cantharides, as in case of the splint: but I doe not hold that cure convenient, because it will make a double grieffe. Therefore I had rather you should take Pompilion, Nerve oyle, and blacke sope, of each alike, and heate them hot on the fire: and then annoynt the sore place therewith, and it will make the horse sound.

#### CHAP. XCV.

*To remedy any manner of halting that commeth by straine, stroake, or any other accident.*

**N**ow forasmuch as halting is such a generall forrance amongst horses, that not any man that is master of a horse, but even in his smallest travell, is at one time or other vexed with the same, I will here before I doe proceed any further, set you downe certaine generall receipts selected and culled out of the private practise and experiments of the best Farriers in Christendome, of which I may give the bolder testimony, because I have made practise of their vertues.

If then your horse have taken any halt, either by stiffnesse of sinewes, straine, wrench, stroake, or any other accident, if the grieffe bee in his legge; you shall take smallage, Oxeye, and sheepes suet, of each alike quantity, choppe them all together, and boyle it in mans urine, and bathe all the legge therewith: then with Hay ropes wet in cold water,

rowle up his legge, and he will be able to travell the next day.

☞ If you seeth a pound of blacke sope in a quart of strong Ale till it looke like tar, and annoynt the legge therewith, and it will supple the sinews, and bring them to their true course. If you wash his limbes with the grounds of beere or Ale made warme, and then rope them up with hay ropes wet in the same, it will recover a straine. If you take of the flower of Lin seed, of Turpentine, and life honey, of each a like, and boyle them with white wine untill they be thick like unto an oyntment: then spread it on a cloath, & lay it to the grieve, and it will take away any ach or paine in the sinewes: likewise a playster of wine lees and wheat flower, or a playster of blacke sope and Boars grease will do the like.

☞ If you mixe nerve oyle, oyle de bay, and Aqua-vitæ together, and warme it, and chafe it in and upon and about the straine, it will take the anguish quite away. If the grieve be in the shoulder, or the hinder legge, then burne him upon the very joynt, by taking up the skinne with a paire of pinsons, and thrust the skin through with a hot Iron over-thwart; and if this cure him not, then his paine is betwixt the thin skin and the bone, which must then be rowelled. If the grieve be in the shoulder, or in the hip, or else-where, then let him bloud, and saving the bloud, mix therewith the powder of Frankincence, and annoynt the horse with the same. If the grieve be onely in the sinewes, then take the plaister called Sologliatium, made of Gum-dragant, new waxe, pitch and Turpentine mixt together; or else take the yolkes of two eggs,

an ounce of Frankencence, and a little bran, and beate them well together, and lay it to the paine. If the griefe do proceed from a hot cause, then let the horse bloud, and with that bloud mixe vinegar and oyle, and annoynt him, and chafe it well in. But if it proceed from a cold cause, then let him bleed a little, and with figgs soaked a day in warme water, and as much Mustard seed, make a plaister, and lay it to the griefe. If it come either by any rush or stripe, let the horse bloud, & with that bloud mingle strong vinegar, eggs, shels and all, three ounces of Sanguis draconis, foure of Bole armony, and five of wheat meale, and daube it all over the sore place. If the griefe be in the shoulder, and the skinne broken, take Calles of Soria punn'd, & mingle them with honey, and lay it to the sore. If his paine come from the stiffnesse of his joynts, take a pound of blacke sope, and boyle it in a quart of Ale till it be thicke, and it will comfort the joynts. If the joynts be swell'd, then rozen, pitch, turpentine, and Sanguis Draconis molten together, and lay it to the swelling something warme, and it will either take away the swelling, or else ripen it and make it runne. If you take of the oyle of Camomile, oyle of Dill, butter and Agrippa, of each a like quantity; or else make a plaister of an ounce of Turpentine, halfe an ounce of Verdigrease, and the marrow of a Stagge; or bathe the horse with warme water, wherein Rosemary hath been sod, and it will ease any paine whatsoever. If the horses paine bee in his shoulder, first with a Lancet pricke the skin through betweene the spade bone and the marrow bone: then putting in a quill, blow the skin from the flesh,  
even

even all about : then thrusting out the wind with your hand, put in a rowell; then take a pottle of stale urine, seeth it with a pound of butter, and as much Swines grease, and a handfull of Mallowes, a handfull of tansie, a handfull of veruin, a handfull of red nettles, a handfull of southernwood, & a handfull of balm leaves, then beate them all well together, and so annoynt his shoulder therewith, and let him not goe forth of the stable for seven dayes. If his griefe be in any nether joynt, then take a handfull of Laurell leaves, and of Prim-rose leaves, of ground-Ivy, of Crow-foot, of Mallows, of red fennell, and of fine hay, of each of them severall as much; seeth them well together, and then let them stand fourteen days, then bathe the joynt once a day, and bind on the hearbs unto it foure dayes together: then after chafe into the joynt fresh grease and oyle mixt together, and it will ease all his paine. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about a horse be by any fluxe of humours sweld and growne out of shape, whereby the horse goeth stiffe, and halteth; then to dissolve those humours, take Worme wood, Sage, Rosemary, the barke, the Eme tree, and of a pine, together with Lin seed, and boyling these together make a bathe or pultus thereof, and lay it to the sicke member, and it will dissolve the humours, and so likewise will figs being stampt with salt, and applyed to the sore.

## CHAP. XCVI.

*Three rare and well approved medicines which will cure any manner of straine or swelling whatsoever, be it hard or soft, by what accident soever it shall come.*

**I**F the straine be newly taken, you shall then take vinegar of the best a pint, and of sweet buttter better then a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the fire; then with fine wheate branne, make it into a pultus upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the strain as the horse is able to indure it without scalding: and doe thus morning and evening till the straine be aswaged. But if the straine be of longer continuance, then take Mallowes and Chicke-weed, and boyle them either in the grounds of Ale or of strong Urine, and lay them very hot to the straine. Lastly, if your straine, by length of time, or evill medicines, be growne, in mens imaginations, past cure, the sinewes and swelling being bony, hard, and knotted: then you shall take Peece grease, which is made of Shoo-makers shreds, and melting it on the fire, annoynt and bathe the straine therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but also holding a hot bar of iron against it to make the ointment sinke in: then take a fine linnen rowler, and rowle up the legge gently: doe thus once a day, and it will take away the greatest and most desperate straine that may be.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XCVII.

*And her certaine approved cure for any  
straine whatsoeuer.*

**T**AKE Boares-grease, Bolearmonicke, black sope  
and Nerve oyle, of each a like quantity, boyle  
them well together, and then apply it hot to the  
griefe, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and also  
heating it in very well, either with a hot brick-bat,  
a hot fire shovell, or a hot bar of Iron. And thus doe  
once a day till the paine depart.

## CHAP. XCVIII.

*Of Enterfearing.*

**E**NTERFEARING is either when a horse through a na-  
turall straitnesse in his pace, or through evill and  
too broad shooing goeth so narrow behinde with  
his hinder feete, that he heweth the one against the  
other upon the inside of his legges, even with the  
pastorne joynt; and by meanes of this hewing there  
groweth hard mattery scabs, which are so sore, that  
they many times make the horse to halt much. The  
signes are the straitnesse of his going and the appa-  
rantnesse of the scabbs. Now the cure consisteth  
as much in prevention as in salve: For the preven-  
tion, which is to keepe a horse from hewing one  
legge upon another, it consisteth onely in the of-  
fice of the smith, and the making of his hinder  
shooes, whereby he may goe wider, and not touch:  
of which we shall speake more at large when we in-  
treat

treate of paring & shooing of each severall foot. For the salve which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus: You shall take of May butter (if you can get it) or else fresh grease or fresh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve oyle: then frye them altogether in a pan, and then let it stand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow dung: and then playsterwise apply this unto the sore, renewing it once a day, and it will not onely heale this sore, but also any pricke by a nayle whatsoever.

## CHAP. XCIX.

*Of the shackle gall, or gall in the Pastorne, either by shackle or locke.*

**I**F a horse be galled in the pastorne, on the heele, or upon the cornet, either with shackle or locke, as it many time happens in the Champian Countreyes, where the Farmers use much to teacher their horses: then for such a sore you shall take Honey and Verdegrease, and boyle them together till the one halfe be consumed, and that it looke red: then after it is a little cooled, you shall annoynt the sore place therewith twice a day, and then strow upon it a little chopt floxe to keepe on the salve. This is excellent for any gall whatsoever, and chiefly for the scratches.

## CHAP. C.

*Of hurts in the leggs which cometh by casting in the halter.*

**T**He hurts which a horse getteth by being cast in the halter, are many, and proceed from divers

acci-

accidents, as when the reins of the Coller are so long & will not runne to and fro, that the horse gets one or both his fore leggs or hind leggs over them, and then with strugling, woundeth and galleth them much; or else when a horse having a desire to scratch his eare with his hinder foote, rubbing it to and fro, in the end fasteneth his foot either in the coller or the reines, and then the more he striveth to loosen it, the more he galleth and woundeth it, even somtimes to the very bone. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus: Take of oyle olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, & then put thereunto a little waxe, and working them all well together lay it playster-wise unto the sore, renewing it once a day untill it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which onely annoynt the sore with the whites of egges and sallet oyle mixt together; and then when the sore commeth to a scabbe, annoynt it with butter being molten untill it looke browne.


Now for mine owne part, the cure which I principally use for this sorrhance, is to take of wax, of Turpentine, and of hogges grease, of each one ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot: then take an ounce of Verdigrease beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hogges grease, and mixe them very well together, and put that into another pott: then when you dresse the sore, take of the first salve two parts, & of the latter a third part, and mixing them well together in the palm of your hand, annoynt all the sore place therewith, doing thus once a day till it be whole.



## CHAP. CII.

*Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayl e*

**T**He Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayles, being all but one sorrhance, are long, scabby, & dry chappes, or rifts, growing right up and downe, and overthwart on the hinder leggs, just from the fetlocke upon the place of the Curbe; and as the Paines are under the fetlocke, so the Scratches are above the fetlocke : and do proceed either from dry melancholly humors ingendred by outward filth, or else by fuming of the horses dung, lying either neere or under him. The signs are both the apparant sight and the easie feeling of the same, besides the staring, dividing, and curling of the haire, as also that the sorrhance will stinke much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of these former Medicines whatsoever, which are already recited, either for the paines, or Mules ; yet for your more particular understanding, you shall know, these medicines are most proper for this sorrhance. First, you shall shave away the haire, and make the sore raw : then take of Turpentine halfe a pound, of honey halfe a pint, of Hogges grease halfe a quarterne, and three yolkes of eggs, and of Bole-armony a quarterne beaten into powder, of Beane flower halfe a pint; mixe all these well toget her, and make a salve thereof, and then with your finger annoynt all the sore places therewith, and let the horse come in no wet during the cure.

Other Farriers use (and sure it is the better practise)   
first

first after they have shaved away the haire, and laid the sore raw, to wash it well with old urine very warme, then take blacke sope, Mustard, and viniger of each a like quantity, and mixe therewith some of an Oxe gall; then stirre them well together, and chafe and rubbe the place therewith, and bind there-to a cloath, so use it once aday till it be whole: then after annoynt it with Neates-foot oyle to supple the sinewes againe. Others use to take the finest hay, and burn it to ashes upon a faire board; then mixe it with Neates foot oyle, and make a salve thereof; then all to rub the sores untill they bleed, and then annoynt them with the said salve, and rope his leggs, and keep them from wet. Others use after they have washt the sore with old stale, then to take a quantity of strong Mustard, Vinegar, gray sope, Barrowes grease and some Quicke-silver; mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the sore.

**¶** Other Farriers take a quantity of unslackt lime, halfe so much blacke sope, and so much of strong Vinegar as shall suffice to make it like an oyntment: then the haire being cut away, and the sore washt with urine, lay to this oyntment, renewing it not the space of two dayes, and it will kill the sorrhance: then wash the place once or twice with warme wine; then after heale it with Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together; & in no wise let the horse come in any wet. Others use after they have washt the sore place with urine, and clipt away the haire; and made the wound raw, to take butter and tarre, of each alike, and boiling them together, annoynt all the sore place therewith every day till it be whole.

Other

Others take of hony and verdigrease of each a like, and boyle them together untill halfe bee consumed, and then annoynt the sore therewith once a day untill it be whole. Others of our latter Farriers use either to shave off the haire, or scald it off with orpiment and unfleckt lime boyled in strong lee; then wash it with warme vinegar or white wine, then when it is dry annoynt it with this oyntment. Take of Orpiment one ounce, of verdigrease three ounces, of soote five ounces, a little unfleckt lime, and of honey one pound; mingle them all well together upon a soft fire, and being made like an oyntment, use it as aforesaid once a day to the sore; or else take honey, sope, verdigrease, unfleckt lime and vinegar, and boyle them with Ah llome, Galles, and maile, till it come to a playster, and then apply it unto the sore, or else boyle sallet oyle with a little suet and sope, then skimme it and take it from the fire; then add an ounce of Quicke-silver resolved, two ounces of verdigrease, three ounces of unfleckt lime, and one ounce of white waxe: when all these are well mixt together, and make into a salve, then apply it once a day unto the sore untill it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have shaved the place, to boyle vinegar and the skin of larde or Bacon together: and apply that to the sore three daies together: then take larde molten litargie, masticke, verdigrease and soote mingled together, with goates milke and lay it to, renewing it once a day untill the sore be healed. The scraping of a pannes botome mixt with the inner pils of Elder, are also good for the scratches; or new mans dung applyed for

five dayes, and after annoynt the sore with oyle and sope mixt together. Others take of unfleckt lime, the powder of glasse, and of Verdigrease, of each one an ounce ; of Orpiment an ounce ; of oyle and of fresh grease, of each foure ounces ; mixe all these well together, and apply it to the sore untill it bee whole : If you take blacke snailes and burre rootes and beate them together, it will also helpe this sor-  
rance. Other Farriers take an ounce of sope, two ounces of unfleckt lime, and as much lye, or strong vinegar as will temper it, and so dresse the sore untill it be whole. Others take Fenugreeke and beate it, three Oranges cut in peeces, halfe a pound of sheeps fuet, new sheepsdung ; boyle all these in the grounds of good Ale, and then bathe the horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him up with hay ropes, and so let him stand three dayes, then bathe him so a-  
gaine.

✠ Others take hogges grease, sope, brimstone, soote, and honey, boyle them and lay them to coole, you may also adde Verdigrease ; but before you lay on this oyntment scrape the scabs off, and make them bleed, and rub them with sope, mustard, and vine-  
ger mixt together.

CHAP. CII.

*A most certaine and approved cure for the  
Scratches.*

✠ **A**fter you have cut away the haire, rubb off the scabs, and wash the sores with old urine, Allome and Salt mixt together, and applyed as hot as the  
horse

horse can suffer it ; Then take the toppes and tender buds of Elder, and the greene brier berries, and boyle them in a pottle of new wort, and put thereto good store of Allome, and with this hot, wash the horses legge once, twice or thrice a day and it is a certain cure.

## CAHP. CIII.

*Of the Ring bone.*

**T**He Ring bone is a sorrhance, which appeareth above upon the cronet of the hoof, being a certain hard gristle growing sometimes round about the same. It proceedeth as some Farriers hold opinion either from some blow of another horse, or by striking the horses foote against some stub or stone, or such like accident : But surely I hold that it also proceedeth from some imperfection in nature, for as much as I have seen many foales foaled with Ring bones on their feete, These Ring bones doe breed a viscous and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their own nature cold & dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some bone, and so in processe of time becommeth a bone. The signes of the sorrhance are, the apparant sight of the sorrhance, being higher then any part of the cronet, the staring of the haire, and the halting of the horse.

The cure according to ancient Farriers, is first to scarifie the skin above the ring bone with a lancet ; then take a great Onyon and pick out the core ; then put into it verdigrease and unsleckt lime, then cover the hole, and roast the onyon soft, then bruise it in a

morter, and so very hot lay it to the ring bone : doe thus foure dayes together and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the sorrhance with warme water, and shave away the haire : then scarify it lightly with the point of a razor so as the bloud may issue forth : then dresse it with Cantharides and Euforbium in such sort as hath beene taught for the splent, using him, and curing him after the same manner ; but when the haire beginneth to grow againe, then draw the sore place with a hot drawing Iron in strait lines, from the pastorne downe to the coffin of the hough in this manner : and let the edge of the drawing Iron bee as thicke as the backe of a meate knife, and burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke yellow : that done, cover the burning with pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon floxe of the horses owne colour, and about three dayes after lay againe some of the last mentioned playster, and also new flox upon the old and there let them remain till they fall away of themselves. Others use to shave off the haire, and to scarifie the sore with a Lancit till it bleede : then strew upon it the powder of Tartar, and salt, of each a like mixt together, and bind it strait : then after annoynt it with fresh grease, or else soften the Ring-bone with the skinne of old Bacon, the fat being scraped off that you may see through the skinne, and laid to after it is shaven and made bleed, after launce it and let out the Ring-bone. Others use to launce the skin with a Razor, then opening the skinne with a cornet, pricke the Ring bone. Lastly, strew upon it the powder of Vitriole, and bind it on

so as it may not stir for nine dayes; then thrust out the matter which is dissolved. Lastly, wash it with salt, with urine & vineger mixt together. Other Farriers doe use after they have shaved it, to lay unto it a plaister made of bran & honey, with the yong leaves of worme-wood, pellitory, and Branke-ursine mingled with swines grease and beaten together, and boyled, & used as hot as the horse can suffer it. This medicine will not onely cure the ring-bone, but any other swelling whatsoever. Also a playster of the leaves of smallage being beaten to peeces, is not onely good for this sorrhance but for any windgall also. To wash a ring-bone continually with strong vineger will abate it: or else to shave away the haire, and take halfe a Lemmon and sprinkle Arsnicke thereon, and lay it to the ring-bone and it will eat it away, if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard egge burning hot unto the ring bone it will take it away. Lastly, if you take Euforbium, and mingle it with oyle of Juniper, salt and pepper, and so apply it to the ring-bone, it will in a very short space consume the ring-bone quite away; alwaies provided that you keepe the horse from any wet during his cure.

### CAHP. CIIII.

*Of hurts on the cornet by crossing one foote.  
on another.*

**I**F your horse by crossing one foote upon another, chance to wound or hurt the cornet of his hoofe, you shall then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, first wash it well with white wine, or with

warme urine, and then lay unto it the white of an egge mixt with chimney soote and salt ; and that if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three dayes dry up the sore. Other Farriers use first to pare or cut away the hoofe that it touch not the hurt, and keepe it cleane from filth by washing it with vrine : then seeth two egges hard and take off the shells, then presse them with your hand long, and first roast one hot and tye it to hard ; when that is cold use the other : after make a plaister of soote, salt and oyle boyled together, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill it be whole.

#### CHAP. CV.

*A most certaine and approved cure for any hurt upon the coronet whatsoever.*

**T**AKE of Sope and salt of each a like quantity, & mixe them together like apast, then having cut out the over reach or hurt and lay it plaine: first wash it with urine and salt, or beere and salt, and with a cloth dry it, then bind on the mixt sope and salt ; not renewing it in 24. houres, and thus do (if the wound be great) for 3. or 4. dayes together : Then having drawne out all the venome (as this salve will quickly doe) then take a spoonfull or two of Traine oyle, and as much Ceruse, which we call white lead, and mixe it together to a thicke salve : then spread that upon the sore morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected suddainly : for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and naturall for the breeding of a new hoofe.



## CHAP. CVI.

*Of the Crowne Scabbe.*

**T**He Crowne scabbe is a stinking and filthy scabbe, breeding round about the corners of the hoofe, and is a cankerous and painefull sorrhance, it cometh oft times by meanes that the horse hath been bred in a fenny marish ground, where the cold striking corrupt humours up to his feete, ingendred this sorrhance, which is ever more painefull in the winter then in the summer. The signes are, the haire of the cornet will be very thinne and staring like bristles, and the cornets will be alwayes mattering and run on water. Now the cure according to the opinion of many Farriers is, to take the skin of Bacon, and lay thereon foot and salt beaten together, mingled with grease or fuet, wax, and pitch molten together, and if the flesh chance to grow proud, eate it away either with Verdigrease beaten to powder, or with the scrapings of a Harts horne, or an Oxe horne made into fine powder.

Other Farriers use to take of sope, & of hogs-grease of each halfe a pound, of Bole-armony a little, of Turpentine a quarterne; mixe them well together, and make a playster and bind it fast on, renewing it every day once untill it leave running; & then wash it with strong vinegar being luke warme, every day once untill the sore bee cleane dryed up, and let the horse come in no wet untill the sorrhance be whole. Others use onely to bathe it continually with old stale sod with salt, & that will dry up the humour and heale it.

## CHAP. CVII.

*Of the quitter-bone.*

**T**He Quitter bone is a hard round swelling upon the Cronet of the hoofe, betwixt the heele and the quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the foote : It breedeth most commonly by meanes of Gravell gathered underneath the shooe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an ulcer to break upward: or else it commeth by the cloying or pricking of some naile driven by an ignorant Smith, the anguish wherof looseth the Gristle, and so breedeth evill humours, whereof the Quitter bone springeth: the signes are, the Horse will halt much, and the swelling is apparant to the eye, which in foure or five dayes commeth to a head, and will breake out with matter at a little deepe hole like a Fistula, and surely then this Quitter bone, there is no outward Sorrance whatsoever more dangerous to a Horse. The cure thereof according to the opinion of some of the ancient Farriers is, first to cut the hoofe to the quicke: then seeth a Snake or an Adder till the flesh part from the bone, and be molten as an unguent; then annoynt the sore place therewith very warme even to the bottome, and during the cure

Ⓜ keep the foote cleane from any filth; for this both dryeth and killeth the Quitter bone. Other of the old Farriers first burne about the Quitter bone with a hot Iron in manner of a halfe Circle, and then with the same Iron draw another right through the midst thereof in this sort: then take of Arsnicke the quantity of a **M** Beane beaten into fine powder, and put it **M** into the Hole, thrust-  
in

ing it dowhe to the bottome with a quill, and stop the mouth of the hole with a little tow, and bind it so fast with a cloath and a rowler that the horse may not come at it with his mouth, and so let it rest for that day; and the next day if you see that the sore looketh blacke within, then it is a signe that the Arsnicke did worke well; then to allay the burning of it, taint the hole with flaxe dipt in Hogges grease, and Turpentine molten together, and cover the taint with a plaister of pitch, Rozen, waxe and Turpentine molten together, but there must be as much Turpentine as of all the rest: and thus you must continue to doe untill you have gotten out the core, which the Arsnicke did eate; then you shall see whether the loose gristle in the bottome be uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feele with your finger or with a quill whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raise the gristle with a little crooked instrument, and pull it cleane out with a paire of small nippers or mullets made for the purpose: that done, thrust it againe with a full taint, dipt in the aforesaid oyntment, to asswage the anguish of the last dressing, and stop it hard to the intent that the hole may not shrink together or close up: and the next day take out the taint, and taint it anew with honey and verdigrease boyled together till they look red, renewing it every day once vntill it be whole, keeping alwaies the mouth of the sore as open as you may, to the intent that it heale not up too fast, and let not the horse come in any wet, nor travell untill hee bee perfectly whole. Other Farriers use to cut the hoofe open to the quick; then take Galba-

num.

num Sagapenum, pitch of Greece, Olibanum, Masticke, oyle and white waxe, of each one ounce, with halfe a pound of sheeps suet : melt them upon a soft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dresse the sore place untill it be whole. Others use after the sore is opened to put in salt of Tartar and when it hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heale it up with honey and verdigrease boyled as aforesaid. Others take of Goates dung two ounces, of sheeps tallow three ounces, and as much strong vinegar as will suffice to boyle them well in, and then therewith to dresse the Quitter bone untill it be cleane whole.

#### CHAP. CVIII.

##### *Of gravelling a horse.*

**G**Ravelling is a certaine fretting of gravel, sand, or Idurt, under the foote betwixt the sole and the shooe, sometimes on the inside, and sometimes on the outside of the foote, and some times on both sides of the heele. It commeth as I said by meanes of little gravell stones getting between the hoofe, or calking or sponge of the shooe, which by continuall labour and travell of the horse doth eate through the hoofe into the quicke of the foote ; and the rather if the horses heeles be soft and weake, or that the shooe doe lye flat to his foote, so as the gravell being gotten in it cannot get out againe.

The signes whereof are these, the horse will halt much, and covet to goe most on his toe to favour his heele, and the softer the way is, the more is the horses

ses ease. Now for the cure according to the old Farriers it is thus; first pare the hoofe till you may see the sore, then take an ounce of Virgin waxe, and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deeres suet, and halfe an ounce of Boares grease, and beate them all well together in a mortar, and then melt them together on the fire; that done, dip good store of flaxe therein, and so stop up the sore close and hard, and then you may travell the horse whither you please; and do thus once a day untill the foote bee sound. Other of the old Farriers use first to pare the hoofe, and to get out the gravell with a drawing knife leaving none behind; then stop the sore place with Turpentine and Hoggesgrease molten together, and laid on with a little towe or flaxe, and then clap on the shooe, to keepe in the stopping, renewing it every day once untill it bee whole, and suffer the horse to come in no wet untill it be healed. Now you must understand that if a gravelling be not well stopt to keepe downe the flesh it will rise higher then the hoofe, and so put the Farrier to much more paine, both in bolstring it, and abating that ill grown substance.

Others use onely to pare the foote, and picke out all the gravell cleane, then wash it well with Beere and salt; then melt into it tallow, Rozen, and pitch: then covering it hard and close with flaxe set on the shooe againe, and doe thus once a day. Others use after they have cleansed the sore to lay hurds into it: being dipt in the white of Egges, then after heale it with salt beaten small & mixt with strong vinegar, or else with the powder of Galles, Salt, and Tartar,  
mixt:

mixt together, which also is good for any cloying or pricking.

CHAP. CIX.

*Of surbating.*

**S**urbating is a continuall beating of the hoofe against the ground, and it commeth sometimes by meanes of evill shooing lying too flat to his foote, or by going long bare-foote; and sometimes by the hardnesse of the ground, and the high lifting of the horses feete, either in his trot or in his amble; and the horses which are most subject to this sorrhance, are those which have either great round feete, or such as are flat footed, the Coffins whereof are weake and tender, and also those which have weake heeles. The signs of the grieve are, the horse will halt much and goe creeping and stiffe, as if he were halfe foundred.

The cure according to the opinion of the old Farriers is, to roast a couple of egges exceeding hard and then in the very violence of their heate, to burst them in the horses feete, and then poure hot boyling Sallet oyle also amongst them, and so stop the shooe up close with a peece of leather, and two crosse splents of wood, and doe thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will helpe him.

Other of the ancient Farriers take off the horses shooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the shooes be not easie, that is to say, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them so, and tacke them on again with foure and five nailes: that done,  
stop

stoppe his feete with Hogges-grease, and bran boyled together so hot as may be, and also cover all the coffin round about with the same, binding all in together with a cloth, and a list fastned about the joynt renewing it every day once untill it be sound; and give the horse during the cure warme water to drink and let him stand dry, and not have much travaile.

Now if your horse surbate in your travell, if every night you stope his feet well with Cowes dung, or with Cowes dung and vinigar, it will make him endure out his journey. Or Cowes dung and new layd eggs beaten together.

#### CHAP. CX.

*Of the pricke in the sole of the Foote, either by treading on a nayle, or any other sharpe thing.*

**I**F a horse in his travell chance to tread either on a stubbe, naile, thorne, or any other sharpe thing: whatsoever, by meanes whereof he is prickt in the sole of the foote, the rider shall perceive the same by the suddain faultring of the horse, who will instantly stand still and lift up his foote as desiring help: And if it chance at any other time then the halting of the horse, and the diligent searching of a carefull Farrier must find out the mischief.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the auncient Farriers is, first to pull off the shooe, and pare the foote, and with a drawing knife uncover the hole, making the mouth so broad as a two pence

pence: then tacke on the shooe againe; that done, stoppe it by powring into the hole Turpentine and hogges greafe molten together, and lay some flaxe or towe upon it; and then stop all the horses foote with Cowes dung; and so covering it with a piece of leather, splint it with two crosse stickes, so as the stopping may abide in, renewing it every day once untill it be whole, and let the horse tread in no wet.

Now you must bee very carefull in the curing of this sorrhance; For if it bee not healed from the bottome; besides that it is dangerous to the life of the horse, it is also a great hazard that the sore will breake out at the toppe of the hoofe, and so loosen the hoofe round about, and perhaps make it to fall cleane away; but if you see that it beginne to breake out above, then make a greater issue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the sole away, that the flesh may have the more liberty: then take of Bole armony halfe a quarterne and of beane flower as much, and two egges: beate them, and mingle them well together, and make a plaister thereof upon tow, and lay it round about the cornet, bind it fast on, and so let it remaine the space of two dayes, and then renew it againe, not failing so to do every two days untill you see it wax hard and firme above: for this plaister being restrictive, will force the humours to resort alwayes downward; which humours must be drawne out with turpentine and hogges greafe as before, untill it leave mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allome beaten into powder, and strewed upon the sore, with a little flax laid againe upon that, continuing



tinuing so to do every day once untill it bee hardened; and let not the horse come in any wet untill it be whole.

Other Farriers use to taint the sore with Tallow, Tarre, and Turpentine being molten together, and annoynt all the coffin and cornet of the hough with Bole armory and vinegar beaten together till the sore be whole, especially if the thing which did prick the horse was venemous or rusty.

### CHAP. CX.

*To draw out either Stub, Thorne, or Iron, either out of the foote, or any other part of the body.*

**I**F either the Stub, the Thorne, the Iron, or any thing whatsoever, wherewith your horse is wounded, be gotten so deepe into the flesh that you can not get hold upon it to pull it out; then according to the opinion of the old Farriers, (if you find that albeit it be too deep, yet it is not much too deepe) you shall take a good quantity of blacke sope, and lay it to the sore for a whole night, and it will make it to appeare, so as you may pull it out with a paire of nippers: but if it lye very deepe, then you may open the place with a launcet, and thrusting in your mullets or nippers, pull it out by strength, and afterwards heale up the wound as was before taught in the last Chapter.

Other Farriers say, that the rootes of reedes being stampt & mixt with hony, it will draw out any stub or nayle: so will also blacke snailes being stampt and wrought with fresh butter. Now if the place bee  
much

much swolne, then it is good to molifie it with a plaster made of worme-wood, parietory, beares foote, Hoggs-grease, and honey well boyled and mixt together, which will asswage any new swelling that commeth by stripe or otherwise. Now when you have gotten out that which you sought for, then you shal poure into the wound scalding oyle of olive; when that is cold, poure into it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold, strew on the powder of Sulphur, and then bolster his foote or the sore with hurds, and keepe it from all wet and filthinesse..

CHAP. CXI.

*Of the Figge.*

IF a horse having received any hurt, as is before said, either by stub, great naile, thorne, bone, splent or stone either in the sole, or any other part of the foote, and be not well dressed, and perfectly cured, there will grow in that place a certaine superfluous peece of flesh like unto a figge, full of little white graines as you see are in a figge. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the auncient Farriers is, first with a hot Iron to cut the figge cleane away, and keepe the flesh downe with Turpentine, Hogges-grease, and a little wax molten together and layd on with a little tow, stopping the hole hard that the flesh rise not, renewing it once a day untill the sore bee whole.

Now other of our latter Farriers use after they have as before is said cut away the figge, then to take the croppes of young Nettles, and chopping them

them very small, lay them upon a cloath just as bigge as a figge: then take the powder of Verdigrease, and strew it thinne upon the chopt nettles, and so bind it to the sore, renewing it once a day untill the hoofe have covered the sore, and this is a most certaine cure.

## CHAP. CXII.

*Of a Retraice.*

**A** Retrait is when a horse by the ill goverment of the Smith, is prickt in the foot with some ill driven naile, yet in such sortt hat it is immediatly espied, and the naile drawne backe againe; and although it proceedeth ofttest from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may also come by reason of the weakenesse of the naile, and the hollownesse of the shanke: for when the naile is a little too weake, the point many times bendeth awry into the quicke, when it should goe right forth; & when it is hollow, it shivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quicke in pulling out, or else perhaps breaketh asunder, and so remaineth still behind and this kind of pricking is the worst of all other, because it will rankle worst, in as much as the flaw cankereth and remaineth still in the foot. The signs hereof are, first the apparant shrinking and struggling of the horse, so soone as the quicke is touched; and next is much halting: lastly you shall search his foot with a hammer, by knocking on the clenche of every naile: for when you knocke upon that naile where the griefe is, the horse will shrinke up his

foot, and if that will no serve, then grope the hoofe with a pare of pinsons round about untill you have found the place grieved. Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to pull off the shooe, and then open the place grieved, either with a butteris, or with a drawing knife, so that you may perceive either by feeling or seeing, whether there be any peece of naile or not; if there be, then pull it cleane out: after take of nettles halfe a handfull, and bruise them in a mortar, and put thereto a spoonfull of redde vineger, and a spoonefull of blacke sope, and two ounces of Boares grease, or the fat of salt Bacon, and bray all these well together, and stop well the hole of the sore with this, and then tacke on the shooe againe, and you may safely adventure to travell him. Other Farriers use, after they have opened the sore, to stop the hole with Turpentine, waxe, and sheepes suet molten together, and so poured hot into the hole; and then lay a little tow upon it, and clap on the shooe againe, renewing it thus once every day untill it be whole; during which time, the horse must not come in any wet, and it must bee stopped in this sort though it be but a pricke, without any peece of nayle remaining: and if for lacke of looking to in time, this Retraite causes the horse to breake out, then you shall cure it either with a restrictive plaister of Bolearmony, beane flower and egges, mentioned in the 78. Chapter, or else with chopt nettles and verdigrease spoken of in the last Chapter.

Now there be other Farriers, which not onely

ly for this retrait, but for any pricke in the Horses foot, use after they have layd open the wound to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar one ounce, of pitch one ounce, of Beefe suet one ounce, and one head of Garlicke ; boyle them altogether and lay them to it so hot as may be suffered : and if it chance to breake out above the Hoofe, then apply also the same medicine unto it and it will cure it.

.CHAP. CXIII.

*Of Cloying.*

**A** Horse is sayd to be cloyed with a nayle, or prickt with a nayle, when the whole naile is stricken in to the quicke of the foot, and so remaineth still in the same and is clinshed as other nayles be, by meanes whereof the horse halteth extreamely. Now this grief is knowne by searching the grieved place with a hammer or pinsons as is before said. Now for the cure according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, if the horse halt immediatly, then pull off his shooe, and open the hole untill it begin to bleed, and then stop up the hole with Turpentine, Waxe, and sheepes suet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day untill it be whole ; and let the horse tread in no wet, and let his shooe be tackt on againe assoone as he is drest. Others use onely to poure into the hole hot scalding butter, and that will heale it, or else to burne the hole with another nayle, and that will heale it. Other Farriers use after they have opened well the sore, to take halfe a pound of Frankinsence, a pound of Rozen, a pound

of Pitch of Greece, halfe a pound of blacke pitch, a pound of new waxe, a pound of goats greafe, halfe a pound of varnish, halfe a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of oyle Olive; and melt them altogether, and lay this to the hoofe playsterwise, and it will not onely heale any pricke whatsoever, but also any cracks, chincks, or clifts in the hoofe howsoever they breed; provided that you let the horse tread in no wet during the cure: but if the sore chance to break out on the top of the hoofe, then you shall take two or three yolkes of egges, whites and all beaten together, and adde thereunto an ounce of bole armony, and as much beane or wheat flower as will thicken the same: then make a playster thereof two fingers broed, and as long as will go round about on the top of the horses hoof, bind it fast on with a rowler, and renew it once a day untill it be whole.

Other Farriers use after they have searched and layd open the wound, to put into it hurds dipt in the white of an egge: then stop the hole with salt beaten very small, mingled with Vervine and strong vinegar, and cover it with flaxe dipt in strong vinegar: or else holding up the horses foot, poure into the wound hot scalding oyle Olive: and when that is cold poure in hot Turpentine, and that being cold strew upon it the powder of Sulphure: then lay on the bolster of flaxe: then shooe him and keepe him from treading in any wet.

Others use to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphure, Mallowes, and very strong vinegar; boyle them together untill they bee thicke like an oynment: then lay the same to the sore as hot as the horse

horse can indure it, renewing it once in twelve hours till it be whole,

Others use to take of honey and vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little oyle, and suct of a hee Ooate, boyle them with a soft fire, and stirre it: when it waxeth red, adde Verdigrease and Vitrioll, of each a like, made into powder, stil stirring it till it be thick and red; then stoppe the sore every day therewith untill it be whole, after you have washed it well with salt and vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlicke and Cabbage leaves beaten with swines grease, and lay that to the sore: or else take Tallow and horse dung, and mixing them well together, stop the sore therewith, and in short space it will cure it.

Other Farriers use to take off the shooe, and having opened the sore, to wash it with wine: then lay upon it the inner rine of Elder, and through that melt in grease with a hot Iron: then tack on the shooe againe, and do thus divers dayes together, and it is a certaine cure.

### CHAP. CXIII.

#### *Generall Observations for the Feete and Hoofes of a Horse.*

Forasmuch as the feete and Hooves of a Horse are the onely Instruments of labour, and that, a small grieffe in that part deprives a man of the benefit and use of the rest; I thinke it not amisse before I speake of the particular diseases of the Hoofes, to shew you some generall notes and observations which you shall observe for the benefit of the

feete. Know then, that first it is meete that you let your shooes before be rather short then too long with strong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nayles to have speciall good heads.

Let your shooes behind have no cawkin on out-side; but if he enter-feare; let the cawkin be on the in side to make him cast outward, and let the in side of that side inward have a welt an inch deep or be twice as thicke as the outside: but if all this helpe not his enter-fearing, then bring him unto an Amble; but if hee will not amble, burne him with a hot Iron betweene the legges, that the sorenesse thereof may make him goe wide behind, which is an ordinary practise amongst the Italians and French-men.

Let your shooes be made of Iron that will not breake, of which our English is the best, the Spanish next, and the Danske worst. Let them also be light, yet so as they may be able to beare the burthen of the horse, heing broader at the toes, then at the cawkins or spunges.

Let your cawkins be short, and blunt at the points, and your spunges long and thicke.

Let your shooe bee full as strait as the horne of the Hoofe so farre as the Nayles goe, and from the two heele nayles backe-ward, let the shooe be broader then the hoofe, that the shooe may be without the horne.

Give unto every shooe nine nayles, on each side foure, and one in the middest; and let the shankes of the nayles be very flat and thin, that if the hoofe be naught, they may yet keepe the shooe firme with  
little



little hold, and the neerer that your nayles are dry-ven backe-ward towards the heele (so it be without danger) the faster the shooe will fit, and the harder to be pull'd away.

Let your cawkins sit a straws breadth behind the corner of the coffin, and let your nayle heads enter into the shoe, especially on the out-side, and by all meanes hollow your shooe so little as possible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heele of a horse: yet open his heeles as sufficiently as may be, because ever the heele must be thicke, and the toe thinne.

In faire wayes pare the sole thin, but in Frost, or stony wayes, pare as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoofe is higher on the out-side then on the inside, it will make a horse enterfear and when it is higher on the inside, it will make a horse straddle, so that a fair smooth table is of all most convenient. After travell, ever stop the in-side of the hoofe with Cows dung, and rub the out-side and the Cronet with the sward of fat Bacon: for that will keepe a tough, smooth, and a sound hoofe. As your nayles have strong heads, so let them have thin shankes, for that will best prevent hurting, and keepe the shooe close unto the hoofe.

## CHAP. CXV.

*Of loosening the Hoofe, and how to make  
the Hoofes grow.*

A Hoofe is said to be loosened when there is a dissolution or parting of the horne or Cofin of the Hoofe from the flesh, at the setting on of the Cronet. Now if this dissolution or parting be round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by meanes of some foundring; but if it be but in part, then it proceedeth from some anguish caused either by the pricking of some channell naile, or other nayle piercing the sole, or quarters of the foote, or by some Quitter bone, retraite, gravelling, or cloying, or such like accident. The signes of the disease be these: When it is loosened by foundring, then it will breake first, and the dissolution will appeare on the sore part of the Cronet, right against the toe, because the humour doth covet alwayes to descend towards the toe, but if it proceed from pricking, gravelling, or such like, then the Hoofe will loosen round about, equally even at the first, but when it proceedes from some Quitter bone, or hurt upon the cronet, then the hoofe will breake right about the place that is offended, and most commonly will goe no further.

Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, of what cause soever the loosening proceed, first to bee sure to open the hoofe in the sole of the foote, so as the humour may have free passage downward; and then to bind about the top  
of

of it, the restrictive plaister spoken of in the seaven-ty eight Chapter, and in the 117. Chapter, and in such sort as it is there written, and then heale it up with Turpentine and Hogs-grease molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three Spoonfull of Tarre, and a quarter of a pound of Rozen, and halfe a handfull of Tansie, and halfe a handfull of Rew, and halfe a handfull of red Mints, and halfe an handfull of Southerne-wood, and bray all these together in a mortar: then adde halfe a pound of butter, and a penny worth of Virgins waxe; then melt them all together over the fire, untill it come to a thicke plaister or salve: then spread some of it upon a cloath and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a day for seaven dayes and it will heale it.

Others vse to take the braines of a Swine or a Pig, and to stop his hoofe very well therewith three daies together, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and it will grow fast, and endure as well, or rather better then ever it did. Other Farriers vse to cut out the sole below, letting it bleede well; after stop it with hurds dipt in the whites of eggs: tye this to for twenty foure houres, then wash it with strong Vineger warme, after fill it with Tarter and salt of each a like quantity, let that remaine in two dayes; then anoynt it with the oyntment made of Olibanum, Masticke, pitch of Greece, of each a like, and a little Sanguis Draconis, and of new Wax and sheepes suet as much as of the first, and melt and boyle them very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the sore be whole. But if you perceive that any new hoofe come, then cut away the old, lest the  
hard.

hardnesse of the one hinder the tenderesse of the other ; and then annoynt the new hoofe with suet, oyle, and waxe, of each alike boyled together, to make it grow; or else with pitch of Greece, masticke, Olibanum, Sanguis Draconis, and Galbanum, of each alike, being molten with suet : for this will make the new hoofe to grow also.

So will also new waxe, honey, oyle, Swine grease, and sheepes suet, being boyled together, and when it is cold, adde Masticke, Sanguis Draconis, and Frankinsence, and incorporate them altogether, for nothing sooner then this will make either new or old hoofe grow. Others use to take shels snails, and stampe them, and lay them twice a day to the sore : and it will either fasten the old hoofe, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there bee other Farriers which first fill the sore with Turpentine, and after it hath laine twenty foure houres, then wash the sore with urine and Copperas water, then fill it either with verdigrease, or with sheepes tallow; pitch and rozen boyled together ; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the sore very hot twice a day till it be whole.

#### CHAP. CXVI.

##### *Of casting the hoofe.*

**T**He casting of the hoofe is when the whole coffin thereof falleth cleane away from the foote; which commeth of all the former causes rehearsed in the last chapter, and is so apparant to the eye, that it needeth none other signes. Now for the cure, it is thus, take of Turpentine one pound, of tarre halfe a pint

pint, of unwrought waxe halfe a pound, of sheepes fuet halfe a pound, and of sallet oyle halfe a pinte; boyle all these things together, and stirre them continually untill they bee thoroughly mixt together; then make a boote of leather, with a strong sole fit for the horses foote, to be laced fast about the Pastorne; then dresse his foote with the salve aforesaid laid upon flaxe or tow, and bolster and stop his foot with soft flaxe, so as the boote may grieve him no manner of wayes, renewing it every day once untill the new hoofe come: then as the hoofe beginneth to harden, if it grow either thicke, crumpled, or out of order; with a fine Rape file keepe it smooth, and plaine untill the hoofe be perfect, and then put him to grasse, that there it may take a kindly hardning, and toughnesse.

### CHAP. CXVII.

#### *Of the Hoofe-bound.*

**T**He Hoofe bound is nothing else but a shrinking in of the whole hoofe in the upper part therof & at the heels, making the skin to stare above the hoofe, and to grow over the same. It proceedeth from keeping the horses hooves to dry in the stable, or from strait shooing, or from some unnaturall heate after foundring; and the signes of the disease are, that the horse will halt much, and his hooves will be hot; and if you knocke upon them with an hammer, they will sound hollow like an emptie bottle; and if both his feet bee not hoofe bound, then the sore foote will ever bee the lesser: and you shall also understand

stand, that this disease of some Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: take a pound of the sward of Bacon, and a quarterne of a pound of white sope, and a handfull of balme, and a handfull of bay leaves, and foure or five branches of Rew, and stamp them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the coronet of the hoofe very hot, suffering it so to abide the space of five or sixe dayes, and then renew it, but in no case let him tread in any wet place, and this will helpe him.

Others of the ancient Farriers use, first to pull off his shooes, and to shooe him with halfe moone shooes, called Lunets, or Lunet, the shape, whereof you shall see in another place; then rase both the quarters of the hoofe with a drawing knife, from the coronet unto the sole of the foote, so deepe that you may see the dew come forth: and if you make two razors, on each side, it shall be so much the better, and inlarge the hoofe the more; that done, annoynt all the hoofe above, next unto the coronet, round about with the oyntment described before in the last Chapter of casting the hoofe, continuing so to do every day once untill he begin to amend; and let him be ridden upon some soft ground an houre or two every day once for the space of a moneth; and if he goe not well at the moneths end, then take off the halfe shooes, and pare all the soles, frush and also thinne, that you may see the dew come forth, and tacke on a whole shooe, and stop all the foot within with Hoggs grease and bran molten together, and layd very hot to the  
foote

foote, touching it every day once the space of nine dayes, to the intent the sole may rise; but if this will doe no good, then take away the sole cleane, and clap on a whole shooe, and stop the foote with Nettles and salt brayd together; yet stop it not too hard to the intent the sole may have liberty to rise; and let this be renewed every day once till the sore bee growne againe, and let him be shod with Lunets, and so sent to grasse. Other Farriers use onely to raze the hoofe from the cronet to the verdge of the hoofe in foure or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt, and that will open the hoofe. Others use onely to open the horse exceeding much at the heeles once a Weeke, and to shooe him with very wide open shooes, and then for a month or two to draw him in some Cart, that being forced to set his foote hard to the ground, hee may thereby stretch forth and widen his hoofe. Now to prevent this Sorrance, it is good to annoynt his hoofes with Neates foote oyle, or with turpentine, and to stop them underneath with Cowes dung.

## CHAP. CXVIII.

*Of the running or rotten Frush.*

**T**HE Frush, which of some is called the Frogge of the foote, is the tenderest part of the hoofe toward the haele, and is fashioned like a forked Arrow hepd, being onely that part of the foote which Carriers cut forth, when they say they cut forth the sole of the horses foote. Now in this Frush breedeth many times a rotnesse or corruption proceeding  
of

of humours which commeth out of the Legges, by which the Legge is kept cleane from Wind gals, and all other tumors or swellings, by means that the humors have passed thatwayes; notwithstanding the mischief of this Sorrhance is greater then the benefit, because it maketh the Horses foote so weake and tender, that hee is not able to tread upon any hard ground. The signes of the Sorrhance are, the Horfe will halt much when he travelleth either upon loose stony ground, or upon stiffe dirty wayes, and goeth ever best upon greene swarth: but above all, he halteth most when the passage of the humour is stopped with any gravell gathered into the Frush and not being stayed or stopt it will continually run and stinke so extreemely that a man can hardly endure the sent of it; besides in some places it will look raw.

Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is thus: First take off the shooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, so as you may see the Water issue out of the raw places: then tacked on the shooe againe, being first made wide and large enough: that done; take of foot one handfull, of salt as much; bruise them well together in a dish, and put thereto the Whites of three Egges, and temper them altogether; and with a little Tow dipt therein stop all the foote, and especially the Frush, and splent it in so as it may not fall out, renewing it once a day the space of seaven daies and certainly it will cure him. Now during the cure the Horfe must rest and come in no wet; and at the seaven dayes end leave stopping him, and ride him a-  
broad



broad, and alwayes when hee commeth in, let his fore foote be cleane washed: for there is no greater enemy unto the Sorrance then gravell and durt. Other of our latter Farriers onely take off the shooe, and pare him well, and keepe the fore cleane both from durt and his owne dung, by washing it three or four times a day with urine, and that onely will cure him as well as any medicine.

CHAP. CXIX.

*An approved and certain Cure for the  
running and rotten Frush.*

**A**fter the foote is cleansed, take a quarte of old Urine, and boyle it with a quarter of a pound of Allome beaten to powder, and keepe it in a close Vessell by it selfe; then take a good handfull or two of greene Nettles strong and Keene, and spread them on some plate or other Vessell, and dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven after household bread is drawne, then crush and bruise them into a very fine powder: then looke what quantity of powder there is, and take the like quantity of pepper beaten to as fine powder, and mixe them both very well together, then keepe this powder in a close Gally pot or bladder.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore place with the Urine and Allome made very warme, and the soares thoroughly scoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine ragge of Lawne, Cambricke, or fine old linnen, and strow or pounce of the powder upon them.

them so much as may cover all the sore, and thus doe ever after travell, or once a day in the time of rest.

CHAP. CXX.

*Of evill hooves.*

**H**orses partly through a naturall inclination, partly through the stoninesse of the Soyle wherein they are bred, and partly through mischance or ill government; will have ill-favoured and naughty hooves, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or else mowled awry or such like; all which needes no signe, because of the apparant signe thereof: Then to amend them, the best cure is with a fine Rape file to smooth the wrinckles away, and to annoynt the cronet of the hoofe with a fat sward of Bacon rubbed in soote: then let the horse stand for at least a fortnight upon his owne dung, whereon you shall cast good store of water, onely remove away the dung every night; and then presently after the change of the Moone, shooe the horse with strong shooes, keeping the sole of the foot by paring, so hollow as you can possible, and it will shape his hoofe to your pleasure.

CHAP. CXXI.

*Of brittle Hooves.*

**I**F a horse either through the heate of his owne nature, or in that hee hath been either heated on his feete by labour, or foundred and evill cured, shall happen to have his hooves so brittle and short, that they will hardly beare a shooe: The signes whereof  
are,

are, the hoofe will be white and crumbling: then the best cure, according to the opinion of the best Farriers is to take Oxe dung and vineger, and mixing them very well together warme them on the fire, and so binde it both under and above round about the Horses hoofe, and then lace on his boote of strong Leather, as is aforesaid in the Chapter of casting of the hoofe. Other Farriers use to let the horse stand upon his owne dung, and annoynt all the upper part of his hoofe with the fat of Bacon sodde and mixt with Turpentine: And this you must doe every day once till you see his hooves come to some toughnesse.

Others use to take Turpentine, Hogges-grease, and hony, of each a like; melt them well together, and being warme annoynt all the hoofe therewith: then dip tow therein, and fold it all about the horse foot both under and above; and then put on his boot, dresse him once a day, and once in two daies let him stand foure houres without his boote; that his hoofe may grow as well hard as tough.

#### CHAP. CXXII.

##### *How to preserve Hoofes.*

**I**F you meane to preserve your horses hooves either from any of the former Sorranes, or any other grieffe whatsoever, you shall according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, take three heads of Garlick, a little bundle of Rew, sixe ounces of Allome beaten into powder, two pound of old grease, and the dung of an Asse; boyle them all very well together

ther, and stop your horses hoofe therwith once a day. Other Farriers take of vinegar a quartern, of tar half a pint, of hoggs greafe halfe a pound, of oyle a pinte, and a good handfull of wormwood, and foure or five heads of garlick; boyle all these together to a thicke oyntment, and therewith annoynt all they horses hoofes. Others use to boyle bean still the burst, and then temper them with honey, and therewith annoynt all the hoofes: or else wash all the hoofes with warm vinegar, and then annoynt them with hare-hound wormwood, and greafe molten together.

Other Farriers take of Olibanum and new waxe, of each one ounce, of Dialthea and turpentine, of each three ounces, of butter foure ounces, of old oyle sixe ounces, and of sheeps suet and plantaine, of each a pound; boyle them all well together, and therewith annoynt the hoofes twice a day. Other Farriers use to annoynt his hoofes with Turpentine, hogs greafe, and honey warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the foote well, and shoe him in the new of the Moone two or three dayes after the change.

Others use to take chalke and white lead mingled together; or else barke dust and honey mixt together and being heated in a posnet, and laid hot on the bare flesh, is most excellent to make any hoofe grow: to conclude, if a horse stand upon his owne dung (being very well watred) so hee doe not lye in it, it is most soveraigne for the preserving of the hoofes.

## CHAP. CXXIII.

*For any hurt upon the Hoofes.*

**I**F your horse shall receive any hurt upon his hoofes either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any false treading or crossing one foot upon another, or by any bruise either upon cogle stone, flint, or such like, then for the cure thereof you shall first stop the hoofe with hony and vineger mixt together, for the space of three dayes at the least; and then afterward with the leaves of Tamarisk well bruised and beaten together, untill the hoofe be sound againe.

Other Farriers use onely to stoppe the hoofe with sheepes grease and horse dung mixt together, renewing it once a day untill it be well.

## CHAP. CXXIII.

*How to soften Hoofes.*

**T**He Hoofes of horses will by long and dry standing upon dry plaunchers, grow so hard, that they will not be pared, nor cut by any butteris: Besides, they will so take from the horse the fence and feeling of his feete, that the horse will goe very stiffe and unnimbly: Wherefore when you shall perceive any such defect, which is best knowne by offering to pare the hoofe, then presently you shal take an ounce of sope, two ounces of unfleckt Lime, with as much strong lye as will make it soft like a Lenwicke salve, then with that stop the horses feete daily till they come to a convenient softnesse. Hot glowing embers put upon the hoofe will soften it,

## CHAP. CXXV.

*How to harden Hoofes.*

**A**S dry standing, and dry keeping doth harden the hoofes too much, so wet and moyst keeping, as continuall going in Marrish grounds, or continuall standing either upon dirt or the horses own dung, or too hot stoppings will make a horses hoofes too soft; in so much that the horse through the tenderesse thereof wil neither be able to goe, nor beare any shooe, which you shall perceive by the soft and easie cutting of the hoofe. The manner then to harden and cure them is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, first to burne an old shooe sole, then seeth it well in vinegar, and therewith bathe the horses hoofes at the least twice a day, & it wil harden them.

Other skilfull Farriers use to take of the powder of Gals, of Branne and of salt, of each a handfull; boyle these well in a pottle of strong Vinegar, and therewith bathe the hoofes, and in a short space it will harden them.

## CHAP. CXXVI.

*Of the Malt-long of the Hoofe.*

**T**He Malt-long, or as some Farriers call it, the Malt-worme, is a cankerous sorrhance above the Hoofe, just upon the Cronet, which will breake out into knobbes and branches, and out of the same will run a watrish sharpe lye or humour, which will venome the whole foote; as for the signes, they are the  
 appa-

apparant sight of the Sorrhance, and the continuall running out of the thin water. Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, if it be in the Summer time to take blacke Snailes, and Bur-Rootes, and beating them well together lay them unto the sore, and renew them once in 24. houres. But if it be in the winter, then take the scrapings of a pans bottome or of a Cauldron, and put thereto a handfull of the inner Greene barke or pils of the Elder trees and having beaten them well together in a mortar, lay it unto the sore, and renew it once a day; and it will heale it. Others use to take Garlicke, pepper and hony of each alike quantity, stampe them very well together, then annoynt his tongue with a little thereof, and then lay some to his pastornes and that will cure the Sorrhance.

## CHAP. CXXVII.

*How to skin any sore foote.*

**T**Here is nothing better to skin any sore foote of what accident or sorrhance soever it proceed, then to take Turpentine simply of it selfe, and therewith every day to annoynt the sore foote, and it will not onely gather skin but hoofe also, if it be in a place where any such need requireth. Also white lead and Traine oyle beaten together will do the like.

## CHAP. CXXVIII.

*Of goured or swolne legges.*

**T**He gource or goured legs is an ill sorrhance, being a grievous swelling in the nether part of the

leggs, proceeding either from the melting of the greafe by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoyd that greafe out in excrements, it falleth downe into the limbes, and there breedeth this swelling; or else when a horse is exceedingly heated, and then without care set up, and taketh cold, in so much that the bloud falleth downe into his leggs, and there congealeth, and maketh his legs to swell. To conclude, they doe sometimes proceede from hard beating in hard waies in the summer time, which first raiseth up windgals, and then those windgals offending the sinewes maketh them to swell, and this is the worst gourding, because ever for the most part lamenesse doth follow it.

The signes are, the horses legges will ever be most swolne when he standeth still in the house, and least when he is in travell, especially if he travell in much water; and the swelling most commonly is accompanied with some small scabs, and in the end it will breake out into the scratches. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, to draw him with a hot Iron a handfull above the knee, and then rope his legges with a soft rope of hay wet in cold Water, and let it so remaine a day and a night, and it will take away all the swelling. Other Farriers take two pound of nerve oyle, two pound of blacke sope, a pound of boares greafe, and melt and boyle all these well together: then straine it and so let it coole; then when you have any need, annoynt and chafe your horses legs therewith, and to make it sinke in the better, annoynt him first with nerve oyle, and hold a hot Iron against his legs to make it melt, then  
use



use the other oyntment in the same manner, which done, keepe his leggs cleane from dust by lapping a linnen rowler about them.

Others of our latter Farriers use to take up the veines beneath the knee, and let him bleede well: then knit the veine both above and below, and then annoynt his legs with this oyntment: Take of Frankinsence, Rozen and fresh grease of each alike quantity, and having boyled them well together, then straine it and use it once a day as you shal have occasion, and it wil heale any Gource whatsoever; only for the taking up of the veines you may if you will forbear it, sith if it be not done with great cunning it will make the horse stiffe ever after. See further in the new Additions for any straine in generall noted thus  $\text{K}$ .

#### CHAP. CXXIX.

*A most certaine and approved cure for any Surded or sweld legges, by what accident soever.*

First with a Fleame pricke the sweld parts, then take a pint of Wine-lees, an ounce of Comin-seedes, and a handfull or more of Wheate flower, and boyle them till they be thicke, then apply this pultus very hot to the sweld part, and renew it but once in 24. houres, and if this in two or three dayes draw it to an head, then launce it, and heale it either with a plaister of Shoo-makers Waxe, or else with the yolke of an egge, wheate flower and hony beaten together to a salve.

But if it doe not draw to any head, and yet the

swelling continue, then take of pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgins waxe, of Rozen halfe a pound, of the juyce of Hyssope halfe an ounce, of Galbanuni halfe an ounce, of Myrrhe secondary halfe a pound, of Bdelium Arabicum halfe an ounce, of Deeres suet halfe a pound, of Populion halfe an ounce, of the droppes of Storax halfe an ounce, boyle all these together in an Earthen pot, and after it is cooled take of Bitumen halfe a pound, of Armoniacke, an ounce and a halfe, and of Costus as much, beate these into fine powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boyle them all over againe: which done, poure the whole mixture into cold Water, and then rowle it into severall roles, playsterwise; after spread this playster upon sheepes Leather, and fold it about the sweld member, and this will both asswage it, and give much strength to the sinews You shall by no meanes remove this playster so long as it will sticke on.

This playster is wonderfull soveraigne and of singular use, for the horse that is continually kept therewith, I meane, that hath it applyed to his limbes ever when he commeth from travell, hee shall never bee troubled with sweld legges, nor yet ever put out Windgall,

Now if you will neither goe to this cost, nor endure this trouble, yet would have your Horse cured of this infirmity, then know there is not any thing better, or more approved then continually both before and after Travell, and in the House many times in the day, to lave and wash your horses legges, or other sweld parts, with the coldest and clearest

clearest fountaine Water that you can get, and sometimes let the Horse stand in some cold running streame the space of a quarter of an houre or more, up to the knees and Cambrels, but in any case no further.

This medicine how poore soever it looke, is of much vertue, and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery: Onely this you must take to your remembrance, that this application appertaines not to impostumations, but unto straines, and swellings, and bruises, which are without much anguish.

#### CHAP. CXXX.

##### *Of the Farcy or Fashions.*

**T**HE Farcy (of our ignorant Smiths called the Fashions) is of all outward Sorrhances the vilest, the most poysonous, infectious, and the most dangerous (being any whit neglected) or otherwise the most easiest, and with the least cost or trouble to bee helped. It is a kind of creeping ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongst some one veine or other, and sometimes alongst divers or fundry Veines, according to the strength of the infection. It proceedeth sometimes from corrupt bloud ingendred in the body, sometimes from outward wounds or hurts received by cankerous or poysonous instruments, as rusty spurs, rusty forkes, biting of dogges or Horses, bitings of Tickes, hoggs lice, or such like; sometimes by the rubbing of Swine against the legges of the horse.

horse, or by lying in the litter where swine have lain or by enterfearing, or hewing one leg upon another; but generally it proceedeth from an evill habite of the body, being surfeited by disorderly and unruly Travell, whereby the bloud being heated, the grease melted, and sudden cold taken, there groweth such obstructions in the bloud, and such putrifaction in the body, that it can no way evacuate or avoyd, but by these small knots, pustules, or ulcers, which are so infectious, that as many horses as doe gnaw or gnappe upon the horse infected, will within one moneth have the same disease: or if the Horse infected doe bite any other hee will infect him also; and this infection without present cure is mortall, and will kill any horse: therefore whensoever you have any horse troubled with this sorrhance, see that you separate him from other horses to prevent the danger.

Now for the signs they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the knots, which knots are uever but accompanied with great swellings and rancklings running along as the veines runne, and dividing themselves as the branches of the veine divide, the number of the knots multiplying and increasing untill the body be universally covered over, or else that the member (if it be in a member) bee utterly deformed and mishapen.

Now the cure (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) is, first let him bloud on the necke veine, and on both his spurre veines, then give the horse this drinke: Take a gallon of water, and put into it a good handfull of Rew, and a pound of Hemp-

Hempe-seede both being first bruised in a mortar, then boyle them in water till the one halfe be consumed, and give the horse this to drinke in the morning fasting being cold, for divers mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the ancient Farriers use first to let the horse bloud in that veine where the sorrhance first riseth, as nigh the fore places as may be, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every knot one by one, taking the knot in your left hand, and pulling it so hard as you can from his body, to the intent you may the better pierce the knot with the round blunt hot Iron, of the bignesse of a mans fore-finger, without doing the body any hurt, and let the matter out leaving none unburned being little or much: that done, annoynt every knot so burned with hogs-grease warmed every day once untill the cores bee ready to fall; and in the meane time prepare a good quantity of old urine, and when you see the cores ready to fall, then boyle the vrine, and put therein a little Copperas and salt, and a few strong nettles, and with that water being warme wash out all the cores and all the corruption: that done, fill every hole immediatly with the powder of unfleckt lime, continuing thus to doe every day once untill the holes be closed up; and if any be more ranker then others, fill those with Verdigrease; and during this cure let the horse be thinly dyeted, that is to say, with straw and water onely, unlesse it be now and then to give him a loafe of bread, or a little other provender: for the lower he is kept in flesh, the sooner hee will heale; and in any wise let his necke either bee yoaked

in an old bottomlesse paile, or else splented with staves in such sort, that hee may not come to licke any of his sores, and the lesse rest he hath, the better will be his amendment. Now there bee other latter Farriers, which for the sorrance take a good quantity of Mistletho, honey and blacke sope, and boyle them very well in old Urine, and being very warme, wash your horse all over therewith, every day once for the space of five or sixe daies, and it will helpe it. Others use to cut the horse two inches long downe the forehead, and open it in the midst thereof on both sides two inches, and put thereto a tampin made of the inner rinde of Elder barke which is Greene, and looke that it lye crosse the cut; for so it will destroy all the venemous humour in his body, and it will heale him very perfectly, having been very oft approved. Others use to take a very sharpe bodkin, and to thrust it crosse-wise through the nether part of the horses nose, even through the small gristle, so that he may bleed well, or else to let him bloud in the necke veine, then feele the knots, and as many as are soft, launce them. & let them run, then take strong lye, lime, and allome, and mixing them well together, bathe all the fore therewith, and it will cure him.

Others take a sharpe lance knife, and in the top of the horses fore-head somewhat above his eyes make a long slit even unto his skul; then with a blunt instrument for that purpose, loose the flesh from the scalpe a good compasse, then take carrot rootes cut into litle thin round peeces, and put them betweene the skin and the skul, or, for want of carrot rootes, you may  
take

take red docke roots, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no meanes thrust out the roots: but if the rootes do not stay in, then with a needle & silk stitch the wound together that it may hold in the medicine; then once a day annoynt the wound with fresh butter: this is held a very certaine cure for the Farcy, for looke how this wound made thus shall rot, wast and grow sound, so shall the sorrhance breake, dry up and be healed; only the fault of this cure is, that it will be somewhat long in healing, and is a foule eye-fore uuntil it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers which after the putting in of rootes as is aforesaid, use to burne all the sore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a mans finger, to burne the sores in the midst till the white matter come forth, then with a paire of pinsons plucke out the knots: this done, annoynt all the sore places with sope, and then dresse him no more the space of foure or five dayes, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong pisse, with the which you must wash him every day, the pisse being first made scalding hot, and rub the sores well uuntil they beginne to bleede; then having dryed all the sore places, throw on the powder of unsleckt lime, or of burnt Allome, which will heale better then lime. Now if you see that in any of the sores through negligent dressing there riseth proud flesh so high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the aforesaid powder, then you may burne any such place so fore or sorer as you did at the first, and dresse it

as before. Now there be other Farriers, which when they see the Farcy to have beene old and long gone, and that it is so farre entred into one member or other, that the member is disfigured, they will then first purge the horse with some strong purgation, of which you may finde choyse in a Chapter before written, and then under his belly, put in one rowel either of haire or leather; or on the pitch of his shoulder of his grieved legge ( if it be before ) or else on the stifling place, if his grieffe be behind, put in another Rowell, and so keep those two places together with the issue in his fore-head open, untill the cure be finished; then with another hot Iron burne all his legg downe with long strickes, even from the body to the hoofe, not above an inch one strieke from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a strawes breadth, and draw your stroake ever downward with the haire, and burne him no deeper then that the skin may looke browne. Now when by this practise you have cured the disease, if then the member be unfashionable, or by swellings out of all forme, then you shall lay unto the member a playster made of Wine lees, and wheat flower, and rowle it with a wollen rowler, renewing it once in twenty foure houres, till the member be asswaged, and this practise wil heale any great swell'd Legge, if it be applyed and continued with patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings or cuttings of some ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny substance grown about the member, which the plaister afore said will not resolve, then you shall take of Virgine Waxe halfe a pound, of Mirrhe one pound,



pound, of raisins a pound, of Galbanum halfe a pound of Costus fixe ounces, of Armoniacke fixe ounces, of Swines grease two pound; put your swines grease first into an earthen pot, and having placed it in a broad cauldron full of water, then make a soft fire under it to the end that your water may boyle; and when you doe perceive your swines grease is almost melted, then shall you put in all the other simples, except the Costus, and when they are all molten, which will aske five or sixe houres boyling at the least, then your Costus which is a white roote, being beaten into fine powder, you shall adde to the afore-said things after it is taken from the fire, and incorporate them all very well together, then make a plaister thereof upon a piece of sheepes leather, some what bigger then the sore, and this plaister without renewing will serve for at the least thirty days with a very little refreshing, onely you must once a day take it off, and rub his leggs very well, for feare it itch, which may cause the horse to beat and stamp with his foot, and so rather increase then decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you doe not rowle him to strait, for that is most hurtfull. It shall not be amisse now and then to ride him into the water, and walke him an houre after, then bringing him into the Stable rub his legge well; then warme his plaister over a Chafing-dish and coles, and so lay it to againe: and this practise in two or three moneths will take away any deformity of swelling, be the member never so uncomely.

Now there be other Farriers which for this Farcy if it be but young, and especially if it be about the  
head

head or face of a horse ; will take onely of Aqua vitæ two spoonfuls, of the juyce of Garlicke two spoonfull; and of the juyce of Rew, or hearb of Grace, two spoonfuls ; mixe them well together, then take plegants or round bals of flaxe, and steepe them therein, and then stop them hard into the Horses eares ; then take a needle and thred and stich the tips of his two eares together, by means whereof he cannot shake out the medicinē, and use the horse thus three seven mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy as hath been oft proved.

Other Farriers use to take Drag-worts or ground-sell, and beat it well in a mortar with white Salt and then stop it hard into the horses ears, and so either stich them together, or with a broad inckle bind them up, renewing it once in foureteene houres for three or foure dressings, and it will heale any reasonable Farcy.

Others use to annoynt all the sores either with Tansey and Verjuyce boyled together, or else with boars grease very hot, and that will kill it. Others use first to wash the sores with old urine, then take the powder of Glasse, Brimstone and Hoggs grease well stamped and beaten together, then opening or slitting the knots annoynt them all therewith, and it wil cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the horse bloud if it be at the beginning of the disease, or else not ; and then to burne all the knots as is aforesaid, and then to heale the burnings with Tar, Oyle and Honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of Malmsey, two or three spoonfull of the powder Diapente: or else give him foure ounces of the powder

der of Wal-woort, or Dan-wort, with a pint and a halfe of Malmesey three dayes together : after that take an ounce of Aloes, one ounce of Centuary, one ounce of Opoponax, beate them all into fine powder and give them him to drinke in a pint and halfe of Malmsey warmed, wherein the roots of the aforesaid hearbe called Wal-wort, or Dan-wort have bin sodden: use to ride him oft untill he sweat, and when the disease is killed turne him to grasse : for running in the open ayre is very wholesome.

There be others which take blacke sope, Arsnick, ~~☉~~ unslackt Lime, Verdigrease. and Red Lead, worke all these well together, and opening the knots, dresse them therewith till you see them begin to dry up and dye. Others open the knots with a hot iron, and then take blacke sope, and great bay salt beaten together and halfe so much as of rhem, of Verdigrease, and boyle the Verdigrease with fresh grease, and then take a saucerfull of Mustard, and put them all together, and dresse the sores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quicke-silver, and put it into a bladder, with two spoonfull of the juyce of Oranges or Lemons, and shake them together to coole the quicke silver : then take halfe a pound of fresh Hoggs grease, and of Verdigrease an ounce; put all these in a trend dish, and worke them well together : Then annoynt the knots with this Oyntment till they rot : then let them out with a sharpe knife, and annoynt them still, and put into his eares the juyce of Rag weed, and the sores will dry up. This medicine is very well approved. Others take blacke sope, mustard made of Wine vinegar, and red  
H h lead,

lead; mixe all these together, and annoynt the veine all along, holding hot Iron close to the sore, to make the oyntment strike in, and do thus once a day untill the sores drye up. Other Farriers take of the juyce of hemlock a good quantity, & dipping tow therein, stop his ears therewith, then open all the knots and thrust in salt. Lastly, give him to drinke sweet wort mixt with Fennell and Treacle. Other Farriers take the butter Bur, and being dryed and beaten to powder, strew it upō the knots after they have been opened; and then give him two or three spoonefull of the same powder with a pint of Malmesey to drinke, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is also exceeding good for all manner of ulcers; the roote is strong in smell, and bitter in taste.

Others take sulphur, orpiment, unsleckt lime and mixing them together put it into the Knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, annoynt him with bolearmoney made into powder, and incorporated with strong vinegar, the juyce of housleeke, and of white leekes, and Solatro. Other Farriers after they have let the horse bloud, will boyle in vinegar, beane-flowre and swines grease, then adde a pretty quantity of oyle, and then straine it, then adde one part of Aloes, and two of Brimstone, and boyle it a little: then being warme annoynt all the sore places therewith, or else annoynt them twice a day with the juyce of smallage, and the yolkes of egges beaten together.

There bee other Farriers which take two ounces of Oyle de bay, one of Euforbium, and two ounces of Arsnicke, and mixing them together, annoynt  
the

the sores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all these many Receipts, of which not any but hath been approved to be very good, yet these two which I will now rehearse, I have ever found to be the most excellent for any manner of Farcy whatsoever, whether it be, as our simple Smiths tearme it, a dry Farcy, a wet or watry Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cause ; onely some horses not having such fluxe of humors in them as others have, the knots will be unwilling to breake, and then they say it is a dry Farcy : others of the contrary part will breake as fast as the knots arise, and runne filthy matter, and then they call it a watery Farcy : Others will spread in many parts of the body yet not breake, but as it were move betwixt the skinne and the flesh, but that they call a running Farcy.

Now all these are but one Farcy, and have but one certaine Cure, which is this. First, with diligent heed marke upon what principall veine of the horses body the knots doe arise, and note how they spread and run, then if the Farcy be divided into sundry branches, according as the veine doth divide, you shall take the last knot of every branch, which for the most part will be hard, and not come to rottenesse ; and then slit them, and fill them with your knives poynt full of white Mercury : then those which you finde to be rotten, let the matter forth, and annoynt them with black sope and Mercury mixt together : then within a day or two you shall see those which you dresse with Mercury simple, to have their choars fall out ; and the rest which you drest with blacke sope,

will dry up: then annoynt them all with fresh butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceiue any new knots to arise, then you shall dresse them likewise with Mercury simple, as was said before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the Farcy be not very contagious, but as it were newly begun, then if you onely take blacke sope and Mercury, as before said, and annoynting your finger and your thumb therewith, doe but nip and bruiſe every knot, and within two or three daies after they will dry up and heale. But if the Farcy be foule and desperate, that is to say, either universally spread over the body, or so gotten into any limbe or member, that the limbe is deformed & hath lost his proportion, so that a man can neither judge which way the veins run, nor in what part the knots are most venomous, because that healing one, two new ones will arise.

**I**n this same case you shall first give your Horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his body, of all which a pint of Muscadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with halfe a pint of the oyle of Oates is the most soveraigne: then shall you take a penny worth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pigeons dung, and twelve peny worth of white Mercury; mixe all these very well together, & make them into a salve: then with a slice daube it all over the sore place, leaving no part of the member uncovered: then heating a bar of Iron red hot, hold it so neare that it may dry the salve upon the sore: then lay more fresh salve on, and dry in like manner, and so let it rest until it fall off, & it will kill any Farcy whatsoever at the first or second dressing. There bee others

others which will stop the knots with the powder of Verdigrease and of Arsnick mixt together, or else wash the sores with Aquafortis, but they are neither so good as the other before Rehearsed.

CHAP. CXXXI.

*Of the Canker in any part of the body.*

**A** Canker is a poysonous creeping ulcer, fretting and gnawing the flesh in great breadth, whose beginning is knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and spreadeth it selfe into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathered together at the length into one Wound or filthy sore; from whence there runneth a thin sharp lye, which galleth off the skin wheresoever it goes, and so both increaseth the ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from Melancholy and filthy blood, ingendred either by ranknesse of keeping, or else by too extreame poverty; and if this naughty blood be mixt with sharpe and salt humors, then it causeth more painfull and grievous exulceration. It also may proceed from some loathsome Wound which is neither cleane kept nor well drest, but in such sort that the corrupt matter thereof poysoneth the other cleane parts of the body; for signes of the Sorrhance there needeth no more but the description already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, first to let the horse blood in those veines vvhich are next the fore, and make him bleed vvell; then take of allom halfe a pound, of greene Copperas as much, of white Copperas one quarterne, and a good handfull of salt;

boyle all these things together in faire running water from a pottle to a quart : and this water being warme wash the sore therewith with a clout, and then sprinkle thereon the powder of unfleckt lime, continuing so to doe every day once the space of fifteene daies ; and if you see that the Lime doe not mortifie the ranke flesh, and keepe it from spreading any further, then take of Sope halfe a pound, of Quicke silver halfe an ounce, and beat them together in a pot untill the Quicke silver be so well mingled with the sope, as you can perceiue no Quicke silver in it, & with an iron slice or splatter, after that you have washed the sore with the strong Water aforesaid, cover the Wound with this oyntment, continuing thus to do every day once untill the Canker leave spreading abroad. And if it leave spreading, and that you see the ranke flesh is well mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a skin, then after the washing dresse it with Lime as before, continuing so to doe untill it be whole, and in the dressing suffer no filth that comes out of the sore to remaine upon any whole place about, but wipe it cleane away, or else wash it away with warme water and let the horse during this cure be as thinly dyeted as may be, and thoroughly exercised. Now if this cankerous ulcer happen to be in the taylor of a horse, as it is often seen, and which you shall perceiue as well by the falling away of the hairs, as also by the wound, then you shall make a bolster of soft cloth or sponge, and wet it with vinegar both within and without, & so bind it fast to the sore ; and alwaies when it waxes dry, you must wet it againe ; do thus twice or thrice a day, if it be done oftner it is better : so shal you conti-



nue for three or four daies, and then heale it up as you heale an ordinary wound; that is, with hoggs greafe and Turpentine molten together; or such like. There be other Farriers which for the Canker on the body do take an ounce of the juyce of the root of Affedely, three ounces of unfleckt Lime, two ounces of Orpiment or Arsnicke, put this in an earthen vessell close stopt, & either boyle or bake it in an oven till it come to a powder; then first wash the sore with strong vinegar, and after strew this powder thereon. Others use to take Carlicke, and beate it in a mortar with Swines greafe till it come to a salve, and then having washt the sore either with Vineger, Allome-water, Copperas water, or old urine, anoint it once or twice a day with it till it be whole. Other Farriers take the hearbe Mullen and bruise, and mixe it with salt and verdigrease, and dresse the sore therewith morning and evening for the space of three or four daies, then use the same salve againe as long without verdigrease: then lastly use the hearbe alone, but if at any time you see it doe begin to wax raw, then begin againe as is aforesaid, and ever before you annoynt it, wash it first with vinegar and greafe mixt together. - Others take Savin, Bay salt and Rew-stampt with Barrows greafe and annoynt the sore therewith, and when the ill humors are kild (which you shal know by the whitenes) then heale it with Tar, oyle and hony mixt together.

Lastly (and which I hold the best) take vinegar, Ginger & Allome, and mixe them together till they will both kill the poyson and heale the ulcer.

## CHAP. CXXXII:

*Of the Fistula.*

**A** Fistula is a deepe, hollow, crooked, mattering ulcer, and for the most part commonly a great deale straiter at the mouth then at the bottome, being ingendred in some wound, bruise, sore or Canker not thoroughly healed. The signes to know it are, the hollownesse of the sore descending downward from the Orifice, and the thinnesse of the matter which issueth from the same; besides the crookednesse which you shall find in the ulcer when you search it.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: First search the bottome thereof with a Goose or Swans quill, or with a small rod wel covered with a fine linnen cloath; and having found the bottome thereof, cut it so large with a Razor, that the matter may have free passage downwards; but take heed in launcing it, that you cut not any master finew, or main tendon: then having stanchd the bloud either with Swines dung, or such like, take of good hony a pint, of Verdigrease one ounce, and boyle them well together upon a soft fire three quarters of an houre; then having cleansed the sore by tying a taint of flax or fine linnen cloth to the point of your quill, with a thred draw it softly into the Wound: then cut off your quill or feather so long that you may take good hold in the nether end of the taint, which then shall come out at the bottome of your sore: then dip another taint in the aforesaid salve, and then with a needle and thred make fast your taint to your first cloat at the upper end thereof;

of, then draw out your first taint down-ward, so shal you draw your taint with the medicine easily into the Wound, and your first taint will have cleansed the sore very cleane, and if the matter do abound much, then it shall be good to dresse him twice a day : but you must not dresse him with this medicine no more but once a day, & afterward you shal dresse him with this medicine following : Take of Turpentine, of Swines grease, of hony and sheeps suet, of each alike quantity, and melt them together, and make a salve thereof, wherewith you shall dresse your sore foure daies for one day that you dresse him with the former medicine made of Honey and Verdigrease; and take heed that you make your taint of very soft linnen cloath, and fine flaxe: and let not your taint be too big after the first and second time dressing, but presently after the first dressing you must cover the sore place, and round about the same with this Pultus here following.

First, take two Gallons of faire Water, and having boyld and scumed it so long till you have perfectly cleansed it of all corruption, then take two or three handfulls of Mallowes, and as much of Violet leaves, and two or three of Oat-meale, & having boyled all these three things well in your former prepared Water, you shall adde thereto of hogs-mort, and fresh butter, of each a pound : then shall you let it boyle so long till it become thicke, like past or pap, and then apply it hot to the sore, and take heed that in opening this sore you let not any ayre strike into it : And on the other side, that you keepe it not too hot. And if this Fistula be in the horses Withers, you  
must

must take heede that you tye his head to the racker so as hee may neither lye downe, nor put his head lower then his manger : tor if you suffer him to feed on the ground when he hath any grievous sore in his withers, it shall hardly be possible ever to cure him ; but if you perceive the wound to heale apace, and that it matter but a little, then shall it be enough to dresse him once a day : and also it shall be good to take great heede that you make not your taint too bigge, and see that you use your Pultus till it be perfectly cured. Now there be other of the ancient Farriers which use for this cure, first to search the depth of the Fistula either with a quill, or with some other instrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way : for unlesse you find the bottome of it, it will be very hard to cure : and having found the bottome, if it be in such a place as you may boldy cut and make the way open with a Lancet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottome, so wide, that you may thrust in your finger to feele whether there be any bone or else gristle perished, or spungy, or loose flesh, which must be gotten out ; and then taint it with a taint of flaxe dipped in this oyntment : Take of Mirrhē, of Aloes, and of Sarcocolla, of each one ounce, of good Hony sixe ounces, and of verdigrease two ounces, and melt all these on a gentle fire, and make them into a salve ; then being lukewarme dresse the taint therewith, and bolster the taint with a bolster of flaxe, and if it be in such a place as the taint cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole two ends of a shoemaker's thrid right over the bolster, to keepe

in the taint, which ends may hang there as two laces to tye and untye at your pleasure, renewing the taint every day once untill the sore leave mattering, and then make the taint every day lesser and lesser untill it be whole : for you shall understand, that this salve doth purge this fistula of putrifaction, incarnateth and breedeth flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty flesh. Now when you have done as afore said, thou yon shall close it up by sprinkling thereon a little unfleckt Lime ; but if the fistula be in such a place as you can neither cut against the bottome, nor tye the same : then there is no remedy but every time you dresse it, to powre into it either through some quill, or by some small squirt or serring, some strong white copperas water, or some allome water, so that it may goe downe to the bottome, and dry up the filthy matter : and this you must doe twice a day at least untill it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers which use this cure, after they have searcht the Fistula to the bottome, to take a pottle of white wine Vinegar, of Camphaire halfe an ounce, of Mercury precipitate halfe an ounce of Greene Treacle three ounces, of red sage an handfull, of yarrow and ribbe-wort of each an handfull, of honey halfe a pint, of Boares grease halfe a pint, boyle all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the Wound : then to heale up the same, you shall take oyle of Roses, virgins waxe and rozen, of each a like quantity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the gumme of Ivie and Deeres suet as much, boyle these together unto a salve, and then dresse the sore therewith untill it bee whole

whole, observing ever, both in this cure, and all the rest, that as soone as you have put in your Taint, to clap a plaister over it of pitch, Rozen, Masticke, Turpentine and hogs grease molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evill humors and also keep in the taint from falling out. Now if the Fistula be in or about the head of the Horse, then you shall take the juyce of Houslick, and dip therein a locke of wooll; and put it into the horses eares, and it will stay the inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you shall cut away all the rotten and false flesh, and then bathe it well with the grounds of ale made warme, and then wipe the bloud cleane away: then take butter, rozen, and frankinsence a little, and boyle them all together, and boyling hot powre it into the wound, & then clap on the plaister, do thus once a day till the horse be whole. Now if there be any inflammation behind the horses ears, or that it grow to any impostumation in that place, then you shall boyle the roots of Mallows in water til they waxe tender, then bruise them and strain out the water cleane, and being warme, apply it to the sore, and it vwill heale it.

There be other ancient & skilfull Farriers, which for the generall Fistula use as a prevention thereof, to take hony and sheeps suet, and making it scalding hot to scald the sore extreamly therewith, upon the first swelling, and it will keepe the Fistula that it shall not breed; but if it breed, then you shall launce it in the nethermost part, and put into it as much Mercury sublimatum as a pease, being first abated with faller oyle and laid on with a feather; after that take of verdigrease

digrease foure penny worth, of Vitrioll a halfe penny-worth, of red lead three penny worth, beat these together, and every day wash the wound with Copperas water, made with Copperas and Elder leaves in summer, and with the inner greene barke in winter; after the washing take the powder, and put it on the sore, and after it drop on a little oyle.

Other Farriers take the outermost greene shels of Wal-nuts, and put them in a Tub, strowing three or foure handfulls of bay Salt upon them, some in the bottome, some in the midst, and some on the top, and so keepe them all the yeare; and when you will use them, take a pint of them and a little bay salt, and halfe a quatter of a pound of blacke sope, with halfe a spoonfull of May butter, ( and for want thereof other butter ) and mixe and incorporate them together; and then spread it on the sore, or taint the sore therewith; but two houres before you lay it on, annoynt the place with Venice Turpentine, and do thus till the fistula be whole.

Other Farriers take Vnguentum Ægyptiacum which is made of hony a pint, vinegar halfe a pint, allome a quarterne of a pound, and Verdigrease one ounce and an halfe; and seeth them altogether till they bee thicke, and of a tauny colour; this is called Ægyptiacum, and to make it the strongest way, is to put in of Mercury sublimatum one ounce made into powder, and of Arsnicke two scruples, and boyle it together with either of these, especially the strongest, dresse any Fistula, Canker, or foule old Ulcer whatsoever, and it will kill it; and the weaker of these, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arsnicke, may be applyed

to the Fistula in the mouth of a horse. Other Farr iers take of Sublimatum made into powder one ounce, the midst of well leavened bread slacke baked three ounces, of Nenin ten drams , mingle them together with a little Rose water, and make taints thereof, and dry them upon a Tile, aud at your pleasure taint your fistula therewith, and it will assuredly kill it. Others take strong lye, hony, Roach-Allome, and Mercury, and seeth them together, and squirt it into a Fistula, and it will kill it at the bottom, and when you meane to dry up a Fistula, take red Wine, Goatsdung, and Beane flowre, and seeth them together , and apply it to the fistula, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to sinke downe the swelling of a fistula, first of all seare it with a drawing Iron in this proportion ✱ , and then take Rosin, sheepes suet and Brimstone, and boyle them together, and lay it upon a fistula very hot with a cloath, and it will sinke downe the swelling. It is also most excellent to take away a Wind-gall, if it be laid on after the wind-gal is prickt, but not too hot , but very reasonable, and it will keepe it also very cleane.

There bee other Farriers which for a fistula take Verdigrease, butter and Salt melted together, and poure it scalding hot into the fore ; and use this til al the flesh looke red ; then taint it with Verdigrease, burnt Allome, Wheat flower, and the yolkes of eggs well beaten and mingled together : Last of all, skin it with Barme and Soot mixt together.



## CHAP. CXXXIII.

*A rare and true approved medicine to cure any Fistula,  
or hollow impostumation whatsoever.*

**T**Ake a pint of the strongest vinegar, and being hot upon the fire, mixe therewith the lome of a clay Wall, which hath not any lime in it, but by no meanes do not pick out the chopt strawes or hay that is in the lome, but boyle them altogether till it come to a salve: then being reasonable hot, spread it over all the sweld place, and over every part which you shall feele hard: and you shall thus do twice a day, and it will not onely ripen and breake the hollow ulcer, but also search it to the bottome and heale it. This medicine cureth any sore backe whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gall'd or bruised.

## CHAP. CXXXIV.

*Of the Ambury.*

**A**N Ambury is a great spungy Wart full of bloud, which may grow upon any part of the horses body, chiefly about the eye brows, nostrils, or privie parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks stone. Now the cure according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is first to tie it about with a thred or hair so hard as you can pull it, and the thred wil eate in by little and little, in such sort as within seven or eight dayes it will fall away of it selfe; and if it be so flat that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharpe hot Iron cutting it round about, and so deepe

as

as you leave none of the roote behind, and then dry it up with the powder of Verdigrease, but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eat out the core with the powder of Resalger or Mercury, & then to stop the hole with flaxe dipt in the white of an egge for a day or two : and lastly to dry it up with the powder of unslackt Lime and honey, as is before taught. Other Farriers in stead of tying the Wart with a threed, doetye it with some horse haire : and that is a great deale the better, and will rot it off sooner and faster.

CHAP. CXXXV.

*Of the cords.*

**T**He Cord is a certaine string, which commeth from the shackle veine to the Gristle in the nose and betweene the lip, the length of an Almond ; or there be two strings like threads, which lye above the knee, betwixt the knee and the body, and goeth like a small cord through the body to the nostrils, making a horse to stumble much, and sometimes to fall also ; and it is a disease very much incident to many young horses. The signs are, an apparant stiffe going, and much stumbling, without any outward or visible forrance ; the cure is, according to the opinion of our ancient Farriers, to take the end of a crooked Harts horne that is sharpe ; put it under the cordes, and twine it ten or twelve time about, till the horse bee constrained to lift up his foot ; then cut the cord a sunder, and put a little salt into the issue, or cut it first at the knee, then at the end of his nose, and so draw

draw it upward a spanne length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the horse blood in the veine that descendeth in the in-side of the Leg, by the breast, and take away at least a pottle of blood, and after seaven dayes wash him with beefe broth, and it will heale him.

Other Farriers take Mustard, Aqua-vitæ, and sallet oyle, and boyle them on the coales, and make a plaister, and bind it to the place that is grieved, and it will helpe.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warme, bathe his legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet hay ropes, and it will make the horse perfectly sound.

#### CHAP. CXXXVI.

##### *Of the String halt.*

**T**He string halt, of some cald the Mary hinchcho, is a suddaine twitching up of the horses hinder leggs, as if he did tread upon needles, and were not able to indure his feete upon the ground; the signes whereof be an apparant ill-favored manner of halting, most visible to the eye. And the cure is, to take up the middle veine above the thigh and underneath the same, then under the said vein there lyes a string, which string must be cut away: and then annoynt him with butter and salt, and he will both doe well, and goe well.

## CHAP. CXXXVII.

*Of a horse that is spur-re-gald.*

**I**F a horse by the indiscretion of an evill rider, be spur gald, which is a disease most plaine both to be felt or seene: then the cure is, either to bathe it with urine and salt mixt together, or with water and salt, or with warme vinegar, or else bind unto the place the crops of leaves of Nettles stamped: and any of these will cure him.

## CHAP. CXXXVIII.

*Of wounds in generall.*

**W**Ounds, according to the opinion of all Farriers is a solution, division or parting of the whole: for if there be no such solution, or division, then it is rather called a bruise then a Wound: and therefore Wounds are most commonly made with sharpe or piercing Weapons, and bruises with blunt weapons: notwithstanding if by such blunt weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken: then it is to be called a Wound as well as the other, and these wounds doe proceed from some stroake, prick, or violent accident. Now of Wounds some be hollow, and some bee deepe and hollow: Againe, some Wounds chance in fleshy parts, and some in bony and sinewy places: and those which chance in the fleshy parts, though they be very deepe, yet they be not so dangerous as the others, and therefore I will speake first of the most dangerous. If then a horse have a  
Wound

wound newly made, either in his head, or in any other place which is full of sinews, bones or gristles, then according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the wound well with white Wine warmed, and keepe it ever whilst you are in dressing it, covered with cloathes wet in warme white wine: that done, you shall search the bottome of the wound with a probe, or small instrument of steele made for the purpose, suffering the wound to take as little wind or aire as you can possible: then having found the depth, stoppe the hole close with a clout untill your saive bee ready: then take of Turpentine, Mel-rosatum, oyle of Roses, of each a quarterne, and a little unwrought waxe, and melt them together, stirring them continually that they may be well mingled together; and if the wound be a cut, make a handsome rowle or round plegant of soft tow, so long and so bigge as may fill the bottome of the wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the mouth of the wound: then make another rowle or plegant somewhat bigger to fill up the rest of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both these rowles be annoynted with the oyntment afore-said made lukewarme; onely this you must ever observe, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conveniently, to stitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimson filke: for that will make it heale the sooner, and make the skarre lesse. But if the hurt be like a hole made with some pricke, then make a stiffe taint either of tow or lint, such a one as may reach the bottome, annoynted

with the aforesaid oyntment, and bolster the same with a litle tow: and over both this and the other, or any wound whatsoever, as soone as your rowles, plegants or tent are put in, you shall clap a sticking playster made of pitch, Rosen, Masticke, and Turpentine melted together, as hath been before taught, both to keepe in your salve, and to comfort the sore. Now if the mouth of the wound bee not wide enough, so as the matter may easily runne forth, if it be in such a place as you may doe it without hurting any sinew, then give it a pretty slit from the mouth downe-ward, that the matter may have the freer passage, and in any wise have an especiall regard that the tent may be continually kept in by one meanes or other, and also that it may not be drowned within the wound, but by tying some thrid about the upper end thereof, so kept that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the hole bee deepe, and in such a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as bigge as the hole, of a dry sponge that was never wet, so long that it may reach the bottome; and the tent being made some what full, with continuall turning and wrying of it, you shall easily get it downe, and then dresse the wound with this twice a day, cleansing the wound every time with a litle white wine luke-warme: for the sponge annoynted with the oyntment aforesaid, will both draw and sucke up all the filthy matter, and make it so faire within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heale, so make your tent every day lesser and lesser untill it be ready to close up, and never leave tainting it so long as it will receive a taint, bee it never  
so

so short : for hasty healing of Wounds breedeth Fistulaes, which properly be old sores; and therefore must be healed like Fistulaes. Now if the wound proceed from any ancient impostumation, then you shall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores put therein a little bay salt, and a little whole Saffron, and so roast them in the hot Embers : then playsterwise lay them all hot on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the upper skin of the wound be putrified, and you would have it away, then make a playster of Cowes dung sod in milk, and clap it to for foure & twenty hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the wound. Others use generally for any cure whatsoever, to take a quarter of a pound of butter, of Tar and black sope, of each halfe as much, and a little Turpentine: boyle all but the sope together, then when you take it off the fire, put in the sope, and with this oyntment dresse any cut, and it will heale it.

Other Farriers use onely to take hoggs grease and Venice Turpentine, and to melt them together, and it will heale any wound. Other Farriers take eight drams of Turpentine, foure drammes of new Virgins waxe ; melt them in a pewter vessell, and stirre them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whilst they be hot, poure into them halfe a pint of white Wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and annoynt your hands with oyle of Roses, and worke the waxe and Turpentine well together, after that put them into the pewter vessell againe, then put to them halfe an ounce of the gum

of Fir tree, and three drammes of the juyce of Bettyony, then seeth them well together untill the juyce of Bettyony be wasted, then put to it three drammes of womans milke, or the milke of a red Cow, and seeth them once againe untill the milke be wasted; and then put it in a close pot or glasse, and with this dresse any wound whatsoever, and it will heale it. Others use to take rosemary, and dry it in the shadow and beat it to powder, then wash the wound with vineger or the urine of a childe, and strew thereon the aforesaid powder, and it will heale an indifferent wound.

Other Farriers take Worme-wood, Marioram, Pimpernell, Calamint, Olibanum, beate them all into fine powder, then take Waxe and Barrows grease and boyle them on a soft fire untill they be as thicke as an oyntment or salve, with this dresse any wound and it will heale it. Others use to take the topps of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them well in a mortar till they come to a salve, and it will dry and heale a wound. Now the powder of hony and Lime, or Turpentine simply of it selfe will dry up & skinne any wound. Take Turpentine, Hony, Hoggs-grease, Waxe and sheeps suet of each a like; melt them well together to a salve, and they will heale any wound. Now if a horse be goared upon a stake, then you shall cast him, and poure into the wound butter scalding hot, and so let him lye till it be gone downe into the bottome, and do thus once a day till the wound be whole. If you desire to keepe a wound open, put into it the powder of greene copperas and it will doe it, but if you intend to heale it speedily



speedily, then Wheate flower and hony well beaten together to a salve will do it, dressing the wound once a day therewith.

CHAP. CXXXIX.

*Of a hurt with an Arrow.*

IF a Horse be shod or hurt with an Arrow, taint the hole onely with Hogs grease and Turpentine molten together and renew it once a day untill the wound be whole.

CHAP. CXL.

*Of the healing of any old sore or ulcer.*

OLD ulcers or sores are of three kinds, the first deepe, hollow and crooked, and they be called *Fistulaes*: The second broad and shallow, but much spreading and increasing, and they be called *Cankers*, and the last broad, deepe, blacke about the sides and bottome, yet not much increasing although not all healing, and they be called *old sores* or *Ulcers*: They proceed either from some great bruise, wound, or impostume, which is either venomd or abused in healing by contrary salves; or through the fluxe and abundance of humours flowing downe to those parts through the negligence of a most unskilfull Farrier. The signes are the long continuance of the sore, the thinnesse of the matter which issueth away and the blacknesse of the sore which is ever full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of

the most ancient Farriers it is thus : First cleanse the sore well with vvhite Wine ; then take Copperas and the leaves of Lillies, beate them well in a mortar with Svines grease till it come to a perfect salve, and lay it upon the sore vwith flaxe, and then cover it vwith a plaister as in case of vvwounds, and renew it once a day and it vwill heale it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough horse dung, and mixe it very well together vwith Pepper and the vvhite of an egge, and lay it to the sore, renevving it ouce a day till the ulcer be cure d.

Other Farriers strow upon the sore the povvder of Gals, and that vwill dry it up.

Others scald it once a day vwith hot oyle Olive, & that vwill heale it.

#### CHAP CXLI.

*A most certain and approved Cure for the healing of any old Ulcer whatsoever.*

**T**Ake Mastick, Frankinsence, Cloves, greene Copperas, and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, of Myrrhe double so much as of any one of the other : beate all to povvder, then burne it on a Chafing dish and coales, but let it not flame : then as the smoake ariseth, take a good handfull of Lint or fine hurds, & hold it over the smoake so that it may receive all the perfume therof into it, then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the lint or hurds into a very close box, and so keepe it.

Now vwhen you have occasion to use it: first vwash the sore vwith Urine or Vineger made warme, then dry it : and lastly lay on some of this lint or hurdes ;  
and

and thus do it twice a day, and it is a speedy and most infallible cure.

## CHAP. CXLII.

*Of bruifings or swellings.*

**A**LL bruifings and swellings come unto a horse either by accident, or by some blow, rush, pinch, or outward venoming; or else naturally, as through the flux of bloud; or through the abundance of Winde. The signs are the sightly appearance in what place or member soever they be: And the first, which are those which come by accident, are properly called bruifings or swellings; and the other, if they doe rot or corrode, and so turne to matter, are called impostumes.

Now for the generall cure of any bruise or swelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers it is thus: take of dry pitch, of gumme, of each an ounce: of Galbanum, of Lime, of each foure ounces, of Bitumin two ounces, of waxe three ounces, melt and boyle them very well together, then annoynt the sore place there-with once a day, and it will heale it. But if the swelling proceed onely from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of verjuyce, one pint of Barme, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boyle them very well together, then bind the Hay to the swelling very hot, and after poure on the liquor; do thus three or foure daies together, and it will take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the toppes of Worme-wood, Pellitory of the Wall, brancke ursine, beat them well together.

together with Swines greafe, then seeth them; then adde a pretty quantity of hony, Linseede oyle, and wheat meale; then stir it over the fire till all againe be sodden together, then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day till the swelling be gone.

Other Farriers use first to pricke the swelling with a fleame, then take of Wine Lees a pint, as much wheate flower as will thicken it, and an ounce of Cumin; boyle them together, and lay this somewhat warme unto it, renewing it every day once untill the swelling either depart or else come to a head, which if it doe not, then launce it and heale it according to a wound.


Other Farriers take of Rosen, of Turpentine and of Honey, of each halfe a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then straine them, and adde of Mirrhe, Sorcoaoll, and the flower of Fenugreeke, and of Linseede, of each an ounce; incorporate them altogether, and then make it thicke like a salve with the meale of Lupins, and lay it to the swelling and it will assuage it.

Other Farriers take of Galbanum and of Ceruse, of each an ounce, of oyle two ounces, and of vvasse three ounces, mixe them together over a soft fire, and when they are brought to a salve, then lay it unto the swelling and it will assuage.

If you take onely rotten litter, or Hay boyled in strong Urine, and apply it daily unto any swelling, it will take it away. Now if the swelling be upon the legges, and come by any straine: Then you shall take of Nerve oyle one pound, of blacke sope one pound, of Boares greafe halfe a pound; melt and boyle them

all

all well together, then straine it and let it coole; then when occasion serveth, annoynt and chafe your horses leggs therewith, holding a hot Iron neere thereunto, to make the oyntment enter in the better; then rope up his leggs and keepe them cleane from dust or durt: But if the swelling be upon any part of the backe or body, then take of hony and tallow of each alike, and boyle them together, then spread it on a cloath and lay it on the swolne place, and let it there sticke till it fall away of it selfe. Now if the swelling proceed from any windy cause, and so appeare only in the horses belly, then you shal take a sharp pointed knife or bodkin, and arme it so with some stay that it go not too deepe for piercing his guts: then strike him therewith through the skin into his body before the hollow place of his Haunch bone, halfe a foot beneath the backe bone, and the Wind will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow quill therein, or some feather to keepe it open a while, the Wind will avoid the better, then heale it up againe.

It is also very good to Rake the Horse, and to Ride him up and downe a little: but if the swelling be under the horses jawes, or about any part of his head, then you shall take his owne dung hot as soone as he makes it, and with a cloath bind it fast thereto renewing it twice a day till the swelling be gone. See further in the new additions for the Fistula, marked thus 

## CHAP. CXLIII.

*Of Impostumes, and first how to ripen them.*

**I**mpostumes are a gathering or knitting together of many and most corrupt humours in any part or member of the body, making that part to swell extreemly, and growing into such violent inflammation, that in the end they rot and breake out into foule, mattery, and running sores; they commonly proceed either from corruption of foode, or corruption of bloud; they are at the first appearance, very hard and very sore; which hardnesse is the principall signe that they will not rot. And of these impostumes, some be hot impostumes, and some be cold; yet for as much as every impostume must first be ripened, and brought to matter before it can be healed, we will first speake of the ripening of them. If therefore you would ripen any Impostume (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers:) You shall take of Sanguis Draconis, of gum Arabicke, of new Waxe, of masticke, of pitch of Greece, of incense, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together and straying them, make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the impostume without removing: and it vwill both ripen, breake, and heale any impostume.


Other Farriers take Swines grease, red Waxe; and the floure of Euforbium, and mixing them on the fire vwell together, lay it to the impostume, and it will do the like.

Other Farriers take of honey and of Wheat-meale  
of

of each a like quantity, and either boyle it in the Decoction of Mallows, or else mixe it with the yolke of an egge, and it will ripen, breake, and heale; yet it must be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take barley meale, and boile it with wine and pigeons dung, and so lay it to the impostume plaister-wise, and it will ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handfull or two of Sorrell, & lapping it in a Docke leafe, roast it in the hot Embers as you would a warden, and then lay it to the impostume as hot as may be well indured, renewing it once a day; and it will ripen it, breake, and heale. A plaister of Shoo makers wax will do the like also.

Other ancient Farriers take Mallow rootes, and Lilly rootes, and then bruise them, and put thereto hogs grease and Linseed meale, and playster-wise lay it to the impostume, and it will ripen it, breake it, and heale it perfectly. See further in the new Additions for the *Fistula*, noted thus 

### CHAP. CXLIII.

#### *Of cold impostumes.*

**I**F the impostume do proceed from any cold Causes, as those which rise after cold taking, or when a Horse is at grasse in the winter season, then you shall take the hearbe-cald Balme, and stampe it and hogges grease well together, and so playsterwise apply it to the sore, and it will heale it: or else when the impostume is ripe, open it in the lowest part with a hot Iron, then wash it with warme urine; after that  
annoynt

annoynt it with Tar and Oyle well mixt together; & if you make your incision in the manner of a halfe Moone, it is the better.

Others Farriers take white Mints, and seeth them in Wine; Oyle, Ale and butter, and so lay it hot to, and it will heale it.

Other Farriers take Cuckoo spit and stamp it with old grease, and so apply it, and it will heale it.

✚ Other Farriers take a handfull of Rew, and stamp it well with the yolkes of egges and honey, and then apply it playster-wise, and it will heale any cold impostume.

#### CHAP. CXLV.

##### *Of hot impostumes.*

✚ IF the impostume proceed from any hot causes, as from the extremity of travell, the parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the bloud, then according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take Liver-wort, and stamp it, and mixe it with the grounds of Ale, Hogges-grease, and bruised Mallowes, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen breake, and heale it: But if you would not have the swelling to breake, then take the grounds of Ale, or Beere, and having boyled Mallowes therein, bathe the sore place therewith, and it will drive the swelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettis seed, or poppy seede, and mixe it with oyle of red Roses, and lay it to the sore playsterwise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it will take it cleane away.



## CHAP CXLVI.

*Of the Tetter.*

**A** Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer like unto a canker, onely it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place, and many time it will remaine betweene the skinne and the flesh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not breake.

The cure thereof according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding Farriers is, to make a strong lye with old urine, Ashe ashes, and Greene Copperas, and bath the knots therewith, and it will kill and heale them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the taylor, and cast them away, the rest into small peeces, and roast them on a spit, then take the grease that droppeth from them, and being hot annoynt the Sorrhance therewith, and it will heale it in a short time: but looke that you touch no part of the horse therewith save onely the Sorrhance, for it will poyson and venome.

## CHAP. CXLVII.

*Of sinews that are cut, prickt or bruised.*

**I**f a horse by the mischance of some Wound, shall have any of his sinewes either cut, prickt, or sore bruised, then if there be no Convulsion of the sinews, you shall according to the opinion of the most ancientest Farriers, take Tarre, and Beane-flower,

flowre, and a little Oyle of Roses, and mixing them together lay it hot unto the places, and if it doe not present good, take wormes and sallet oyle fryed together, or else the oyntment of wormes, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them they knit the sinews againe, if they be not cleane on a suddain. But if there be a convulsion, then with a paire of shears you must cut the sinew in peeces, and then take Rosen and Turpentine, pitch, and Sanguis Draconis; then melting them together, clap it some what hot unto the sore; then take flaxe and put upon it, for that will cleanse and defend, and then this medicine there is none better for any swoln joynt whatsoever.

Now if the joynt be not much sweld, but onely that the sinewes are exceeding stiffe, through the great bruising, then you shall take of blacke sope a pound, and seeth it in a quart of strong Ale till it waxe thicke like Tar; then reserve it, and when you shall see cause use to annoynt the sinews and joynts therewith, and it will supple them, and stretch them forth although they be never so much shrunke, as hath bene approved.

#### CHAP. CXLVIII.

*Of fretting the belly with the fore-girthes.*

**I**F when you saddle and girde your horse, the girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewith all drawn too straight, they will not onely gall and wound the horse under the belly very much, but they will also stoppe the bloud which is

in the principall veines, called the plat veines, in such sort as they will occasion most extreame and hard swellings.

The cure whereof is, according to the general opinion, to take of oyle de bay and Oyle of Balme two ounces, of pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rosen ; mingle them well together, and then annoynt the horses fore bowels therewith; then take either flockes, or chopt flaxe, and clap upon it, and so let it abide untill it fall away of it selfe, and it will surely cure him.

Other Farriers use to take Vineger and sope, and beate them well together, and stirre it with a sticke or cloath, and then all to rubbe and wash the galled place therewith, and do thus at least twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three dayes at the most; but if the galling be about any part of the Horses necke, then you shall take the leaves of Briony ( called the Hedge vine ) and stamp them, and mixe them with Wine, and then playsterwise lay it to the sore, and it will heale it.

#### CHAP. CXLIX.

##### *Of Blisters.*

**B**Listers are certaine waterish hollow blebs, which do arise betwixt the skinne and the flesh, proceeding either from some slight burnings, scaldings or chafings, and they be very full of thinne matter. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the most generall Farriers is, first in the Sunne to fret them till they bleed : then take the rootes of Ivy

K k

and

and stamping them in a mortar, mixe them with as much Tar, Brimstone, and Allome; till they come to a salve; and then dresse the blister therewith, and it will heale it.

CHAP. CL.

*To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any superfluous flesh.*

**W**Hen a horse hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more then naturall, or when he hath any lumpes or bunches of superfluous flesh, otherwise then of right doth belong to his true proportion: then such bones, knots or bunches, are called Excretions, proceeding from tough and flegmaticke substances, stirred up either by most fore bruises imperfect healed Wounds, or other naughty putrifaction of the bloud, being most apparant to the eye, and most palpable to the hand.

Now for the cure (according to the generall opinion of the most Farriers) you shall first use Corrosive medicines, after drawing medicines, and lastly drying medicines: or more particularly thus you shall cure them: first with an incision knife scarifie the excretions, then apply Sulphure and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and sifted and when it hath eaten the excretion away, then heale it up with drying salves, as the powder of Hony and, Lime, or Bolearmony, or such like. Other Farriers use after they have made the Excretion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the ashes of Vitis, and as much un-

fleckt

fleckt Lime mixt with fixe ounces of strong lye, first strayned, then sod till halfe be consumed, and so brought to a firme substance; then keepe it in a glasse in a dry place, and apply it to the excretion till it have eaten it away, and then heale it up as is before said. Other Farriers use to take a pound of strong lye and sope, and a quarter of a pound of Vitrioli Romane, one ounce of Sal-armoniacke, and as much Roch allome, and boyle them together untill they be very thicke, and then with that oyntment eat away the excretion. Others use to take of Egyptiacum the strongest kind, and lay it on the excretion with a Cotten, three or four times, and it will take it cleane away: this medicine is most excellent for any splint, and of no small importance, if it be used against a Fistula, for it will sinke it, although it were in the Crowne.

#### CHAP. CLI.

*How to eat away any superfluous or dead flesh.*

**I**F when your horse hath any wound, Ulcer, and other sore, you shall perceiue that there groweth herein dead flesh, which dead flesh you shall know partly by the insensibility thereof, and partly in that it is a spongy, hollow, naughty flesh, not substantiall as the true flesh is; and either of a blackish, or an high red colour; then it shall bee meet that you seeke all meanes possible how to consume and eat away that superfluous and naughty flesh, because the sore that is pestered therewith, neither can nor will ever heale, till it be censed of the same:

therefore according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers. The best meanes to eate away, is to boyle fresh grease and Verdigrease, of each alike quantity together, and either to taint or playster the sore therewith, untill the dead flesh be consumed.

Other Farriers take either the scrapings of Harts horne, or Oxe horne, and mixing them with old sope dresse the sore therewith, and it will eat away dead flesh.

Other Farriers take Spongia Marina, or sea sponge, and therewith dresse the sore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers use the powder of Risag allo or Risagre, but it is a great deale too strong a fretter. Others use Litergy or Lime, in lye, but they are like very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either White or blacke Eleborus, Inke, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Litergy, Vitrioll, unfleckt Lime, Roch Allome, Galls, Soote, or the ashes of Avellan, of each halfe an ounce, and they will consume dead flesh: likewise Quicke silver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce made into powder, will do the like: the juyce of borage, of Scabions, of Fumitary, and of a Docke, of each halfe an ounce; a little old oyle and vinegar boyld with a soft fire, put to it Tar, and it will likewise eat away any dead flesh.

There be other Farriers which take Cantharides, Oxe dung and Vinegar, and mixe them altogether, and lay it to the sore, and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others use first to pounce the sore with a Razor, then annoynt it with grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farriers use in  
stead

stead of Risaglo, to take the powder of Verdigrease and Orpiment, of each an ounce, of unfleckt Lime and Tartar of each two ounces; mixe them together, and therewith dresse the sore, after you have washt it well with strong vinegar; and if you please, you may adde thereunto vitrioll and Allome, for they are both consumers of dead flesh. Other Farriers take the powder of Tartar and mans dung burnt with salt, and then beaten into powder and strewed on the sore: or else take salt, unfleckt Lime and Oyster shels, and beate them in a mortar with strong lye, or olde urine, till it be like a paste: then bake it in an Oven & after beat it to a powder, and strew it on the sore, and it will eat away the dead flesh.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein Nettle seeds have bin sodden, and then strew upon it the powder of Verdigrease.

Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these medicines, you do shave away the haire, that it be no impediment to the salve: also when you have drest it once, and see that there is an asker raised, then you shal dresse it with some mol-  
lifying or healing salve till the asker come away, and then dresse it with your eating salve againe: and thus do untill you behold that all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh, and then heale it up as in case of Wounds. Also Precipitate simple of it selfe will eat away any dead flesh.

## CHAP. CLII.

*For Knots in joynts, Hardnesse, Cramps  
or any Inflammations.*

**T**Here do grow in joynts three sorts of swellings: namely a hot swelling, a hard swelling, and a soft swelling: All which you may easily distinguish by your feeling, and they doe proceed either from abundance of grosse humours, ingendred by foule keeping: or else by accident, as from some wound, Rush, or strayne. The cure whereof, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, is to beat the powder called Diapente, together with oyle, till it be like an oyntment, and then apply it once a day to the grieve, and it will take it away, especially if it be a crampe or an inflammation.

Other Farriers use to incorporate with oyle halfe an ounce of liquid Storax, two ounces of Turpentine, five of waxe, and ten of bird lime. and apply that to the grieve, and it will ease it. Other Farriers take wine, old oyle, and tarre, mingled and boyled together, and therewith dresse the sore place, and it will helpe it:

**I**f Others of our old and latter Farriers take halfe a pound of grease, three scruples of mustard, and the like of bay salt, mixe these with vinegar, and apply it to the grieve. Others use to take a plaister of figs, and the roots of fearne and rocket, or mingle them with grease and vineger and apply it to the grieve. Other Farriers use to take the Vnguentum Basilicon, which is made of hony, Storax, Galbanum, Bdelium, blacke pepper



pepper, bay berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniacke, and of the powder of Frankinsence as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with sheeps suet, and apply it to the grieffe, and it will helpe it.

Other Farriers take dry pitch, pitch of greece, of each one part, of Galbanum, and of lime, of each foure parts, of Bitumen, two parts, of waxe three parts; melt them all together, and annoynt the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grieffe, and peradventure also the eye sore.

### CHAP. CLIII.

*How to cure any wound made with the shot  
of gun-powder.*

**A**ccording to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first with a probe; or long instrument, search whether the bullet remaine within the flesh or no; and if you find that it doth, then with another instrumnet for the purpose, you shall take it forth if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remaine: for in the end nature it selfe will weare it out of its owne accord, without any grieffe or impediment; because lead will not corrode or canker: Then to kill the fire, you shall take a little varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, annoynting it within even unto the bottome: Then stoppe the mouth of the wound with a little soft flaxe dipped in varnish also: Then charge all the swolne place with this charge: Take of Bolearmonie a quarterne, of linseed beaten into powder, halfe a

pound, of Beane flower as much, and three or foure Egges, shels and all, and of Turpentine a quarterne, and a quart, of Vinegar, and mingle them well together over the fire, and being somewhat warme, charge all the sore place with part thereof, and immediately clappe a cloath or piece of Leather upon it, to keepe the wound from the cold ayre, continuing both to annoynt the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of foure or five dayes : Then at the five dayes end, leave annoynting of it, and taint it with a taint reaching to the bottome of the Wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hogges grease molten together, renewing it every day once or twice untill the fire be thoroughly killed, which you shall perceiue by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling : For as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thicke matter will issue forth, but onely a thinne yellowish water, neither will the swelling asswage, and then take of Turpentine washed in nine severall waters, halfe a pound, and put thereunto three yolkes of egges, and a little Saffron, and taint it with this Oyntment, renewing it every day once untill the Wound be whole. But if the shot have gone quite through the wound, then you shall take a few Weavers linnen thrummes, made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them cleane through the wound, turnning them up and downe in the Wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either side upon the swolne places, with a charge aforesaid, untill you perceiue that the fire is killed ; then clap on a comfortable playster

ster upon one of the holes, and taint the other with a taint in the salve, made of washt Turpentine, Egges and Saffron, as is before said. Other *Farriers* use onely to kill the fire with oyle of Creame, and after to heale the wound up with Turpentine, Waxe, and hogs grease molten together.

Other *Farries* kill the fire with Snow Water, and charge the sweld place with Creame and Barme beaten together and then heale up the Wound by dipping the taint in the yolke of an Egge, hony, Saffron well beaten and mixt together.

### CHAP. CLIII.

*Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.*

**A**Ccording to the opinion of the ancient *Farriers*, you shall first wash the sore round about, and in every part very cleane with warme Urine; then kill the fire, by annoynting the place with Oyle and Water beaten together, dressing him so every day untill the sore be all raw, and then annoynt it with hogs grease, and strew there upon the powder of unfleckt Lime, dressing him thus every day once untill he be whole.

Other *Farriers* use first to wash and cleanse the sore with Sallet oyle onely warmed, then to kill the fire with Creame and oyle beaten together, and when it is raw, then to spread upon it Creame and Soot mixt together: and lastly, to strew upon it the powder of hony and Lime, untill it be perfectly skinned.

CHAP.

## C H A P. CLV.

*Of the biting with a mad Dogge.*

**I**F your horse at any time be bitten with a mad dog, the venome of whose teeth will not onely drive him into an extreame torment, but it will also infect and inflame in his bloud, in such sort that the horse will be indangered to dye mad. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is to take of Goats dung, of flesh that hath laine long in salt, and of the hearbe Ebulus generally called Danwort, of each halfe a pound, and forty Wal-nuts; stampe all these together, and lay part thereof to the sore, and it will sucke out the venome, and heale up the wound; but upon the first dressing, you shall give the horse Wine and Treacle mixt together to drinke.

There be other Farriers, which first give the horse Sacke and Sallet oyle to drinke, then with a hot Iron cauterize and burne the sore: and lastly, heale up the wound with the salve first recited.

Other Farriers first give the horse two or three spoonfull of the powder of Diapente to drinke in a pint of Muskadine; then take a live pigeon, and cleaving her in the midst, lay it hot to the Wound, and it will draw out the Venome; then heale the sore with Turpentine and Hogges grease well molten together. The leaves of Aristoloch bruised will take away the poyson.

## CHAP. CLVI.

*Of hurts by the tuskes of a boare.*

**I**F a horse bee stricken with the tuskes of a boare, you shall then take Copperas or Vitrioll, and the powder of a dogs head being burned, after the tongue hath been pulled out, and cast away; and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the sore, and it will cure it: Yet before you dresse it; first wash the sore very well, either with Vineger or with White Wine, or urine.

## CHAP. CLVII.

*To heale the biting or stinging of Serpents, or any venemous beast whatsoever.*

**I**F your horse be either bitten or stung, either with a Serpent or any other venemous beast, which you shall easily know by the suddain swelling either of the body or member; then you shall first chafe him up and downe untill he sweate, and then let him bloud in the rooffe of the mouth; and lastly, take a young Cocke or a Pidgion, and cleaving it in the midst clap it hot to the wound, and then give the horse White Wine and salt to drinke. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the hearbe called Sanicula, stampe it, and temper it together with the milke of a Cowe, till it be all of one colour, and give it the horse to drinke, and it will heale him. Other Farriers clap to the sore hogges dung, or Oxe dung, or Heabane bruised, or else the ashes of reedes; then give him

to drinke Mug-wort, or great Tansie, and Wine and Camomill stamp together: Or else give him Wine and Oleum Rafatum mixt together.

Other Farriers make a plaister of Onions, Hony, and salt, stamp and mingled together, and lay that to the sore place, and give the horse Wine and Treacle to drinke, or else white Pepper, Rue, and Time, mixt with wine. Other Farriers take Aphodillus, hastula regia, stamp with old Wine and laid to the sore: for it is most soveraigne good.

#### CHAP. CLVIII.

*Of Lice or Vermin; and how to kill them.*

**T**He Lice or Vermin which breed upon a horse, be like unto Geese Lice, but somewhat bigger, and doe breede most commonly about the Eares, Necke, Mane, Tayle, and generally over the whole body: they do proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where trees are continually dropping upon them: the signes are, the Horse will be alwaies rubbing and scratching, and albeit he eate much meate, yet he will not prosper: And with this continuall rubbing he will fret and weare away all his Mane and tayle, and you shall also perceive the Lice, when the Sunne doth shine, running on the tops of the haire. The cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers is, to take of sope one pound, and Quick silver halfe an ounce, mixe and beat them together wel, untill the Quick silver be kild, and then annoynt the Horse all over therwith, and it will consume the Lice presently.

Other

Other Farriers take slavefaker and fopes; and mixing them together, annoynt the horse all over therewith. Others take unripe Mulberries, and their roots or stalkes, and seeth them in strong urine, and then wash the horse therewith, after that annoynt all his body over with Sanguis draconis, the juyce of Leeks, salt, pitch, oyle, and swines grease, very well mixt together.

Others use to chafe all his body over with Quick-silver, and soft grease mixt together, till the Quick-silver be kild, and in two or three dressings the Lice will be counsumed.

#### CHAP CLIX.

*How to save horses from the stinging of Flies  
in Summer.*

**I**F you will save your horse in the summer time from the stinging or biting of flies, which is very troublesome unto them, then you shall annoynt all the horses body over either with oyle and Bay-berries mingled together, or else bind unto the headstall of his collar, a sponge dipped in strong Vinegar: Some use to sprinkle the stable with water wherein hearbe of Grace hath been laid to steepe: or else to perfume the stable with the smoke of Ivy or Calamint, or with Githe burned in a pan of coales.

But the surest way of all, both in the stable and abroad, is to make two good wispes of Rue, and therewithall to rub the horses body al over, and no flye wil light upon him, or touch him, as hath bin often approved.

## CHAP. CLX.

*Of bones being broken, or out of joynt.*

**O**ur common English Farriers are very farre to seeke in this cure; because they do neither perfectly acquaint them selves with the members of a horse, nor have so much invention in this extreamity, to make a horse, being an unreasonable creature, to suffer like a reasonable person; and also in that the old traditions in Horse-leach craft affirme, that all fractures above the knee are incurable; and so despairing they cease to make practise: but they are much deceived, for neither the fracture above the knee, nor the fracture below the knee, is more incurable in a horse then in man: if the Farrier can tell how to keepe the horse from struggling or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your horse have any bone broken, which is most easie to be discerned by the deprivation of the use of that member, and as easie to be felt by the vſperation of the bones, the one part being higher then the other, besides the roughnesse and inequality of the place grieved: you shall then for the cure thereof; First take a strong double canvas which shall be as broad as from the horses fore-shoulder to the flanke; and shall have another double canvas, which shall come from betweene the Horses fore booths up to the top of the wither, wheres meeting with the rest of the canvas, and having exceeding strong loopes, to which strong ropes must be fastned, you shall by main force sling up the horse  
from



from the ground, so as his feete may no more but touch the ground: And if it be a fore-legge that is broken, then you shall rayse him a little higher before then behind: If a hinder Legge, then a little higher behind then before, so that the horse may rest most upon the members most sound. When your horse is thus slung, then you shall put the bones into the right place: which done, wrappe it close about with unwashed Wooll newly pulled from the sheepes backe, binding it fast to the Legge with a smooth linnen roler soaked before in oyle and Vinegar mingled together, and looke that your Roler lye as smooth and playne as may be; and upon that againe lay more wooll dipt in oyle and Vinegar, and then splint it with three broad, smooth, and strong splints, binding them fast at both ends with a thong: and in any case let the horses legges be kept out very straight, the space of forty dayes, and let not the bones bee loosened above thrice in twenty dayes, unlesse it shrink, and so require to be new drest and bound againe; but faile not every day once to powre on the sore place, through the splints, Oyle and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty dayes end, if you perceive that the broken place be sowed together againe with some hard knob or Gristle, then loose the bonds, and ease the cavase, so as the horse may tread more firmly upon his sore foot, which when hee doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him goe up and downe faire and gently, using from hence forth to annoynt the sore place either with soft grease, or else with one of these playsters or Oyntments: Take of Sperma ar-  
genti,

*genti* of Vinegar, of each one pound, of Sallet oyle halfe a pound, of armonicke, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Wax and of Rosen, of each two ounces, of Bitumen, of pitch, and of Verdigrease, of each halfe a pound, boyle the vineger, oyle and *Spuma argenti* together, untill it waxe thicke : then put thereunto the pitch, which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the Bitumen, without stirring at all, and that being also molten, put in then all the rest, set the pot againe to the fire, and let them boyle altogether, untill they be all united in one: that done, straine it and make it in playster forme, and use it as occasion shall serue.

Other ancient and well experienced Farriers take of liquid pitch one pound, of Waxe two ounces, of the purest and finest part of Frankinsence one ounce, of Amoniacum foure ounces, of dry Rosen and of Galbanum of each one ounce, of Vinegar two pints : boyle first the Vinegar and pitch together, then put in the Amoniacum dissolved first in vinegar, and after that the afore-said Drugges : and after they have boyled altogether, and be united in one, straine it and make it into a playster, and use it according to occasion.

Other Farriers take of old Sallet oyle a quart, and put thereunto of Hogges grease, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boyle together untill it begin to blub above : then take it from the fire, and when you use any of the oyntment let it be very hot, and well chafed in : and then one of the two former, plaisters folded above it, and it is most soveraigne & comfortable for any bone that is broken.

## CHAP. CLXI.

*Of bones out of joynt.*

**I**F a horse have any of his bones out of the joynt, as either his knee, his shoulder, his pastorne, or such like, which you shall perceive both by the uncomlinessse of the joynt, and also feele by the hollownesse of the member that is displaced. Then your readiest cure is, to cast the horse on his backe, and putting foure strong pastornes on his feete, draw him up so as his backe may no more but touch the ground; then draw the grieved legge higher then the rest, till the poise and weight of his body have made the joynt to shoot into its right place againe; which you shall know when it doth, by a suddaine and great cracke which the joynt wil give when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentlenesse loose the horse, and let him rise: And then annoynt all the grieved place either with the last oyntment rehearsed in the last chapter, or else with the oyle of Mandrake or the oyle of Swallows; both which are of most soveraigne vertue.

## CHAP. CLXII.

*To dry up humours, or to bind, being asthictive,  
or binding charges.*

**T**Ake of Vnguentum Tripharmacum made of Lyteigy, Vineger and old oyle, boyled till they be thick, only take as much oyle as of both the others and it will stop and stay the flux of any humours.

If you take strong lye, it is a great dryer and a binder of humours.

Dissolve in Vinegar Rosen Affalto, and Myrrhe, of each an ounce, of red Waxe halfe an ounce, and of Armoniacke halfe an ounce, mingle them well together in the boyling: for this salve drieth wonderfully, bindeth all loose members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of Lard two pounds, and when it is sodden straine it with three ounces of Ceruse, and as much Allome, melted, and it both drieth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry figges beaten with Allome, Mustard, and vinegar, doth dry abundantly.

Oyle or soft grease beaten to a salve with Vitrioll, Galls and Allome, & the powder of Pomegranats, Salt and Vinegar both dry and bind sufficiently.

Sope and unfleckt Lime mixt together drieth perfectly after any incision.

Verdigrease, Orpiment, Sal armoniacke, and the powder of coloquintida, of each alike made into a plaister with milke or waxe, drieth and bindeth.

The grease of Snakes reasted, the head and tayle being cut away, is a great dryer.

To conclude, the barke of a Willow tree burnt to ashes is a great dryer, and binder, as any simple whatsoever,

## CHAP. CLXIII.

*A plaister to dry up superfluous moisture, and to binde parts loosened.*

**T**Ake of Bitumen one pound, of the purest part of Frankincence three ounces, of Bdellium Arabicum one ounce, of Deers suet one pound, of populeum one ounce, of Galbanum one ounce, of the drops of Storax one ounce, of Common Waxe one pound, of Resin Cabiall half a pound, of Viscus Italicus one ounce and a halfe, of Apoxima one ounce, of the juyce of Hyssop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniacke one ounce, of pitch halfe a pound: let all these be well and perfectly molten, dissolved, and incorporated together according to Art, and then make a plaister therof.

## CHAP. CLXIII.

*Another plaister to dry up any swelling, wind gall silent, or bladders, in or about the joynts.*

**T**Ake of Virgin VVaxe halfe a pound, of Rosen one pound & a quarter, of Galbanum one ounce and an halfe, of Bitumen halfe a pound, of Myrrhe secundary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Costus three ounces: boyle all these things together in an earthen pot, saving the Armoniack and Costus, which being first ground like fine Flower, must be added unto the other things; after that they have beene boyled and cooled, and then boyled altogether againe, and well stirred, so as they may be incorporated

corporated together, and made all one substance, and then applying as occasion shall be administred.

CHAP. CLXV.

*Receipts to dissolve humours.*

**T**Ake of Worme-wood, Sage, Rosemary, and the barke of an Elme, or of a pine, of each a good quantity, and boyle them in oyle with a good quantity of Linseed; and making a bathe thereof, bathe the grieved part; and it will dissolve any humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of figs stampd with salt till they come to a perfect salve, dissolveth all manner of humours by opening the pores and giving a large passage.

CHAP. CLXVI.

*How to mollifie any hardnesse.*

**T**Ake of Linseed pund, and of Fenugreeke, of each foure ounces, of pitch and Rozen, of each three ounces, of the flower of Roses two ounces, pitch of Greece three ounces: boyle them together, then adde three ounces of Turpentine, sixe ounces of hony and a little oyle: and then applying this salve, it will mollifie and soften any hard substance.

Malvavisco well sod, and stampd with Oleum Rosatum, being laid hot to any hardnesse will make it soft.

Boile Branck-ursin and Mallows together, and beat them with oyle and Lard, and they will soften much.

Malvavisco, Coleworts, Brancke ursin, hearb of the Wall, & old greafe punded, doth mollifie very much.

The

The oyle of Cypresse, both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheate meale, hony, Pellitory, branck ursine, and the leaves of Worme wood being beaten with Swines grease, and laid hot unto any hard tumour, doth suddenly mollifie it, and is passing good for any stride also.

Grease, Mustard seed, and Comen boyled together doth mollifie very much.

Take of Sope halfe an ounce, of unsleckt Lime an ounce, and mixe them well with strong lye, and it will mollifie even the hardest hoofes.

The juyce of leaves and rootes of Elder, or a plaister made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours marvelously.

So doth the juyce of the topps of Cypresse, and dry figges macerated in Vineger and strained, of each three ounces : And if you adde to it of Salniter one ounce, of Armoniacke halfe an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponax a little, and make it into an oyntment, it will mollifie any hardnesse very sufficiently.

Mallows, Nettles, Mercorella, and the roots of Cowcumbers; and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old grease, will mollifie any hardnesse speedily.

### CHAP. CLXVII.

*To harden any softnesse.*

**T**He sole of an old shooe burnt, and sodden in Vinegar will harden hoofes, and so will also the powder

powder of Gals boyled with bran and salt in strong Vineger.

The powder of hony and Lime, or the Powder of Oyster shells, or the powder of a burnt felt, or thicke creame and soote mixt together, will harden any sore whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXVIII.

*To Conglutinate.*

Iris Illirica beaten and sifted, mingled with pepper, Hony, Currants, and given the horse to drinke with Wine and oyle, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward rupture or burstnesse whatsoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruite of the pine, with the yolkes of egges, given likewise to drinke with Wine and oyle, doth also conglutinate any inward member or veine broken:

Incense, Masticke, and cute, doth the like also. Poligano sod in Wine, and given to drinke is good also.

The rootes and seeds of Asparagus sod in water and given to the horse; then after for three dayes give him butter and Opoponax with Hony and Myrrhe, and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIX.

*To mundifie and cleanse any sore.*

Take oyle of Olives, Swines grease clarified, the grease of a young Fox, Turpentine, Allome, and white Waxe, seeth them altogether till they be most thoroughly



throughly incorporated together, and with this Oyntment dresse any foule sore whatsoever, and it will mundifie and cleanse it most sufficiently.

CHAP. CLXX.

*Of Repercussive medicines, or such as drive  
backe humours.*

**R**Epercussive medicines, or such as drive evill humours backe, are commonly called amongst Farriers, Plaisters or salves defensative, and are to be used about every great Wound and Ulcer, lest the flux of humours flowing to the weake part, both confound the medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of these Repercussive medicines these are the best, either vineger, salt, and bole armoniacke beaten together, and spread round about the sore, or else White Lead and Sallet oyle beaten also together, or Red Lead and Sallet oyle, or else Unguentum Album, Camphoratum, and such like.

CHAP. CLXXI.

*Of burning Compositions.*

**B**urning Compositions are for the most part, Corrosives, of which we shall have occasion to speake more at large in a Chapter following: yet for as much as some are of better temper then other, you shall here understand, that of all burning Compositions, the gentlest is Unguentum Apostolorum, next to it is Verdigrease and Hoggs grease beaten to-

gether : Next to it is Precipitate, and Turpentine mixt together: Next to it is Arsnicke Allayd with any oyle, or healing serve: Next to it is Mercury sublimate likewise allaid with some cooling salve: And the worst is Lime and Sope, or Lime and strong lye beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the soundest part or member whatsoever.

### CHAP. CLXXII.

*For all manner of hurts about a horse  
whatsoever.*

**T**AKE an ounce of oyle, two ounces of Turpentine and a little Waxe, mingle them at the fire: this will heale any Wound or Gall, and keepe it cleane from filth, water, and durt.

Take Vineger and Honey, and boyle it together, when it is cold, adde the powder of Vineger, Copporas, and Brasse burnt, mingle them well together: this will take away all ill and dead flesh, and cleanse and heale any old ulcer.

Take waxe, pitch, Swines greafe, and Turpentine, and mixe them well together: this will heale any bone, spell, or any other stub.

Take house Snailles, and seeth them in butter, and they will draw out any Thorne or Nayle, being oft renewed. So wil also the rootes of Reedes being bruised and applyed.

The rootes of an Elder beaten to powder, and boyled with hony is good for any old sore whatsoever.

Take Salt, Butter and hony, or white Waxe, Turpentine, and oyle Rosatum, of each like quantity, with  
twice

twice as much Beane flower as of any of the other, mixe it very well together, and make it into a salve, and it will heale any sore, either old or new whatsoever.

Take Wax, Turpentine, and Deeres suet, or the Marrow of a Stagge, and mixe them well together, and it will heale any wound or any Impostume whatsoever: so will also Waxe, oyle, Masticke, Frankinsence and sheeps suet: well molten together: or the powder of Masticke, Frankinsence and Aloes, mixt and molten well together.

The whites of egges beaten with Oleum Rosatum, and salt, and so laid upon flaxe hurds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principall patt where the Muscles are.

If you will purifie, cleanse, and heale any old sore, take three pints of well clarified hony, and boyle it with one pint of Vineger, and one of Verdigrease, and so apply it: or else take of Masticke, and Verdigrease of each halfe an ounce, of Frankinsence one ounce, of new Waxe foure ounces, of Turpentine sixe ounces, and of hoggs grease two pound: boyle and incorporate all these together, and then apply it to the sore plaee, and it will both cleanse, purifie, and heale.

Chicke-weed Groundsell, Graise, and stale Vrine, very well boyled together, will heale any galling or hurts by halter, or other accident, or any straine or stripe or swelling, which commeth by any such like mischance.

Take of new Milke three quarts, a good handfull of Plantaine; let it boyle till a pint be consumed:  
then

then adde three ounces of Allome made into powder, and one ounce and an halfe of white Sugar candy, made likewise into powder: then let it boyle a little, til it have a hard curd: then straine it, with this warme bathe an old Vlcer, then dry it, and lay on some Vnguentum Basilicon; this cleanseth, dryeth, strengthneth, and killeth the itche, and healeth the foulest ulcer either in man or beast that may be. Also, if you take of milke a quart, of Allome in powder two ounces, of Vineger a spoonfull; when the milk doth seeth, put in the Allome and Vinegar, then take off the curd, and use the rest, and it will likewise dry up and heale any foule old sore whatsoever.

CHAP. CLXIII.

*How to make the powder of Hony  
and Lyme.*

**T**Ake such a quantity of unsleckt Lime as you shal think fit, beat it into very fine powder: then take so much Hony as shall suffice to mingle it together, and make it into very a stiffe paste, in the forme of a thicke cake or Loafe: then put the same Cake or Loafe into a hot Oven, or a burning fire till it be baked, or burnt glowing red: then take it forth, & when it is cold, beat it into very fine powder, and then use it as occasion shall serve. It dryeth, healeth, and skinneth any sore whatsoever very marvelously.

CHAP.

## CHAP. CLXXIII.

*The order of taking up of Veines, and wherefore it is good.*

First, before we speake of the order of taking up of Veines, you shall understand, that all Veines except the Necke-veines, the Eye-veines, the Breast-veine, Palate veines, and the Spurre-veines, are to be taken up, and not striken with the fleame: partly because they are so little and thinne, that if you strike them, you shall either indanger the striking thorough them; or partly because they are so neare adjoyning to Arteries and Sinews, that if in striking you should hit and pricke either Artery or sinew, it were a present laming of the horse, as I have often times seene and noted in the practise of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a veine, it is thus.

First, you shall cast your horse either upon some soft ground, grasse, some dunghill that is not very moyst, or in some lightsome House, upon good store of sweet straw; then when the horse is thus cast, you shall looke for the veine which you intend to take up, and if it be either so small, or lye so deepe, that you can hardly perceive it: Then you shall with warme Water, rub, chafe, and bathe all that part where the veine lyeth, then take a narrow filke garter, and a handfull or two above the veine (if it be of any of the horses legs) garter the member very strait; but if it be a veine to be taken up on the body or brest, then with a good sursingle either close behind the hinder  
point

point of the shoulder, or within a handfull of the place, where you meane to take up the veine, gird him very strait, and presently you shall see the veine to arise; then marke that part of the skinne which covereth the veine, and with your finger and your thumbe, pull it somewhat aside from the veine, and then with a very fine incision-knife slit the skin cleane through, without touching the veine, and in any wise cut no deeper then through the skinne, and that long wise too, in such sort as the veine goeth, yet not above an inch at the most in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumbe; and the skinne will returne againe into his place, right over the veine as it was before, in so much that but opening the orifice, or slit, you shall see the veine lye blew, and bare before your eyes; then take a fine smooth Cornet, made either of the Browantler of a Stag, or of an old Bucke, and thrust it underneath the veine, and lift it up a pretty distance (that is to say, halfe the thicknesse of the Cornet) above the skinne; that done, you shall then loose either the garter or the Sursingle, for they are but onely helps for you to find out the veine; and where the veine will appeare to them, there by no means you shall see them.

Now when you have thus taken your veine upon your Cornet, you shall then either put a red silke thrid, dipt in Oyle of Butter, or else a small shoemakers thrid, underneath the veine also, somewhat higher then the Cornet, which silke or thrid must serve to knit the veine when time requires; then the Cornet standing still as before, with your knife  
slit

flit the top of the Veine long wise, the length of a barley corne, that it may bleed: then stopping the nether part of your veine with the silke or the thred, suffer it to bleed from above; then with your silke or thred remove above, knit it fast with a sure knot above the slit, suffering it onely to bleed from beneath, and having bled there also sufficiently, then knit up the veine beneath the slit with a sure knot, then fill the hole of the veine with salt, and heale up the Wound of the skin with Turpentine and hogges grease molten together, or else with a little fresh butter, laid on with a little flax or soft tow is sufficient.

Now the vertue which redounds from this taking up of veines: first it is very necessary; and doth ease all griefes, straines, and stiffenesse of the Limbes: for the taking up of the plat-veines easeth all paines in the breast, and griefes in the chest; then taking up of the fore th'gh veines easeth Farcies, and swellings of the Legs: the taking up of the shackle veines before helpeth gourding quitter bones, and the swelling of the joynts, scabs and scratches: the taking vp of the hinder hough veines, helpeth Spavens of both kinds, most especially any Farcy in those parts, and generally all swellings or impostumes; the taking up of the pastorne veines behind helpeth swelling about the cronet, or neather joynts, paines, Mules, and all manner of kibed heeles, besides sundry other such like diseases.

## CHAP CLXXV.

*Of cauterizing or giving the fire, the kinds and uses.*

**T**He giving of fire which amongst the best Farriers is called Cauterizing, and amongst the simpler burning, searing- or blistering is, ( according to the generall-opinion of all the most ancientest Farriers the chiefest Remedie ), and as it were the last refuge of all Diseases incident to any horses body, whether they be Naturall or Accidentall : for the Violence of fire separating and digesting all manner of humours into a thinne ayre, and loose body, cleanseth and avoydeth those grosnesse which are the materiall causes of all putrifaction and Ulceration. Now of cauterization there be two kindes, the one of them actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the instrument, that is to say, of the hot Iron of what fashion soever : The other Potentiall, which is done by the applying of Medicine whose nature is either Corrasive, Putrifactive or Causticke.

Now the first of these, which is the cauterize actual, is principally to be used when there is any apostumation in any sinew, part or member, or amongst any of the most principall Veines: also when you shall dis-member or cut away any joynt, or make any incision, where there is feare of any flux of bloud, or where you shall finde either the skin or Muscles shrunke or straitened: and in many such like cases.

The Cauterizing potentiall is to be used in old cankered



cankered ulcers, Wennes, or any spongy excretions either of flesh or bone whatsoever, of whose natures and properties you shall reade more hereafter in a following Chapter.

### CHAP. CLXXVI.

*Of the cauterize actuall, and the forme of instruments.*

**A**N actuall Cautery, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately used, is a notable remedy to stop all corruption in members, to keepe perfect the complexion of the same, and also stanch the blood: onely you must have a carefull regard, that in the handling of your Iron you touch neither Sinewes, Tendants, Cords nor Ligaments, lest you do utterly disable the member, or breed Cramps or Convulsions; except it be when you dis-member or cut away any joynt: As when you doe make curtals, geld horses, or such like: and then your cautery is to be used onely to seare the Veines, Sinews, and Ligaments, till such time that you are perfectly assured that all fluxe of blood is stopped whatsoever.

Now againe the actuall cautery bindeth together parts loosened, it doth attenuate things blowne, and puffed up, it dryeth up superfluous moysture, it both loosneth, disperseth, and divideth evill matter gathered together into knots, it asswageth old griefes, it rectifieth those parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect estate, and suffereth no abundance

dance of evill humours to grow or increale : For the skinne being separated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrifaction whatsoever through the vertue of the fire, is first digested and ripened, and then so dissolved, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or sickned member is now healed, and eased of all paine and griefe: yea, and insomuch that the holes being once closed and close shut up, the place is stronger and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skinne then ever it was before : onely the greatest blemish that can any way be found in cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great skar which is many times an eye sore more then is tollerable : and therefore the use of cauterizing is onely to be preferred but in desperate cases of great extremity : for albeit it worke foule, yet I am perswaded it is most certaine, and it workes most sure.

Now as touching the instruments wherewith you must cauterize, their substance and proportion, you shall understand that the most curious Farriers doe preferre either Gold or silver to be the best mettall to make them of, in that few or no evill accidents do follow where they burne : But the wisest, best, and most skilfull Farriers take Copper to be sufficient enough, and a mettall without any lawfull exception: yet where Copper instruments cannot be had, there you may with commendations enough use such instruments as are made of Iron, and finde your worke nothing at all hindred.

Now for the fashion or proportion of your Instruments, or Irons they are to be onely referred to  
the

the fore or place grieved, wherewith you are to meddle, according to the diversity whereof your instruments are to be made of divers fashions, as some are to be made knife-wise, either with thinne edges, or broad edges; and they be called drawing knives, or searing knives, because they are principally employed in the drawing of straight lines shallow, or deepe, and sometimes in circular or divers squares: some are made like straight, and some like crooked bodkins, and they are employed either in fleshly excretions, to cause exulceration, or else in impostumes to open small passages for the mater, some are made like hookes or sickles, and they are to be used where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead flesh, or such like hidden evils, which cannot be reacht by any strait instruments: Others are made either with great buttons or little buttons at the end; and they are used to open impostumes, or else to burne into the sound flesh, where you intend to make any new sore or issue for the drawing or keeping backe of other evill humours. And in making of these Irons, the Farriers owne judgment is to be of great valew, because he must either increase and diminish them according to the manner of the place grieved; and bee sure that he ever make them fit for his right purpose.

Now for the use of these instruments, there are two principall things to be regarded: First, the heating of the Iron, and next the true temper, or bearing of the Farriers hand.

Touching the heating of the Iron; you shall un-

derstand, that the backe of the Iron must never be so hot as the edge, that is to say, you must never make the backe of the Iron red hot, for feare that therby it yeeld too much heate, and consequently breed inflammation: therefore whensoever you see the backe of your iron as hot as the edge, you shall a little coole it with water.

Now for the temper, or bearing of your hand, you shall understand, that the more evenly and light it is done, so much the better it is done; and herein is to be considered, the finenesse or thicknesse of the horses skinne, which you shall know most commonly by his haire: for if it be short and fine, then the skinne is thin: if it be long and rough, then is his skinne thick and boysterous.

Now the skinne that is fine, must be cauterized or seared with a very light hand, in as much as the skinne is so soone passed through, and the thicke skinne with a heavy hand, and both of them with such a tempered hand, that the skinne must no more but looke yellow: wherein you shall ever find that the fine skinne will sooner looke yellow then the thicke skinne, the maine reason being, because the thicknesse and roughnesse of the haire of the thicke skinne doth coole and choake the heate of the iron, in so much that if it be not laid to with a more heavy hand, and the instrument so much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot worke that effect which in Art should do.

Now you shall also observe, that in drawing of any Line or other Cauterize whatsoever, that you ever draw with the haire, and never against the  
haire

haire, whether the lines be short; long, deepe, shallow, straight, crooked, or over-thwart, according as the grieve doth require.

Now to conclude, you are to observe in Cauterizings, these few precepts: First, that you do not give fire to any sinewy place, except there be some apparant swelling, or else impostumation: Secondly, that you give not fire to any bone that is broken; or out of joynt, for feare of breeding a generall weaknes in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire so deep, or suffer your hand to be so heavy, that you may mishape, or deform the horse, either by unnecessary figur, or uncomely Skars. Fourthly, not to be too rash or hasty in giving fire, as if every cure were to be wrought by that practise only ( as I know some very well reputed Farriers hold of opinion ) but only to attempt all other good means before, and when all hope else is desperate, then to make the fire your last refuge, as an extreamity that must prevaile when all other practises do perish.

Lastly, I would not have you like those foolish Farriers which know nothing, utterly to contemne and neglect it, as if it were uselesse, but with all moderation and Judicious discretion to apply it in fit time and place, the poore horse may gaine ease, your selfe good Reputation, and the owner profit: which is most certain, as long as you are governed by wisdom.

## CHAP. CLXXVII.

*Of Cauterize by medicine, which is cauterize Potentiall.*

**T**He potentiall Cauterize or searing of the flesh by medicine is ( as I said before ) when the medicines are either Corrosive, Putrifactive, or Causticke : Corrosive, as when they do corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh: Putrifactive, when they doe corrupt the complexion of the member, and doe induce a maine Skarre like dead flesh, causing infinite paine, in such sort that they are often accompanied with Fevers and mortality, and therefore are not to be administred, but to strong bodies, and in very strong diseases: and Causticke, which is as much to say as burning, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and commeth neere to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoever it toucheth.

Now these potentiall cauterizes do exceed and excell one another, by certaine degrees as thus, the corrosives are weaker then the Putrifactives, and the putrifactives are weaker then the caustickes; the corrosives worke upon the upper part in the soft flesh, the putrifactives in the depth of the hard flesh, and the causticks have power to breake skinne sound or unsound, both in hard and soft flesh, and that very deeply also.

Now of Corrasives some be simple and some be compound : the simple corrosives are Roch-allome, burnt or unburnt, the Sponge of the Sea somewhat burnt

burnt Lime, red Currall, and the powder of *Mercury*, the shavings of an Oxe or Harts horne, *precipitate Verdigrease*, and such like. The compound *Corrosives* are, blacke sope and Lime, *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, and *Vnguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Vnguentum Caraceum*, and many such like: and these are to be applyed unto sores, Ulcers, or Excretions; after they are Corroded.

The putrifactives are *Arsnicke*, either white or yellow, *Resalgar*, or any medicine compounded with any of them; besides *Sandaracha* *Chrysocola*, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your putrifactive medicines to be crustive, that is, breeding a great Scar and hot in the fourth degree: then they are unsleckt lime, and the burned dregs of wine; and these are to be used to *Carbuncles*, *Cankers*, and *Amburies*.

The Causticke medicines are those which are made of strong lye, called *Capitellum*, or *Magistra*, of *Vitriole Romanæ*, *Sal-niter*, *Aqua-fortis*, *Apium*, *Cantharides*, *Cyclamine*, Onions, strong *Garlicke*, *melanacardium*, the stones of graines of *Briony* and many such like.

Now in conclusion, I would wish every diligent *Farrier* seldome or never to use either *Arsnicke*, *Resalgar*, or *Mercury sublimatè*, simply of themselves; but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to worke be very great) with *Vnguentum Apostolorum*; but if it be very little, then with *Hogges grease*, *Turpentine*, or such like. And thus much for this potentiall *Cauterizing*, and the proper uses.

## CHAP. CLXXVIII.

*Of the rowelling of horses, and the use thereof.*

**T**He Rowelling of horses is, amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and generall practise of all other whatsoever, insomuch that not any disease can almost be found about a horse, either how slight or great soever it be, but presently without any reason or sence therefore, they will Rowell him for the same ; whereby they not only put the horse to a needlesse torment, but also bring downe ( now and then ) such a fluxe of naughty humours, that they lame the horse, which otherwise would be perfectly sound. But it is not my Theame to dispute of these ignorances, onely this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practise as necessary and commendable for the good estate of a Horses Limbes and body, as any medicine whatsoever, so it be applyed in his due time, and in his due place : otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodnesse.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are these, it separateth and dissolveth all evill humours, which either through Naturall or Unnaturall corruptions, are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluity of evill substance, it loosneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are Weakned ; it giveth strength unto sicke joynts, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold fleame, or hot cholericke substance



substance : the generall use of Rowelling, is either for inward straines, especially about the shoulders or hips, or else for great hard swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either playster or Vnguent : for you must understand, that when a horse receiveth any straine or bruise, either in the upper joynts of his shoulders or his hips, which joynts do not stand one upon another, as the lower joynts doe, but they goe one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the spade bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone : Now as I say, when a bruise is received in these parts, if by present application of hot and comfortable medicines, the grieffe be not taken away, then est-soones there gathers betweene the pot and the bone, a certaine bruised jelly, which continually offendeth the tender Gristle which covers the ends of every bone, makes the horse to halt vehemently : and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by Rowelling only : and as I speake of the shoulder, so I speake of the hips also, where the upper thigh bone goeth into the pot of the cannell bone, & there breeds the like infirmity : Now for the manner of Rowelling it is in this sort : First, when you have found out the certaine place of the horses grieffe, as whether it be on the fore pitch of the shoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hippe, then you shall (having cast the horse upon some Dung-hill and soft ground) make a little slit more then a good handfull below the place of his grieffe through the skinne, and no more, so bigge

as you may well thrust in a swannes quill into the same : then with your cronet raise the skinne a little from the flesh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skinne from the flesh upward, even to the toppe, and all over the shoulder : then stopping the hole with your finger and your thumbe, take a small hazell sticke, and all to beate the blowne place all over ; and then with your hand spread the wind into every part, and after let it goe : then take a tampin of horse haire twound together, or which is better, of redde sarcinet halfe the bignesse of a mans little finger, and above a foote or sixteene inches in length, putting it into your rowelling needle ; which would be at the least seaven or eight inches long ; thrust it in at the first hole, and so putting it upward, draw it out againe at least sixe inches above ; and then, if you please, you may put in another above that : and then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the skinne, in any wise not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to annoynt them well with butter, hogges grease, or oyle de bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiniated that these long rowels, or tampins of haire or silke, doth make both a double sore, and a great scarre, therefore they make their rowels, of round pieces of stiffe leather, such as is the upper part of an old shooe, with a round hole in the middest, according to this forme : and then doubling it when they put it in, as



soone

soone as it is within, to spread it, and lay it flat betweene the flesh and the skinne, and so as the hole of the rowell may answer just with the hole that is made in the horses skinne; and then once in two or three days to cleanse the rowell, and to annoynt it, and so put it in againe.

Other *Farriers* do use to make the Rowell of lant-horne-horne, in the same fashion as is made of leather, and in like sort to use it. But for mine owne part, I have used them all, and truly in my practise finde not any better then other: onely the leather or the Horne is somewhat more cleanly, and lesse offensive to the Eye, yet they aske much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowell your horse for any swelling, then you shall ever put in your long Rowell the same way that the veines runne, and seldome or never cross-wise, and the more you blow the skinne for a swelling, so much the better it is: for the winde is it which only occasioneth putrifaction, and makes these festred humors to dissolve, and distill down from the secret hollows of the joynts, into those open places where it falleth away in matter, and so the beast becomes cured.

#### CHAP. CLXXIX.

##### *How to geld Horses or Colts.*

**T**Here is to be observed in the gelding of Horses, first, the age: secondly, the season of the yeare: and lastly, the state of the moone. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteene

teene, if his stones be come downe : for to speake the truth, the sooner that you geld him, it is so much the better both for his growth, shape, and courage : albeit some hold opinion, that at two yeares old should be the soonest, but they are mistaken, and their reasons are weake therein.

Now if it be a horse that you would geld, then there is no speech to be made of his age : for it is without any question, that a perfect Farrier may geld a horse without danger at any age whatsoever, being carefull in the cure.

Now for the season of the yeare, the best is in the Spring betweene Aprill and May, or in the beginning of Iune at the farthest, or else about the fall of the leafe which is the later end of September.

Now for the state of the Moone, the fittest time is ever when the moone is in the Wane : as touching the manner of Gelding, it is in this sort, whether it be Foale, Colt, or Horse : First, you shall cast him either upon straw, or upon some dunghill : then taking the stone betweene your fore most finger and your great finger, you shall with a very fine incision knife slit the Codde, so that you may presse the stone forth, and no more : Then with a paire of small Nippers, made either of steele, boxe-wood, or Brasill being very smooth, and clap the strings of the stone betweene them, very neere unto the setting on of the stone, and presse them so hard, that there may be no flux of bloud : then with a thinne drawing cauterizing Iron made red hot, seare away the stone, then take a hard plaister made of Rosen, Waxe, and washt Turpentine, well molten together,

ther, and with your hot Iron melt it upon the head of the strings: then seare the strings, and then melt more of the salve, till such time as you have laid a good thicknesse of the salve upon the strings: Then loose the Nippers, as you did so with that stone, so do with the other also: Then fill the two slits of the Cod with White Salt, and annoynt all the outside of the Cod, and all over the horses belly and thighs with Hoggs grease cleane rendered; and so let him rise: And keepe him in either some very warme stable, or otherwise in some very Warne pasture, where he may walke up and downe; for there is nothing better for a horse in this case, then moderate exercise.

Now if after his gelding you do perceive that his Cod and sheath doth swell in any extraordinary fashion, then you shall chase him up and downe, and make him trot an houre in a day, & it wil soone recover him and make him sound without any impediment.

CHAP. CLXXX.

*Of the making of Curtals, or cutting off of  
the tailes of Horses.*

**T**He Curtailing of Horses is used in no Nation whatsoever, so much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reason of much Carriage, and heavy burthens which our Horses continually are exercised and employed withall, and the rather sith wee are strongly opinionated, that the taking away of those joynts doth make the Horses chine or backe a great deale stronger

stronger, and more able to support a burthen, as in truth it doth, and wee daily finde it by continuall experience.

Now for the manner of curtailling of Horses, it is in this sort : First, you shall with your finger and your thumbe, grope till you finde the third joynt from the setting on of the Horses tayle ; and having found it, raise up all the haire, and turne it backward : then taking a very small strong Cord, wrappe it about that joynt and pull it both with your owne strength and another mans, so straight as you can possible pull it : then wrappe it about againe, and draw it as straight or straighter againe : and thus do three or foure times about the tayle, with all the possible straightnesse that may be ; and then make fast the ends of the cord : then take a peece of wood, whose end is smooth and even, of just height with the strunt of the horses tayle ; and setting it between the horses hinder legges (after you have tramelled all his foure legges, in such sort that hee can no wayes stirre) then lay his tayle thereupon, and taking a maine strong sharpe Knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so neere as you can guesse it, betweene the fourth and fifth joynt, and then with a great Smiths hammer striking upon the backe of the knife, cut the tayle asunder : then if you see any bloud to issue forth, you shall know that the cord is not straight enough, and therefore you must draw it straighter, but if no bloud follow, then it is well bound : This done, you shall take

a redde hot burning iron, made round after this fashion, of the full



compasse.

compasse of the flesh of the horses taylor, that the bone of the taylor may goe through the hole, and with it you shall seare the flesh, till you have mortified it; and in the searing you shall plainly see the ends of the veine start out like pape heads; but you shall still continue searing them, untill you see all to be most smooth, plaine, and hard, so that the blood cannot breake through the burning: then may you boldly unloose the Cord, and after two or three dayes, that you perceive the fore beginne to Rot, you shall not misse to annoynt it with fresh butter, or else with hogges grease and Turpentine, untill it be whole.

CHAP. CLXXXI.

*To make a white Starre in any part  
of a Horse.*

**I**F you will at any time make a White Starre, either in your Horses fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers. Take a Tile stone, and after you have burned it, beate it into fine powder: then take Lilly Roots, Daffie Roots, White brier Rootes; of each alike quantity, and having dryed them, beat them also into fine powder, and mixe them with the first: then with a Razor shave that part of your horse where you would have your Starre: and then with this powder rubbe it so vehemently, that you scarce leave any skinne on; then take a good quantity of hony-suckle flowers and alike quantity of honey, and the water wherin a moule

Moule hath been sodden ; and then distill them into a water, and with that water wash the fore place the space of three daies together, and keepe the Wind from it, and you shall presently see the white haire to grow; for this Receipt hath beene often very well approved.

There be other Farriers which take a Crab, and roast it, and being fiery hot, bind it to that part which you would have white, and it will scald away the old haire, and the next haire that groweth will be white. Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place, to take the juyce of sharp Onions or Leekes, and to bath the place very much therewith : then to take Barley bread, as fire hot as it commeth from the Oven, and clap it to the shaven place, suffering it to lye so till it be cold: and then after annoynt it with hony, and the White haire will come. Other Farriers use to annoynt the shaven place with the grease of a Mouldy-warpe sodden, and that will bring the white haire. Other Farriers use after they have shaved it, to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broth wherein a Mouldy-warpe and some swines grease hath bin sodden.

Other Farriers use to boyle a Mouldy-warpe in salt Water for three days together, or else in strong lye, and ever as one liquor consumeth, to supply it with another; then with this Decoction being warme, annoynt the shaved place, and it will bring white hairs suddenly. Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goate, and rub the shaved place therewith, and it will bring white hairs also.

Other



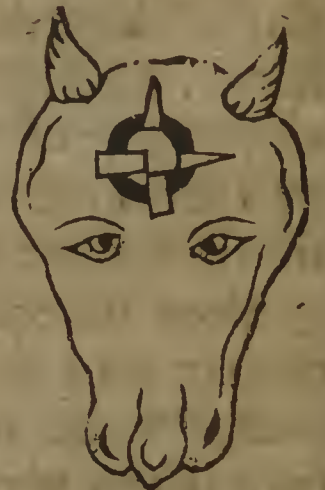
Other Farriers take Sheeps Milke, and boyle it, and in that wet a linnen cloth, and being very hot lay it to, renewing it untill you may rub off the haire with your finger, this done, apply the milke to it twice a day luke warme, till the haire do come againe, which without all question will be white.

Other Farriers take the roots of Wilde Cowcumbers, and twice as much Nitrum mingled with Oyle and hony, or else adde to your Cow-cumbers Salnitrum beaten, and hony, and annoynt the shaven place therewith and it will bring white haire:

Other Farriers use to take a piece of a brick-bat, and with it gently to rub and chafe the place, till by the continuance therof, you have rubbed away both the haire and the skinne, so broad as you would have the Star, and then after to annoynt it with hony, untill the haire come againe: Or else to roast a Colewort stalk like a warden, or an Edge, untill it be stone hard: and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the horses fore-head, and it will scald off the haire, then to annoynt it with hony till the haire come againe.

Now to conclude, and to shew you the most perfect and absolute experiment, which I have ever found to be most infallible, and it is thus: You shall take a very fine, sharpe, long bodkin, made for the same purpose, and thrust it up betwixt the skin and the bone upwards, so long as you would have the Star; and in thrusting it up, you shall hollow the skinne from the bone the bignesse that you would have the Star: this done, you shall take a peece of Lead, made in the true shape of your bodkin,  
and

and drawing out the Bodkin, thrust in the lead into the same holes; then you shall thrust the Bodkin cross-wise the forehead underneath the lead; and then thrusting in such another peece of lead, you shall see it in the Horses face to present this figure, which being done, you shall take a very strong packethreed, and putting it underneath all the foure ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all straightnesse, you shall gather all the hollow skinne together on a purse, folding the pack-threed ofte and ofte about, and still straighter and straighter, so that you shall see it then to present unto you this figure: this done, you shall let it rest at least the space of eight & forty houres, in which time the skin will be, as it were, mortified: then may you unlose the packethreed, and draw forth the leaden pinne, and with your hand close the hollow skinne to the Fore-head hard againe; and shortly after you shall see the hayre to fall away, and the next haire which cometh, will be white; and this experiment is most infallible.



Now there be some other Farriers which will not put in pinnes, nor use any packethreed, but only will

will slit the fore head, and open the skinne on both sides, and then put in either a Horne or a plate of lead as big as the Star, and so let it remaine till the skinne rot: Then take out the horne or Lead, and annoynt the place with hony, and the water of Mallowes sod, and it will bring white haire: And surely this experiment also is most infallible; but it maketh a foule sore and is somewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect.


Againe, I have seene a white Star also made by taking the guts of a Hen, or pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly to the horses face, having in readinesse some hollow round thing made for the same purpose, to keepe the guts, together upon the Horses face.

#### CHAP. CLXXXII.

*How to make a blacke star or white haire blacke.*

**I**F at any time you would have a desire to make upon a white horse a blacke Star, you shall take a scruple of inke, and foure scruples of the wood of Oliander beaten to powder; incorporate this in as much sheeps suet as will well suffice, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it will no doubt make any white haire blacke.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fearn roots, and sage sod in lye, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed black haire: but you must wash the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers use to take the rust of Iron, Gals 

N n

and

and Vitrioll, and stampe them with oyle: or else take Souter inke, Gals, and Rust, and beat them well together, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it will turne any white haire to blacke.

CHAP. CLXXXIII.

*To make a red Starre in a horses face.*

**I**F you desire to make in your horses face, or any other part a red Star, you shall take of Aquafortis one ounce, of Aquavitæ a penny worth, of silver to the value of eightene pence: put them into a glasse, and heat them well therein, and then annoynt the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the haire to be of a perfect red colour, onely it will endure no longer til then the casting of the haire: and therefore at every such time you must renew the haire againe, if you will have the Star to continue.

CHAP. CLXXXIIII.

*How to make haire to come very soone, very thicke, and very long.*

**I**F you would have haire to come very soone in any bare place, or to grow thicke where it is thin; or long where it is short, you shall take (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) the urine of a yong boy, and with it at first wash the place: after that, take lye made of unfleckt Lime, Ceruse and Lytergy, and with it wash the haire oft, and it will make it come soone, long, and thicke.

Other.

Other Farriers use to wash the place with Water wherein the roots of Althæa have bin sod : then after dry it gently with your hand, & it will increase haire much. Other Farriers use to wash the place with oyle mingled with the ashes of Nutshels burnt, or else Snailshels burnt, & it will increase haire also. Other Farriers take Agrimonie punded with Goates milke, and with it annoynt the place, or else oyle wherein Mouldiwarpe hath bin boyled, and annoynt the place with either of them, and it will increase haire very much. Other Farriers take the dung of Goates, Allome, hony, and the bloud of a Swine: mingle them all together, and stirr them till they be ready to boyle, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-seed bruised with hony water, and salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the roote of a white Lilly beaten and sod in oyle, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take the juyce of a long Onion, or else the juyce of Radishes, and annoynt the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oyle Olive, and Hony boyled together, and with it annoynt the bare place. Others take the foot of a Cauldron mixed with hony and oyle, and annoynt the place therewith.

There be other ancient Farriers which use this, and it is the best of all, they take greene Wal nut shels & burne them to powder, and then mixe it with Hony, oyle and Wine, and annoynt the place therewith, & it will increase haire wonderfully and very soone.

## CHAP. CLXXXV.

*To make his Coate smooth, sleek, and soft.*

**I**F you will make your horses Coate to be so smooth, sleek, soft, and shining, you shall with sufficient store of cloath keepe him warme at the heart; the least inward cold will make the haire stare: then you shall make him sweate oft: for that will raise up the dust and filth, which makes his coate foule and hard: then you shall, when the horse is in his greatest sweat, with an old sword blade turning the edge towards his haire, scrape, or as it were curry away all the white foame, sweate, and filth which shall be raised up, and that will lay his coate even, and make it smooth: And lastly, you shall when you let him bloud, rub him all over with his owne blood, and so let it remaine two or three days, and then curry and dresse him well, and this will make his coate shine like glasse.

## CHAP. CLXXXVI.

*How to take off haire in any part of a horse.*

**I**F you will at any time take off the haire from any part of a horse, you shall dissolve in water, (according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unfleckt lime: and then boyle it till a quarter be consumed, then adde to it an ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a plaister thereof to any part of the horse, and it will in very few houres bring all the haire away.

There.

There be other ancient Farriers which boyle in running water Rust and Orpiment, and with it being very hot wash the place, and it will soone bring the haire away.

## CHAP. CLXXXII.

*How to cast and over-throw a Horse.*

**V**Vhensoever you intend to cast or over-throw your horse, after you have brought him into a convenient place: as namely, either upon some greene swarth, or upon some Dung-hill, or in some Barne upon good store of soft straw, you shall take and double a long rope, and cast a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his necke and the double rope betwixt his fore-legs, and about his hinder pastornes, underneath his fetlock, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his neck, & draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends fast, and hold downe his head, under which alwaies you must be sure to have good store of straw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your horse on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder legs, that he may not strike, take up his contrary fore-leg; and when you do brand your horse, see that the Iron be red hot, and that the haire be both seared quite away, and the flesh scorched in every place before you let him goe, and so you shall be sure to lose no labour.

## CHAP. CLXXXVIII.

*How to know the age of a horse.*

**T**He age of every horse is knowne ; either by his Teeth, by his hoofes, or by his tayle.

It is knowne by his teeth ; at two yeares old hee changeth the foure fore-most teeth in his head, at three yeares old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparant foales teeth but two of each side, above and below : at foure yeares old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foales teeth but one on each side, both above and below ; at five yeares old hee hath never a foales tooth before, but then he changeth his tushes on each side : at fixe yeares old hee putteth up his tushes, neere about which you shall see apparantly growing a little circle of new and young flesh : besides, the tush will be white, small, short and sharpe : at seaven yeares old, the two out-most teeth of his neather chappe on both sides will be hollow, with a little blacke speck in them : And at eight yeares old, then all his teeth will be full, smooth, and plaine, the blacke specke being cleane gone, and his tushes will be somewhat yellow, without any circles of young flesh : At nine yeares old, his fore-most teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foule, and his tushes will be blunt : At ten yeares old, in the inside of his upper Tushes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers end, which till that age you shall ever most perfectly



perfectly feele ; besides, the Temples of his head will beginne to be hollow and crooked ; At eleven years of age his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, blacke and foule ; onely he will cut even, and his teeth will stand directly opposite one against another, at twelve yeares old his teeth will be long, yellow, blacke, and foule, but then his upper teeth will over-reach and hang over his neather teeth ; at thirteene yeares his tusshes will be worne close to his chap, if he be a much ridden horse, otherwise they will be blacke, foule, and long like the fangs of a boare.

If a horses hooves be rugged, and as it were seamed, one seam over another ; if they be dry, full, and crusty, it is a signe of a very old age ; as on the contrary part, a smooth, moyst, hollow, and well sounding hoofe is a signe of yong years.

If you take your horse with your finger and your thumbe by the sterne of the tayle, close at the setting on by his buttocke, and feeling there hard ; if you feele betwixt your finger and your thumbe of each side his tayle, a joynt sticke out more then any other joynt, by the bignesse of a hazell Nut, then you may presume, the horse is under ten years old ; but if his joynts be all plaine, and no such thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at least thirteene. If a horses eyes be round, full, and starting from his head, if the pits over his eyes be filled, smooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinacles either about his brow or under his eyes, then the horse is young : if otherwise you see the contrary Characters, it is a signe of old age. If you take up a horses skinne on any

part of his body, betwixt your finger & your thumb, and plucke it from the flesh : then letting it goe againe, if it suddainely returne to the place from whence it came, and be smooth and plaine without wrinkle, then the horse is young, and full of strength: but if being pulled up he stand, and not returne to his former place, then be assured he is very old and exceedingly wasted.

Lastly, if a horse that is of any darke colour shall grow griffell onely about his Eye-browes, or underneath his mane, it is then an infallible signe of most extreame old age : and thus much touching a horses age.

#### CHAP. CLXXXIX.

*How to make an old horse seeme young.*

**T**AKE a small crooked Iron, no bigger then a Wheate Corne, and having made it red hot, burne a little blacke hole in the toppes of the two outmost teeth of each side the neather chappe before, next to the rushes, and then with an aule blade pricke it, and make the shell fine and thin: then with a sharpe scraping Iron make all his teeth white and cleane: this done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the horses eyes which are shrunke downe, make a little hole onely but through the skinne, and then raising it up put in a quill that is very small ; as the quill of a Raven, or such like: and then blow the skin full of winde till all the hollownesse be filled up, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while

while on the hole, and the wind will stay in, and the horses countenance will be as if he were but six yeares old at the most.

## CHAP. CXC.

*How to make a horse that he shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.*

**I**F either when you are in service in the Warres, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion you would not have your horses to neigh, or make a noyse, you shall take a list of woollen cloath, and tye it fast in many folds about the midst of your horses tongue, and beleve it, as long as the tongue is so tyed, so long the horse can by no means neigh, or make any extraordinary noise with his voice, as hath bin often tryed and approved of.

## CHAP. CXCI.

*How to make a horse exceeding quicke and nimble of the spurre.*

**I**F your horse be either dull of the spur through his naturall inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you shall first shave him the breadth of a saucer on both sides, just in the spurring place, on both sides the veine, then with a Launcet make sixe issues, or small orifices on both sides; then raising the skinne from the flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt salt, which will make the sore to rankle.

In

In this sort you shall keepe it three days, and by no meanes ride the horse : the third day being ended, you shall set a child on his backe with spurs, and make him spurre the horse in the sore place : which done, you shall wash the place with pisse, Salt, and Nettles sodden well together, and this will make his sides smart so extreemly, that he will never abide the spur after.

Now you shall let him stand after his washing three daies more, and then take halfe a pint of honey ; and with it anoynt his sides once a day till they be whole. Also rub his sides with the powder of glasse, and it will do the like.

#### CHAP. CXCII.

*How to make a horse that tires, or is restiffe, to goe forward.*

**I**F your Horse (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtinesse of his nature, or dulnesse of spirit, be either so restiffe, or so tyred, that he will not goe forward a foote, but standeth stocke still: You shall then make a running suickle of a good small cord, and put it about his coddles and stones, in such sort that it may not slip : then you shall draw the rest of the cord betweene the girthes & the horses body, and bringing it up just betweene the horses fore-leggs, be sure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you sit in the saddle, then ride the horse forward, and when hee beginneth to grow restiffe, or to stand still, then plucke the cord, and crampe him by the stones, and you shall see that immediately hee will goe forward: And in this same manner you shall use him for

at

at least a fortnight together, and it will cleane take away that evill quality.

## CHAP. CXCIII.

*Other most excellent and approved wayes to  
preserve a horse from tyring, never  
disclosed till now.*

**I**F your Horse either through violence of labour, distemperature of body, or naughtinesse of nature happen to tyre under you, or travell not with that spirit you desire, then when you come to a baiting place alight, and set up your horse warme, but doe not walke him : then after he hath bin well rubbed, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto halfe an ounce of the fine searst powder of Elicampaine, and brew them together, then give it the horse with an horne, which done tye his head to the racke, for you need not care for provender till night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him oats or bread, or both in plentifull manner, and being ready to take his backe, give him the former quantity of Ale and Elicampaine as aforesaid, and doubtlesse you shall find him to travell with great courage and spirit, as hath bin approved.

Also if you take a bunch of Penny-royall and tye it to the mouth of your bit or snaffe, you shall finde it very comfortable, and it will cause your horse to travell lustily.

Againe, if you take of the best Tobacco, and dry it in the Sunne in a glasse close stopt, then pund it  
very

ry small, and mixe it with an equall quantity of the Cockle-shells, then with the oyle of Dill, and the oyle of Cloves make the powder into a paste, then make pretty round bals thereof as big as Wal-nuts, and dry them in the shadow in the Dog-daies, then keepe them close in a Gally pot, and give them as pills in the time of necessity: that is to say, a ball at a time, whensoever your horse shall faile in travel: And this doth not onely helpe tyring, but also takes away any cold whatsoever.

☞ Lastly, if your horse notwithstanding for all this doe happen at any time to tyre, then presently take off his saddle, and with the hearb Arsmart rubb his backe all over very hard, then laying Arsmart also under the saddle, so ride him gently at the first, and if there be any life in him, it will make him goe, as it hath beene made prooffe of.

### CHAP. CXCIIII.

*How to make a horse to follow his Master, and finde him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.*

**I**F you will have your horse to have such a violent love towards you, that he shall not onely follow you up and downe, but also labour to find you out, and owne you as soone as he hath found you: you shall then take a pound of Oat-meale, and put there-to a quarter of a pound of hony, and halfe a pound of Lunarce; and then make a Cake thereof, and put it

it in your bosome next unto your naked skinne: then runne or labour your selfe up and downe untill you sweate, then rub all your sweat upon your cake; this done, keepe your horse fasting a day and a night, and then give him the cake to eate, which as soone as he hath eaten you shall turne him loose, and he will not onely most eagerly follow you, but also hunt and seeke you out when he hath lost, or doth misse you; and though you be environed with never so many, yet he will finde you out, and know you; and you shall not faile but every time that he commeth unto you, you shall spet in his mouth, and annoynt his tongue with you spittle: And thus doing he will never forsake you.

### CHAP. CXCIV.

*The nature and speciall qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.*

A.

**A** *Brotonum*, which we call in English Southerne-wort is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the pipes of the body, and is good for short-winde.

*Absinthium*, which we call Worme-wood, is hot in the first degree, and dry in the second; it cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for the stomacke.

*Aceto*, which we call Vineger, especially if it be of Wine is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the first, and dry in the third degree.

*Agaricum* is hot in the first, and dry in the second.

second degree : it expelleth humours, purgeth all fleame and choler, and is good for the liver and kidneys.

*Allium*, which we call Garlicke, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evill humours.

*Agrecum*, which we call Cresses, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it burneth, draweth, and resolveth, and is exceeding good for scurfe, or wild scabs, or for the lungs.

*Agripa* is a knowne Vnguent that is good against all tumours.

*Allome*, called commonly *Roch-Allome*, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is good for cankers.

*Alder*, or *Elder* tree is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and fleame, and healeth wounds.

*Alloes* is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree it cleanseth and dissolveth, and also comforteth the vitall parts.

*Altheo*, which wee call white *Mallows*, is hot and dry: it loofeth and scattereth humours, warmeth and moysteneth very much.

*Aldmonds* is hot and moyst in the first Degree : it provoketh Vrine, and is very good for the Lungs or Liver.

*Ambrosia*, which wee call *Woo-sage*, represseth, driveth backe, and bindeth humours.

*Ammoniacum* is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, it softneth and dissolveth humours.

*Anetum*, which we call *Dill*, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it ripeneth crude humours, and expelleth heate.



*Anise-seedes* is hot and dry in the third Degree, expelleth cold, and dissolveth humours, and provoketh urine.

*Antimonium*, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

*Appio*, which wee call *Smallage* or *Parsley*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree: it ripeneth, cleanseth, openeth, and provoketh urine.

*Aristolochia*, which we call *Birth-wort* or *Hart-wort*, is hot and cleanseth: but if it be *Rotanda*, then it is so much stronger, being hot and dry in the fourth degree: it draweth and purgeth thinne water and fleame, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good against all manner of poyson whatsoever, or biting of any venemous beasts.

*Armoniacke* both dryeth, cooleth, softneth, and draweth.

*Artemisia*, which we call great *Tansy*, or *Mugwort*, is hot in the second, and dry in the third degree: it is very good for Wormes, and swellings in the sinews.

*Arsnicke* of both kinds is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it bindeth, eateth and fretteth, being a very strong Corrosive.

*Assafetida* is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the first degree, it cleanseth evill humours.

*Asphaltum* is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*: it is hot and dry, and comforteth any swelling.

*Assento* is hot in the first, & dry in the second degree: it cleanseth and dryeth, and is good for to comfort the stomacke.

*Assungia*, which we call the soft or fresh grease, is hot.

hot and moyſt in the firſt degree : It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any wound, impoſtume, or Ulcer.

*Avena*, which we call commonly Oates, are naturally dry : they doe dry, bind, cleanſe, and comfort all the inward parts, and are the onely principall ſimple which doth naturally agree with the compoſition of a horſes body ; and therefore the Oyle or the quietneſſe of them is the only abſolute and perfect medicine that can be adminiſtred for any inward ſickneſſe, as experience will approve and make perfect.

*Avellanne*, which wee call the aſhes of Nut-ſhells burnt, are hot and dry, and doe ſkin or ſtop the fluxe of matter.

## B

*Bay-berries* are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rhumes, or ſhortneſſe of wind, eſpecially for any diſeaſe in the Lungs : it is good againſt poyſon, Conſumptions, ſhort breath, fleame, hardneſſe of hearing, helps tyring, cramps, Scurvy, the ſtone, ſtoppings of the Liver, cures the yellowes and dropſie.

*Balaſamum* is hot and dry in the ſecond degree : it cleanſeth, draweth and comforteth.

*Bdelium* is a gum that is hot and dry ; it ſofteneth, and draweth away moyſture, and is excellent againſt all hard ſwellings whatſoever.

*Bertonium* or *Bettonium*, which we call Doggeſtone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the firſt degree: it purgeth and cleanſeth all evill humours.

*Biacca* is cold and dry in the second Degree: it clo-  
seth things opened, it softens hardnesse, filleth places  
empty, and doth extenuate all excretions.

*Bittorie*, which wee call Beets, is cold and moyst, and  
cleanseth ulcers.

*Bitumen* is a kinde of Brimstone, or fatnesse from  
the sea, it is hot and dry in the second degree, and is  
comfortable against any swelling.

*Bottiro* is hot in the first, and moist in the second  
degree, and it ripeneth impostumes.

*Bolearmonia* is a certaine earth which is cold and  
dry, which bindeth and driveth backe evill humours,  
and is also an excellent Defensative against fluxes of  
bloud.

*Brancursin* is a wonderfull great softner and mol-  
lifier.

*Brasia*, which wee call Cole-worts, is very dry,  
it doth conglutinate Wounds, it healeth ulcers and  
tumours, it holdeth the seede, and killeth evill hu-  
mours.

*Brotano*, which is the same that *Abrotonum* is, looke  
there.

*Brusco*, which wee call Butchers Broome, or knee-  
holm, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first;  
it provokes urine.

*Briony*, of these there are two kinds, the White  
and blacke, but the white is more effectuell; the root  
of it is hot and dry in the second degree: it clean-  
seth and ripeneth, and is good for all old Diseases, it  
also dryeth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of  
hardnesse.

## C

*Calafonia* or *Colofonia* ; doth incarnate ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are separated.

*Calaminto*, which wee call *Wilde penny-royall*, or *Wilde Mint*, of which that which growes on the Mountaines is the best, is hot and dry in the third Degree, doth resolute tumours, and draweth away humours.

*Calcina viva*, which wee call *unfleckt Lime*, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it adusteth, dryeth and corrodeeth.

*Camomila*, which we call *Camomile*, is hot and dry in the first degree : it mollifieth and dissolveth all griefes, and is good especially for the Liver.

*Camedros*, which wee call *Germander*, is hot and dry in the third degree ; and is good against all moyst colds.

*Camphopa* is a kind of a Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree ; it preserveth the body from putrefaction, and bindeth humours.

*Canabis* which wee call *Hempe*, is hot, the seede wherof driveth away extraordinary colds : it ripeneth and dissolveth humours, and mollifieth and drieth inflammations.

*Ciramon* is hot and dry in the third degree ; and is comfortable in all inward sicknesses.

*Canna* which wee call *Reedes*, especially the hedge Reed, draweth out prickles, if you lay the Roots to with the knobs.

*Cantharides* are certaine flies, which are hot and dry in the third degree ; they will rayse blisters in the sound parts.

*Capilli Venere*, which wee call maidens haire, is dry and bindeth loose humours.

*Cardimonium* is hot, it extenuateth humours, and being mixt with vineger killeth scabs.

*Cloves* are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

*Carromaies* are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth Wind, and cleanseth evill humours.

*Cassia* is hot and moyst in the first degree, it expelleth Wind, dissolveth humours, and purgeth the stomacke of choler and fleame.

*Castoreum* is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

*Cabbage* is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree, it cleanseth and ripeneth humours.

*Cenere* which we call Ashes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanseth mightily.

*Centuria* which we call Wilde running *Bettony*, smelling like *Marioram*, is hot and dry in the third degree, it bindeth Wounds and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the Wormes, old sores and Wounds, and is commonly called Centuary.

*Cepe* which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: it doeth cleanse corruptions, and ripens swellings.

*Cervill* is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

*Cerusa* is a white oyntment made of oyle and white Lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: and for the effects it hath all those which *Braccha* hath.

*Cericallo*: see *Sercocollo*.

*Chelidertum* which we call *Seladine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth all putrifactive

humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellows or jaundies.

*Cicuta* which we call Hemlocke, is cold in the fourth degree, it nummeth and astonieth.

*Cicoria*, which we call Succory, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

*Comin* is hot in the third degree, and hot in the second: it mollifieth and ripeneth.

*Cipolle*, which is Leek, or as we call them, chives, see *Capa*.

*Cinabar*, or *Sanguis draconis*, or as we call it *Vermilion*, is a certaine mettles drawn from quicke sulphure, and quick-silver, it dryeth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth, and comforteth ulcers.

*Cito* or *Cisto*, is dry in the second Degree, and bindeth much.

*Citrons*, or *Cithrons*, are cold and moyst in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

*Colloquintida*, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth onely.

*Colofonia*, which we commonly call earth-pitch, or Greeke pitch, is hot and dry in the third degree: it conglutinateth and gathereth together. See *Pece Grace*.

*Cocameri*, see *Cucumery*.

*Consolida*, which we call Camphery, is cold: it conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against ruptures.

*Costro*, or *Cosso*, being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

*Costus*, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second Degree: and it raiseth up wormes, and is

that which wee call Hearbe *Mary*, or the roote of *Angelica*.

*Corno di cervo*, which we call Harts horn, is dry, yet it strengtheneth very much, and expelleth poyson.

*Crocum*, which we call Saffron, is hot in the second, & dry in the first degree: it bindeth, comforteth, and resolveth impostumes.

*Cucumeri silvaggi* is hot & dry in the third degree: it dissolveth, softneth, & purgeth fleame.

*Cucumeri elaterium* is cold and moyst in the second degree, it cleanseth much, and is made of the juyce of Wilde Cowcumbers.

## D

*Dates* are hot and moyst in the second degree: they do resolve and disperse things knit together.

*Diacatholicon*, purgeth all offensive humours which offend the body whatsoever.

*Diaphinicon*, or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, & comforteth all griefes of the belly which are begot by crude humours, springing from Cholickes, or such like paines.

*Dialtea* or *Dialthea*, is an oyntment made of Holly-hoxe, or Sea mallows: it warmeth and moistneth.

*Dragonwort*, is hot & dry, and bindeth much.

## E

*Ebuli* which we call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree: it dryeth and driveth out Water, & expelleth Choler and thin fleame, see *Sambuchus*.

*Edera terrestris*, which we call ground Ivy, see *Hedera*

*Elatrium*, see *Cucumeris*

*Elleboro*, which we call neesing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and blacke; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Eruca*, which we call rocket, and of which the wild is the best; the seeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth urine, Wormes and water.

*Elusa*, which is a hearb like sponge, is hot in the fourth degree, & dryeth & cleanseth exceedingly, and of some is called wolfes milke.

*Euforbium* is a gumme that is hot in the fourth degree: it dryeth, purgeth, cleanseth, and exulcerateth much.

*Excrusion* is that which we call *Oxiration*, is a certaine composition or mixture made of *Aceto* & water, and is good to allay swellings and tumours.

## F

*Faba*, which we call a Beane, is cold & dry, and it cleanseth, & dissolveth very much.

*Farina*, which we call branne, is hot & dry in the first degree and dissolveth very much.

*Fearne* is dry and binding, but the root is hot and cleansing, and killeth wormes.

*Felle*, which we call Gall, is hot & dry, and it cleansing & mundifieth.

*Ferugo*, which we call the rust of Iron, is hot and dry in the second degree, it comforteth & restraineth evill humours.



*Ficiaridi*, which we call dry figs, are hot and dry in the second degree: they ripen tumours, soften & consume hardnesse, & are good for purficknesse, coughes, and diseases of the lungs.

*Filomon'ano*, which we call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to hearbs, winding about them likethreeds: it openeth the liver and milt, and purgeth all fleame and choler.

*Filonio* is a composition, which will astonish or benumbe any part or member.

*Fennell* is hot in the third, & dry in the first degree: it doth dissolve all manner of grosse humours, and is good for the liver or lungs.

*Fuligo*, which we call soote, is hot and dry, and it dryeth marvelously, and so doth also sootes whatsoever.

## G

*Galanga*, which we call Galingale, is hot and dry in the third degree: it easeth the stomack of all griefes which proceed from cold causes: it strengtheneth the braine, and comforteth the senses.

*Galbanum* is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: it softneth, stoppeth, and draweth away evill humours, and is good against cold.

*Galla*, which we call Galles, or a light fruit of Okes, are hot and piercing.

*Garrifilata*, which we call hearb Bennet, is hot and dry in the second degree.

*Garofoli*, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third degree, & are very comfortable for inward sicknesse.

- *Ginger* is hot, and is excellent to preserve heate in the inward parts.

*Genista* or *Ginestra*, which wee call Broome, is hot and dry in the third degree: it killeth Wormes, and scoureth much.

*Gentian*, especially the Roote, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanse all evill humours, and it is good for the Liver and stomacke, and for Wounds and sores.

*Gillo*, which we call Lillies, softneth sinewes, and are good for wounds and sores.

*Gramen*, which is any manner of graine or pulse, is colde and drye, except Wheate, and that is temperately hot and moyst: they doe incarnate and mundifie.

*Grasso*, which is any manner of fat, is hot and moyst, and doth ripen and soften.

## H

*Harundinis cortex*, which we call Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Hedera*, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener.

*Helxine*, which we call Pellitory of the wall, cleanseth and bindeth, and is good for any old cough, or for any inflammations.

*Hyssoppo*, which we call Hyssope, there is both wilde, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the best; it is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth and warmeth, it is good for inflammations of the Lungs, old coughes, pozes, Rhumes, and short winde.

*Hordeum*

*Hordeum*, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the first degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

## I

*Incense*, which we call Frankinsence, it dryeth and incarnateth: see *Olibanum*.

*Ipericon*, which we call Saint Johns wort expelleth moysture, and healeth burnings.

*Irios Florentia*, which we call Flower-de-luce, especially the roote, it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Iride Illyrica*: see *Helpine*.

*Iris* is a root that is hot and dry: it cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against colds, and purgeth ulcers.

*Iasquiani*, which we call Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree: it astonieth and benumbeth.

*Iuniper* is hot and dry in the third degree, the berries are good for the Stomacke, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneys, cureth all coughes, gripings, and Windynesse of the belly, and provoketh urine, is good against all venome, the infection of the plague, and kils Wormes.

## L

*Ligustum*, which we call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: it expelleth Winde, especially the seede and Roote.

*Lapathum*, which we call a Dock, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

*Lauri*, which we call Laurell, or bayes, are hot and

and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

*Lentisco* is a gum that is like Masticke; it is dry in the second degree, and moderately bindeth: it is bitter in taste, and ever greene.

*Lixosa*, which wee call flaxe or Line, the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

*Lee* is hot and dry in the fourth degree: it is very adustine, cleansing and piercing.

*Lithargirto*, of which there are two kindes, the one of the colour of gold, the other of silver: it is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up; and of these two, that which is like gold is the best.

*Lolium*, which wee call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolveth much.

*Lumache*, which we call house-snails without shels do conglutinate very much.

M

*Malva* is cold and moyst, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth paine.

*Malva viscus* is very dry, it softneth, looseth, and mitigateth.

*Mace* is dry in the third degree, without heate and onely bindeth.

*Manna* is of equall temper, hot and dry, it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

*Mariaton* or *Martiaton*, is a hot unguent against all cold humours: it helpeth the grieffe of sinewes, purgeth cold watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

*Marrochio*, which we call Hore-hound, of which

there are two kinds, the white and the blacke; but the white is the better: it is hot in the second, & dry in the third degree, it helpeth obstructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, & is good against colds or for sores.

*Masticke* is hot in the first, & dry in the second degree: it draweth and dryeth, bindeth & softneth, & is good against old cold.

*Medulia*, which we call Marrow, of what kinde soever, is cold & moist, & mollifieth Vlcers; now the best Marrow is that of a Hart, or old Stagge, the next that of a Calfe, the next that of a sheepe, & the last that of a Goate.

*Mel*, which wee commoly call Honey, is hot and dry in the second degree; it cleanseth the stomacke and entrailles, stoppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Melissa*, which we call Balme, is hot in the second, & dry in the first degree; it cleanseth & conglutinateth.

*Mentha*, which wee call Mintes, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree, of which the Wilde Minte is the best, it killeth Wormes, it bindeth, it dissolveth, and is good for the stomacke, or a cold liver.

*Minino*, which wee call red lead, is cold and dry, and good against swellings.

*Myrrhe* or *Myrrha*, is a soveraigne Gumme; it is hot and dry in the second degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth, & cleanseth wounds, is good against all colds, killeth wormes, and helpeth the purficke: for though it doth cleanse much, yet  
it

it doth not exasperate the Arteries; also it doth incarnate.

*Morcofita* or *Marcafita*, is hot and dry, it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humours.

*Mertilia* is the fruit of the Myrtill tree, it is dry in the third degree, it doth bind good; and loosen evill humours.

*Morcas*, which wee call the Mulbery, the unripe is cold and dry, in the second degree: the barke, but chiefly the roote, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it doth cleanse, purge and bind, the roote thereof killeth Wormes, and the gum thereof doth loosen, and the juyce of the berry doth heale cankers, or sore mouths.

*Narcissi radix* which we call the Roote of a white Daffodil, or else Prim-rose pearlesse, is dry, it cleanseth and draweth, & healeth wounds.

*Nardi radix*, which we call Setwall, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree, it bindeth, & *Spica Nardi* provoketh urine.

*Nasturtium* is hot & dry: in the fourth Degree, it burneth, it draweth & melteth, & killeth wormes, see *Agrecum*, which wee call Cresses.

*Nigilla*, which we call Git, is hot and dry in the third Degree, it stayeth Winde, killeth Wormes, nad; looseneth, yet to give too great a quantity, is dangerous.

*Nitrum* is of the same nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O

*Olibanum* is a gum, it is hot and dry in the second degree, it warmeth, bindeth, closeth wounds, and incarnateth.

*Oyle of Olives* is of a very temperat nature, and changeth his qualities according to the Nature of the simples which are mixt with him.

*Opium* is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a liquor made of poppy dryed and mixt with Saffron, it doth astonish and provoke sleepe.

*Opoponax* is a gumme that is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it softneth and stayeth humours; it is good against all colds: see *Papaver*, *Galbanum*, *Rdelium*, or *Sagarenum*.

*Orpimento* is a kind of Mettall, of which the artificiall is called Arsnicke, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second, it bindeth, corrodeeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a corrosive.

*Origono*, which we call wild Marioram, or Penyriall, is hot and dry in the third degree; it taketh away stoppings, and is good for coughes,

*Orabus*, which we call fitches, are hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree, they do open and cleanse.

*Orzo*, which we call Barley, is cold and dry in the first degree; it ripeneth and cleanseth.

*Ortica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and drye: they are biting, and wholesome for the lungs, or for fores.

*Oria*, which we call Egges, the white is cold, and the yolke is hot, and doth incarnate.

## P

*Panacea* is that Hearbe whose fruite wee call *Opopanax*.

*Panico* is a graine which wee call Panicke, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

*Papaver*, which wee call poppy, the seedes thereof are White, and hot in the fourth degree: see *Opi-um*.

*Pastinache*, which wee call Parsnips are hot, and do provoke urine.

*Pece*, which wee commonly call pitch, is hot and dry in the second degree, draweth, dryeth and ripeneth.

*Pece liquida*, which we call Tarre, is hot and dry in the second degree, is good against colds, or evill humours gathered together in the breast, and draweth wounds.

*Pece Rasina*, which wee call Rosen, or pitch of Greece, it draweth, healeth, and incarnateth.

*Pece Rasina & liquida*, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

*Pepper* is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for all diseases of the breast or Lungs.

*Peaches* are cold and moyst in the second degree: they bind and stirre up worms.

*Petasites*, which we call Butter-burre, is dry in the third degree.

*Petrolium* is a certaine oyle made of Salt-peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the second Degree:



it healeth Wounds and comforteth weake members.

*Petroselinum*, which wee call Parsley, or stone Parsley, is, and especially his seede, hot and dry in the third degree: it stayes Winde, openeth, and provoketh urine.

*Philonium*, of which there are two kindes, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium persicum*, are excellent Compositions, and most comfortable after the losse of bloud.

*Polygonum* which we call Knot-grasse, is cold in the second degree, and keepeth backe humours.

*Plantago*, which wee call plantaine, is cold and dry in the third degree: it comforteth, dryeth, bindeth, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Porri*, which wee call Leekes, Scallions, or Onions, are hot and dry, and doe extenuate Obstruction, and raise and loosen all evill humours in the body.

*Buce* or *porrum*, is hot in the second degree, and is good for all cold watriſh stomackes.

*Pulegium*, which we call Penyryall, is hot and dry in the third degree: it doth vehemently dry in moisture, warmeth, ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs: see *Origano*.

*Iunicum Malum*, which wee call Pomegranat, is cold and dry: it bindeth, provoketh urine, and is good for the stomacke.

## R

*Rasano*, or *Raphanus* which wee call Radish, is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: they comfort, and are good for old colds; but especially they provoke urine.

*Resina*

*Resina* which wee call Rozen, is hot and dry in the second degree; it stoppeth, softeneth, cleanseth draweth, and purgeth wounds, and is good against cold causes.

*Resalgar*: see *Risigalla*.

*Rogoretio*, or *Rigolitio*, which wee call Licoras, is temperate in heate, and moistneth, and ripeneth, & is good for heate in the stomacke, or liver, and profitable against wounds.

*Risigallo* is a composition of Sulphure, Orpiment, and unsleckt lime; and is a most strong corrosive.

*Rosaflos*, which we call rose leaves, or rose cakes, are dry and binding.

*Rubea*, which we call Madder, is dry: it comforteth and incarnateth, the root thereof provoketh urine, and is good for the yellows.

*Ruberb* or *Rubarb*, is hot and dry in the second degree: it purgeth choler and fleame, and putteth away stoppings.

*Ruta* which wee call Rue, or hearb of grace, is hot and dry in the third degree: but the wilde Rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth: the garden Rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward inflammations, it ripeneth, and dryeth, and expelleth winde.

## S

*Savina*, which wee commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third degree: it openeth, dissolveth, dryeth mightily, and is most soveraigne against Wormes.

*Sacaro* is hot and moist, and is very comfortable.  
*Iagapenum*, See Serapino.

*Sagina*, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is only hot and drie.

*Salo*, which we call Salt, is hot and drie in the second degree, and it clenfeth.

*Salamora*, which we call Brine, or water and salt, is of the same nature that salt is.

*Sal-armoniack* is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and it clenfeth,

*Salee*, which we call Sallowes, or Willowes, it bindeth and drieth vehemently.

*Salgemma*, is a kind of Salt which is hot and drie, it clenfeth and mundifieth.

*Salnitro*, some use for this Salt-Peeter, it is hot and drie, and evaporateth: it comforteth sinnewes, and taketh away tiring or wearinesse.

*Salvia* which we call Sage, is hot and drie in the second degree, it clenfeth and bindeth, is good for wounds, or exculceration of the Lungs.

*Sambucus*, which we call Elder-tree, or Wallwoort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and drie in the first, it drieth, disgesteth, and conglutinateth,

*Sandolo*, which we call Sanders, are cold and dry in the second degree, and drive back humours.

*Sandolo Rosso*, or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red sand, or white-sand, are hot and drie, and bring on skin.

*Sanguis draconis*, see *Cinaber*, yet some take it for the red Dock, or red Patience, but it is not so.

*Sapone*, which we call sope, is hot, it draweth, mol-

lifieth, dryeth, clenfeth and purgeth

*Sassifrigia*, which we call Saxifrage, is hot dry and binding.

*Scabioso*, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the second degree; they doe regenerate, and are good for scabbes, for the Lungen, or for the soreness in the brest.

*Scamonicum*, which is the juyce of a root, is hot in the third degree: it digesteth and purgeth choler, but must never be given inwardly, unlesse it be corrected.

*Scariola*, which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

*Sarcocolla*, is a gum of the kind of *Euforbium*, it is hot and dry in the second degree, it clenfeth, incarnateth and comforteth wounds.

*Sea Onions* is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it ripeneth and expelleth humours, it hindereth putrifaction, and preserveth health.

*Semola*, which we call young Coleworts, are hot and dry in the first degree.

*Semper vive*, which we call Housleeke, and some call stone Croppe, is cold in the third, and dry in the second degree, it is good for burnings or frettings, or for inflammations of ulcers, it driveth back humours, cooleth and bindeth.

*Sevadolce*, is hot in the second, and dry in the first degree: it clenfeth and openeth.

*Serapino*, is a gum of *Ferula*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: it mollifieth, looseneth, and is good for colds.

*Serpillo*, which we call wild running Bittony, or  
Time,

Time, smelling like Marioram, is hot and dry in the third degree.

*Sinapi*, which we call Mustard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it draweth and resolveth, and is good for scurfes, for wild scabbs.

*Solatro*, which we call Night-shade, is cold in the third degree.

*Sulphur vive*, which we call Brimstone, is hot and dry in the third degree, it draweth, disperseth humours, and killeth wormes.

*Spelta*, which we call beere Barly, is a graine lesse then wheate, and shorter then Rye, but not so black, is coole and clenfing.

*Sparaci*, which we call Asparagus, is without any manifest heate or cold, and only cleanseth.

*Spiga* or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the first, and dry in the second degree; it clenfeth, and is good for the head, especially the conserve, which is very comfortable.

*Squille*, is that which we call the Sea onion: see Sea onion.

*Stecados*, which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

*Storax* or *Stirax*, is a sweet Gumme which is hot and dry, it correcteth, sofineth, and is good for coughes, or any sicknesse in the head.



## T.

**T**artarò, which we call Tartar, is the excrements of Wine, which stick to the Vessell; it is hot and drie in the third degree: and only clenseth.

*Tortaruch*, which we call Snailes with shells, are of the same nature that Snailes without shells are.

*Tasso barbarosso*, which we call Yew, is of nature poyson.

*Turpentine* is hot in the second, and drie in the first degree: it draweth, clenseth, skinneth, and comforteth.

*Thymum*, which we call Tyme, is hot and drie in the third degree: and expelleth fleam.

*Thuris Lacrime*, which we call Frankinsence, is hot in the second, and drie in the first degree; see *Olebanum*.

*Thuris cortex*, is drie in the second degree, and bindeth.

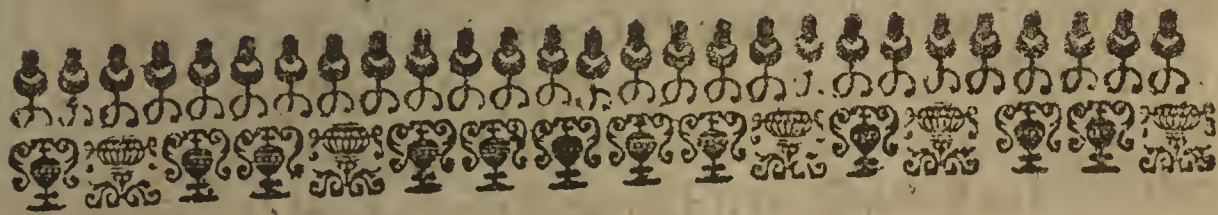
*Thuris succulis* is hot and drie in the third degree.

*Tihtimalis*, which we call Spurhe, or Milk-thistle, is hot and drie in the fourth degree; it clenseth and purgeth fleam and choler, and is good for old sores or fistulaes.

*Trifora magna* is a certain composition which will

will provoke sweate, helpeth grieffe in the stomacke, and taketh away all cold R humes.

*Tutia preparata* is a certaine Minerall that is cold in the first, and dry in the second degree, and is very good for sore eyes.



## V.

**V***Eratro* : see *Ellebor*.

*Verbena*, which we call *Vervin*, is hot and dry it comforteth and mundifieth.

*Verderame*, which we call *Verdigrease*, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a corrosive that eateth away dead flesh.

*Vermi*, which we call wormes, doe conglutinate and comforteth sinews.

*Verce* is hot and dry : see *Brasica*.

*Vetro*, which we call *Glasse*, is hot in the first, and dry in the second, and it cleanseth.

*Vinacea*, which we call the kernels of Grapes, are dry.

*Virga pastoris*, which we call *Wild Tassill*, is cold in the third, and dry in the first degree, it comforteth and bindeth.

*Vischio*, which we call *Lime*, is hot in the fourth

Degree : it dryeth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid stufte, it burneth and is Corrosive.

*Fitalia*, or *Viis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the roote; it clenfeth and killeth icabbs, it dryeth, it draweth, mollifieth and dissolveth.

*Vitelli* which we call the yolkes of any eggs, are hot, and do strengthen and incarnate.

*Vitrioll*, which we call Copperas is of two kindes, that is, *Vitriola Romanum*, which we call greene Copperas, and *Vitriola album*, which we call white Copperas, they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the stronger; they take away scurfes, and kill scabbes.

*Vitriola Caleanthum* is reckoned amongst mettalls, and is a kind of inkie earth: it dryeth and fretteth.

*Vitriola herba*, is an hearbe that groweth on the Wall, and is taken for *Pellitory* of the Wall: see *Helzin*.

*Urtica*, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and stop and clense humours, and are good for sores.

601, Geat Taylor Linth  
 roe Dord to the Board  
 ntry D. d. And and Grate & Littot  
 Morgate London

Zeferano,





## Z

**Z** *Eserano*, which we call Saffron, is hot in the first, and dry in the second Degree; it comforteth and expelleth all inward poyson, and incarnateth Wounds.

*Zebulus*, see *ziziphe*.

*Zeuonico*, which we call worme seed, is hot and dry

*Zenzera*, which we call Genger, is of the nature of Pepper, and hath the strength of long pepper; it maintaineth naturall heate, and is good for cold stomackes.

*Ziziphe* taketh away Coughes, and helpeth the shortnesse of breath.

*Zucche*, Which we call Gourds, are cold and moyst in the second degree, and it allayeth all manner of inflammations or hot swellings.



## CHAPTER

## CXCVI.

*Certaine principles, touching  
Simples.*

**Y**OU shall understand that touching simples, some are onely to ease paine, as Lin-seed, Camomile, soft grease, fuet of all sorts, or any other oyle that is hot in the first degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, the medicine is called Anodina or Lynogs.

There are other simples which are astonying, benumbing, or bringing a sleepe, as Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlocke, and such like, which are grosse and cold in the fourth degree, and whensoever any of these simples are compounded with their like: then the medicine is amongst Leaches, called *Narcotica*.

The

The third sort of simples are such as incarnate, or breed flesh, as Frankinsence, Flower, Saffron, yolkes of Eggs and such like, which are hot in the second Degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the medicine is called Sarcotica.

The fourth sort of simples are corroding, fretting or burning, as Arsnicke, Resigallo, Mercury, Lime, & such like, which are hot in the fourth Degree; and whensoever they are applyed simple, or compound, then the medicine is called Corrosive.

The fifth sort of simples are those which be called mollifying, and are foure in number: That is, Greene Mallowes, white Mallowes, violets, and Branck urfin.

The last sort of simples are those which are called Cordials, and are three in number: that is to say, Violets, and Buglosse of both kindes.

And thus much touching the nature, use, property and operation of simples.



## CHAP. CXCVII.

*Of weights and measures, and how to know  
them by their Characters.*

**A**LL be it I have in this Worke, set downe your Weights & Measures in such plaine English, that every one may understand them; yet for as much as the more curious doe set downe many excellent Recettes under obscure Characters, I thinke it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you finde any such, you may not be ignorant in the understanding of them.

Know then that the least of all weights is a graine, which is the weight either of a Barley corne, or of a Pepper corne, and his charecter is *G.* or *Gr.*

*Siliqua* is foure graines, and his character is *s.*

An English halfe-penny is five graines, and his character is *ob.*

A Scruple is tenne Graines, and his Character is *ʒ*

A Dram

A Dram is three scruples, or the eight part of an ounce, and his character is  $\mathfrak{z}$ .

A Romane penny is the same that a Dramme is, & his character is  $X$ .

An ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty foure scruples, and foure hundred and eighty graines, and his characters is  $\mathfrak{z}$ .

The character of halfe an ounce is  $\mathfrak{ss}$ .

A pound in medicinall Receipts is twelve ounces, and his character is  $\mathfrak{lb}$ .

The handfull is sixe ounces, and  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an ounce, and his character is  $M$ .

The character of as much as you can hold betwixt your fingers is  $R$ .

The character for a drop is *Gut* :

The character for three drops is *Gut*, *iiij*.

$\mathfrak{lb}\mathfrak{ss}$  is halfe a pound.

$\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ss}$  is halfe an ounce.

$\mathfrak{z}$  is halfe a dramme.

$\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ss}$  is halfe a scruple.

$\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{ss}$  is

$\bar{3} j \text{ } \text{ʒ}$  is an ounce and a halfe.

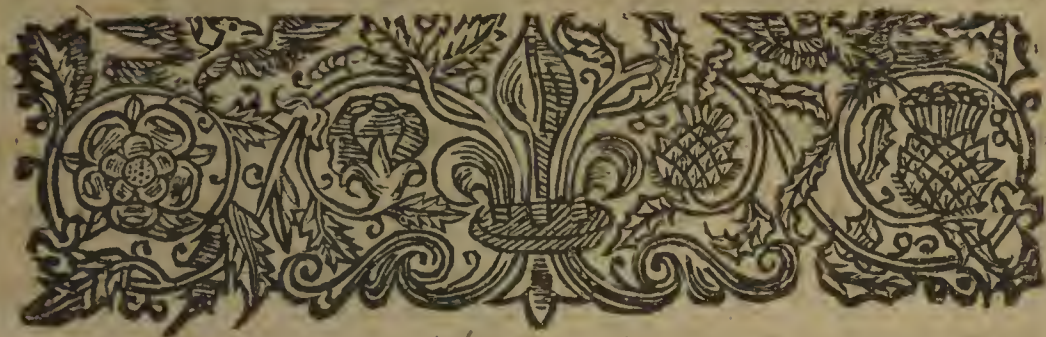
$\text{M j } \text{ʒ}$  is a handfull and a halfe.

$\text{P j}$  is halfe a handfull, which is three ounces and  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb of an ounce.

Ana or an, is alike, or of each alike.

And thus much touching weights and their true Characters.





CHAPTER  
CXXVIII.

The Farriers Instruments  
expounded, with their names  
and properties.

**T**He Figure 1. sheweth the Hammer  
which driveth in the naile. The figure  
2. the Pincers which breaketh off,  
clincheth, and draweth the naile. The fi-  
gure 3. the Butteris, which pareth and ope-  
neth the foot. The figure 4. the Rasp, or  
Rape, which maketh smooth the hoofe. The  
figure 5. the cutting knife, which taketh a-  
way the superfluous hoofe. The figure 6. the  
Fleam, with which he letteth blood in the  
Neck, or in the grosse places where the  
veine

veine is great : The figure 7. the Farriers Lancer which openeth small veines & thrids, where a strooke may not be used: The figure 8. the incision knife, to open impostumes and to cut away superfluous flesh: The figure 9. the cornet to take up veines: The figure 10. the drawing Cauterizing Iron to open and separate the flesh either sound or impostumed: The figure of 11. the round button Cauterizing iron to boare holes in the skin & swelled places: The figure 12, the Mullets to cleanse wounds: The figure 13. the Barnacles to pinch an horse by the nose or eares, to make him indure paine patiently: The figure 14. the Needle to stitch up Wounds; and the figure 15. the probe to search and finde out the depth of Wounds. And thus you have a full explanation of all the needfull instruments belonging to the skilfull Farrier.



The Farriers chiefe Instruments.



122





## The Postscript.



Ourteous Reader, having now with infinite labour and industry perfected and finished this my Masterpeece for the cure of Horses and Mares, wherein the physicall part of Horse-manship concerning those manifold inward diseases which are incident to Horses is clearely discovered, and the Chyrurgicall part concerning outward accidents is plainly opened and described; and having for the more absolute advancement of horsemanship, and to give satisfaction therein, made a particular speculation, and run ththrough every

Qq

part

---

*The Postscript.*

---

part, veine, bone, sinew and Artery of the Horses body, demonstrating not onely their number and place by figure, but also considering their disaffections and diseases which doe thereunto belong; and having also with much paine ( as a worke of this difficult nature requireth ) brought it to a full period, not onely giving you a few termes of Art concerning Horlemanship, but making an Anatomy from head to foot of all the integrall parts of a Horse, with their diseases inward and outward, and their physicall and chyrurgicall cures exactly prescribed and set downe, and have given you ocular demonstrations of the whole fabricke of the Horses body, so that as in a Map you may behold every small part, river, creeke or streame running up and downe within the superficies of the Earth, so I have likewise made and drawne divers pictures, setting out all the parts and parcells of a Horses body, and that they be plainely seene and considered, I have most lively delineated and figur'd out every part and vene in the Horse, where to finde  
it.

---

*The Postscript.*

---

it from head to foot ; I have also Anatomized the Horse in every bone , that you may perceive their conjunction and how they are joyned , and thereby judge of their dislocations and putting out of their places, and all this you shall at one view behold in the severall parts and figures which you shall finde in this booke. Therefore I would advile all Gentlemen and others, who being of a generous spirit cannot chuse but delight and take wonderfull pleasure in horses , to consider that for want of care and experience many excellent horses falling into slight and common diseases , have either utterly perished , or else been lamed and spoyled ; it will bee therefore a study worthy the thoughts of a generous Spirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward diseases of horses, in regard that a horse is a beast whose praises cannot bee sufficiently declared : The horse is commodious for common use , as pleasing Tillage, & transporting of carriages & burthens, and also for mens continuall occasions

---

*The Postscript.*

---

and daily Iourneyes ; in time of peace, when Princes did use to recreate themselves with Hunting Deere & other wild Beasts ; Horses were alwaies had in high estimation and honour, and those that would out-runne the Winde, and made the best speed after the Chase were most esteemed, so that there could be no pleasure in hunting, if they had not horses to carry them after their Game, and what a brave sight it is to see in a field an hundred or more hunting Horses riding and running this way or that way after the timorous Deere, or fearefull Hare : therefore the Horse, as he was made for industrious labour, so hee is fit to maintaine and procure the pleasures and delights of a Prince, or any Noble man.

And moreover in Warre, the courage and service of a horse is dayly now seene and too well knowne ; he will, as if he were animated by the sound of Drumms and Trumpets, presently rush into the Battel, & take delight to charge the Enemy, hee is all fire, and full of mettall and fury : and thus wee see that a  
horse

---

*The Postscript.*

---

horse is not onely convenient for daily occasions of the husband-man, of Travellers, and divers others, but in Princes Courts he is highly esteemed for Hunting, for Races, and other pastimes; and also in the Warres, his daily service is sufficiently knowne, being a Beast of a magnanimous and undaunted courage, so that the Horse is naturally made for profit and pleasure, for labour and delight; for peace and Warre; for Hunting, for Triumphs, and all gallant occasions.

It is pittie then that a brave Horse, well lim'd and spirited, falling sick of any inward disease, or outward accidentall infirmity, as Sprains, dislocation of bones, Spavins, and hundreds more, should be spoiled, in suffering the disease to grow on him untill it bee incurable, or in applying remedies unfit for the malady, whereby many a horse becomes maimed, and for want of cure utterly disabled for any service.

Therefore my advice and counsell is, (as I said before) that if any gentleman whatsoever, shall have their Horses either by out-

---

*The Postscript.*

---

ward accident, as sprains, pricking in the feet, and the like; or inward surfeits, Glanders, colds and heates by intemperate and extraordinary Riding fall sicke, or become through the aforesaid infirmities any waies disabled for service, they should not depend upon their owne experience or judgement, but should wisely consider with himselfe, and consult with the Farrier, reasoning together, and comparing their opinions concerning the Causes and Cures of such diseases as are incident to their Horses, that so by this meanes by the height of Discourse and reason they may come to a certaine and infallible knowledge of the horses diseases and infirmities, and having diligently searched out the causes thereof, they may know likewise to cure the same; for you shall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not book-learned, and therefore have no more knowledge then horses themselves, but are subject through their ignorance to runne into many grosse errors, so that through their negligence & aforesaid ignorance, mistaking  
the



---

## *The Postscript.*

---

the causes and cures of diseases, and in one word most grossely, for it is good to have experience both in the Theorick and practicke part of any Art and Science.

For another ( to my knowledge ) many good horses doe continually remaine lame and unfit for service, or else doe utterly perish for want of understanding their diseases, and the particular cures thereof. Therefore as wise Physitians doe consult together when they meet with a sick Patient, so I advice both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their judgements together, whereby the Beast may be saved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gaine credit, and their experience and knowledge in the many diseases of horses be much bettered.

Moreover, for the Readers greater benefit, all simples and compounds good for horses are Alphabetically here placed, and the conditions of them whether hot or cold, with their names and qualities are described. Also what Ounces, Drammes, and Scruples are to be given in any drinke. If Gentlemen bee

---

*The Postscript.*

---

unacquainted with these things, let them conferre with the Farriers, and so confirme their judgements by discourse. And so courteous Reader, I have left you my best Worke thus accomplished, and thus perfected, that I know in all the points belonging to the Cure of Horses it will give full satisfaction, if the Reader follow the advise of this Postscript.





THE  
TABLE OF  
The  
First Booke contain-  
ing all Cures  
Physicall.

Chapter.	Page.
<b>T</b> HE composition of horses bodies	1
2 Of Elements	2
3 Of Temperaments	8
4 Of Humours	10
5 Of Members	13
6 Of powers	15
7 Of actions or operations	16
Rr	8 Of

## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
8 Of Spirits	18
9 Of things naturall	20
10 Of complexions	25
11 Of inward sicknesses	28
12 Of signes of sicknesses	30
13 Of observations in Physicking	36
14 Of Urine and excrements	38
15 Of Fevers	42
16 The Quotidian	46
17 The Tertian	47
18 The Quartan	48
19 The continuall	49
20 The Hetique	50
21 The Autumn Fever	52
22 The Summer Fever	52
23 The Winter Fever	53
24 Fever by surfet	54
25 Fever pestilent	54
26 Of the plague	56
27 Fever accidentall	58
28 One generall approved cure for all Fevers	59
29 Diseases in the head	60
30 Of Head-ach	61
31 Of Frenzie	62
32 Of the sleeping evill	64
33 A harse taken	65
34 Of the Staggers	67
35 Of the falling-evill	70
36 Of the Night-mare	72
37 Of the Palsie	74
38 Of the generall cramp	76
	39 Of

## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
39 Of the cold	78
✠ 40 How to take away any cold	81
✠ 41 The best of all medicines for the cold	82
42 Of Hide-bound	82
43 Of the Glanders	85
✠ 44 Two certaine cures for the Glanders	91
45 Of the mourning of the Chine	92
✠ 46 A certaine approved medicine for the mourning of the Chine	95
47 Of the cough	96
48 Of the wet cough	98
49 Of the dry cough	100
✠ Two approved cures for any or cold cough	104
✠ 51 The best of medicines for any dry cough	105
52 Of broken Lungs	105
53 Of rotten Lungs	107
54 Of shortnesse of breath	108
55 Of broken winded	111
56 Of the Consumption	115
57 Consumption of the flesh	117
58 To make a horse fat	118
✠ 59 The mirrour and master of all medicines to fatten a Horse	122
60 Of the brest paine	124
61 Of the Anticor, or heart-sicknesse	125
62 Of tyred horses	128
63 Of loathing of meate.	133
64 Of casting out drink	135
65 Of glut of provender	136
66 Of tounding in the body	138
67 Of the hungry evill	141


## The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
68 Of inflammation in the Liver	142
69 Of obstructions in the Liver	144
70 Of consumption of the Liver	147
71 Of Diseases in the Gall	149
72 Diseases in the spleene	150
73 Of the Yellowes	152
74 Of the Dropfie	157
75 Of the Chollicke	157
76 Of the Belly-ake	161
77 Of Costivenesse	161
78 Of the Laxe	162
79 Of the bloody fluxe	166
80 Falling of the Fundament	168
81 Of Rots and Wormes	169
82 Of paine in the Kidneyes	174
83 Of the Strangury	176
84 Of the paine pisse	177
85 Of the stone	178
86 Of pissing bloud	181
87 Of the Colts evill	183
88 Of the mattering of the yard	184
89 Of the shedding of the seed	185
90 Falling of the yard	186
91 Barrennesse of Mares	187
92 Consumption in Mares	188
93 Rage of love in Mares	189
94 Of casting of foales	190
95 Of hardnesse in foaling	190
96 Of making Mares cast their foales	191
97 Drinking of horse-leaches	192
98 Eating of Hens dung	192
99 Of	

---

## The Table.

---

Chapter.	Page.
99 Of the suppository	193
100 Of Glisters	196
101 Of purgations	200
 102 An excellent and approved scouring	207
103 Of neezing or fumes	208
104 Of frictions and bathes	211
105 Generall drenches	213
106 To make Diapente	214
107 A famous drench and oyntment	215
108 Of the oyle of oates	216
109 Briefe observations, &c.	218
110 Principles in foales and horses	225
111 Observations in mares	226
112 Observations in buying a horse	228
113 Notes concerning some simples	230



R r 3

THE





THE TABLE OF THE  
second Booke containing all  
Cures Chirurgicall.

Chapter	Page.
<b>P</b> Roportions of members	235
2 Of the Veines	237
2 The Anatomy of Veines	239
3 Of the sinews	241
3 The Anatomy of sinews	243
4 Of all the Bones	244
4 The Anatomy of Bones	245
5 Of letting blood	246
6 Of outward sorrances	253
7 Of weeping eyes	256
8 Of blood-shotten eyes	258
9 Dimnesse of sight	259
10 A certaine and approved medicine for any blindnesse, &c.	260
11 Another to the same effect	261
12 Pearle, pin, or Web.	262
13 An infallible cure for any pin, pearle, or Web.	265
14 Of the Ham	266
15 Of Moone eyes.	267
16 Canker in the eye	269
17 Stripe in the eye	270
18 Wart in the eye	271
19 Inflammation in the eye	272
20 Impostume in the eye	273
21 The	



## The Table.

Chapter	Page
21 The pole-evill	274
✠ 22 A rare and certaine cure for the pole-evill	278
23 Of leaved eares	278
24 Of the viues	280
✠ 25 A rare and certaine approved cure for the viues	283
✠ 26 Another excellent cure for the viues	283
27 Of the strangle	284
28 Canker in the nose	286
29 Bleeding at the nose	288
30 Bloody Riffs	290
31 The Gigges	290
32 Of the Lampasse	292
33 Of the Camerce	293
34 Canker in the mouth	294
35 Heate in the mouth	296
36 The tongue hurt	297
37 Of the Barbes	297
38 Paine in the teeth, and of wolues tee. h	298
39 Crick in the necke	301
40 Wennes in the neck	303
41 Swelling after blood-letting	305
42 To stanch blood	306
43 Falling of the crest	307
✠ 44 A certaine approved way to raise the crest	309
45 Manginessse in the Mane	311
46 Of shedding the haire	312
47 Griefe in the withers	312
48 Any galled backe	316
49 Canker in the withers	320
50 of the sit-fast	321

## The Table.

Chapter	Page
51 <i>Wenns below the saddle</i>	322
52 <i>Navil-gall</i>	323
53 <i>Swaying of the back</i>	325
54 <i>Weakness in the back</i>	326
55 <i>Swelling of the cods</i>	327
56 <i>Of burstness, or incording</i>	330
57 <i>Botch in the groin</i>	332
☞ 58 <i>A certain approved cure for the botch</i>	333
59 <i>Itch in the tail</i>	343
60 <i>Of the generall scab</i>	335
☞ 61 <i>Two most excellent and approved cures for the scabs</i>	338
62 <i>Of halting before</i>	340
63 <i>Of halting behind</i>	333
64 <i>Of hidden griefes</i>	345
65 <i>Of griefs in the shoulder</i>	346
66 <i>Wrench in the shoulder</i>	348
67 <i>Wrench in the nether joint</i>	351
68 <i>Splattting the shoulder</i>	352
69 <i>Shoulder-pight</i>	353
☞ 70 <i>A certain cure for any desperate strain in the shoulder, &amp;c.</i>	355
71 <i>Swelling of the fore leggs</i>	356
72 <i>Foundring in the feet</i>	358
73 <i>Of the splent</i>	365
☞ 74 <i>An approved and certain cure for any splent</i>	370
75 <i>Of the Serew</i>	370
76 <i>Of the Mallender</i>	371
77 <i>Of an upper Attaint</i>	375
☞ <i>An approved medicine for any sinew, strain</i>	376
	79 A

## The Table.

Chapter	Page.
79 <i>A neather attaint</i>	376
80 <i>An over-reach on the heek</i>	377
81 <i>The Mellet</i>	378
82 <i>False quarters</i>	379
83 <i>An horse hipped</i>	380
84 <i>Of stifling</i>	383
85 <i>Bone-spaven</i>	385
86 <i>Bloud-spaven</i>	390
☞ 87 <i>An approved cure for any blood-spaven whatsoever</i>	392
88 <i>Of the Sellander</i>	392
89 <i>Of the hough-bone</i>	393
90 <i>Of the Curbe</i>	394
91 <i>Of the paines</i>	396
92 <i>The Mules</i>	401
93 <i>Of Wind-galls</i>	402
94 <i>Strain in the pastorn</i>	406
95 <i>To help any halting</i>	407
☞ 96 <i>Three rare and approved medicines to cure any strain or swelling whatsoever</i>	411
☞ 97 <i>Another approved cure for any strain</i>	412
98 <i>Of enterfearing</i>	412
99 <i>The Shackle-gall</i>	413
100 <i>Casting in the halter</i>	413
101 <i>The scratches</i>	415
☞ 102 <i>A certaine and approved cure for the scratches</i>	418
103 <i>Of the Ring-bone</i>	419
104 <i>Hurts on the cronet</i>	421
☞ 105 <i>A certain approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet</i>	422
	106 The

## The Table.

Chapter	page
106 The crowne scab	423
107 The Quitter-bone	424
108 Of gravelling	426
109 Of surbating	428
110 Prick in the soale	429
110 To draw out a stub	431
111 The Figge	432
112 A Retrait	433
113 Of cloying	435
114 Observations for the hoofes	437
115 Loosening the hoofe	440
116 Casting the hoofe	442
118 Of hoofe-bound	443
118 The running Frush	445
119 An approved and certaine cure for the running Frush	447
120 Of evill hoofes	448
121 Of brittle hoofes	448
122 To preserve hoofes	449
123 Hurts on the hoofes	451
124 To soften hoofes	451
125 To harden hoofes	452
126 Of the Mat-long	452
127 To skinne a sore foot	453
128 Of gourded legges	453
129 A most certaine and approved cure for gourded legges	455
130 Of the Farcy	457
131 Of the Canker	469
132 Of the Fistula	472
133 A rare and approved cure for any fistula,	479
	134 Of

# The Table.

Chapter.	Page.
134 Of the Anbury	479
135 Of the Cords	480
136 Of the String-halt.	481
137 Of Spur-gall	482
138 Of wounds in generall	482
139 Hurts with arrowes	487
140 Of healing old sores	487
141 A certaine and approved cure for any old sore	488
142 Of bruisinges or swellings	489
143 Of Impostumes	492
144 Of cold impostumes	493
145 Of hot impostumes	495
146 Of the tetter	495
147 Of sinews cut &c.	495
148 Of fretting with the girths	495
149 Of blisters	496
150 To take away bones, &c.	497
151 To eat dead flesh	498
152 Of knots in joynts	499
153 Wounds made with Gun-powder	502
154 Of burning with Lime	503
155 Biting of a mad dog	505
156 Hurts with a Boares tuskes	507
157 The stinging of Serpents	507
158 Of Lice	508
159 Defence from flies	509
160 Of bones broken	510
161 Bones out of joynt	513
162 To dry up humours	513
163 To dry up superfluous moysture	515
	164 To

---

## The Table.

---

Chapter.	Page.
164 To dry any swelling	515
165 To dissolve humours	516
166 To mollifie hardnesse	516
167 To harden softnesse	517
168 To conglutinate	518
169 To mundifie	519
170 Repercussive medicines	519
171 Of burning compositions	519
172 For all manner of hurts	520
173 Powder of hony and lime.	522
174 The taking up of veines	523
175 Of cauterizing	526
176 Cauterizing actuall	527
177 Cauterize potentiall	532
178 Of Rowelling	534
179 To geld horses	537
180 To make curtals	539
181 To make a white Star	541
182 To make a black Star	545
183 To make a red Star	546
184 To make hair to come very soon	546
185 To make hair smooth and fine	548
186 How to take off hair in any part of a horse	549
187 How to cast and overthrow a horse	149
188 How to know the age of a horse	550
189 How to make an old horse seem young	552
190 How to make a horse that he shall not neigh, either in company, or when he is ridden	553
191 How to make a horse exceeding quick and nimble of the spurre	554
192 How	

---

## The Table.

---

Chapter.	Page.
192 How to make a horse that tires, or is restiffe, to goe forward	555
¶ 193 Other most excellent and approved waies to preserve an horse from tiring, never disclosed till now.	555
194 How to make a horse to follow his Master, and to find him out, and challenge him amongst never so many people.	557
195 The nature and speciall qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole worke, set downe in the manner of Alphabet.	558
196 Certaine principles touching simples	596
197 Of weights and measures, and how to know them by their Characters.	598
198 The Farriers instruments expounded, with their names and properties.	600

FINIS.



277  
 278  
 279  
 280  
 281  
 282  
 283  
 284  
 285  
 286  
 287  
 288  
 289  
 290  
 291  
 292  
 293  
 294  
 295  
 296  
 297  
 298  
 299  
 300

1818







